United States
Department of Agriculture

Natural Resources Conservation Service

# Keys to Soil Taxonomy

Tenth Edition, 2006

# Keys to Soil Taxonomy

By Soil Survey Staff

United States Department of Agriculture
Natural Resources Conservation Service

Tenth Edition, 2006

The U.S. Department of Agriculture (USDA) prohibits discrimination in all its programs and activities on the basis of race, color, national origin, age, disability, and where applicable, sex, marital status, familial status, parental status, religion, sexual orientation, genetic information, political beliefs, reprisal, or because all or a part of an individual's income is derived from any public assistance program. (Not all prohibited bases apply to all programs.) Persons with disabilities who require alternative means for communication of program information (Braille, large print, audiotape, etc.) should contact USDA's TARGET Center at (202) 720-2600 (voice and TDD). To file a complaint of discrimination, write to USDA, Director, Office of Civil Rights, 1400 Independence Avenue, S.W., Washington, D.C. 20250-9410 or call (800) 795-3272 (voice) or (202) 720-6382 (TDD). USDA is an equal opportunity provider and employer.

**Cover: Profile of a shallow Udipsamment with an abrupt wavy boundary between the C horizon and bedrock. Depth to paralithic contact is 14 to 20 inches. Photo by John Kelley, Soil Scientist, Raleigh, North Carolina.**

# *Table of Contents*

Foreword ..... v
Chapter 1: The Soils That We Classify ..... 1
Chapter 2: Differentiae for Mineral Soils and Organic Soils ..... 3
Chapter 3: Horizons and Characteristics Diagnostic for the Higher Categories ..... 5
Chapter 4: Identification of the Taxonomic Class of a Soil ..... 31
Chapter 5: Alfisols ..... 35
Chapter 6: Andisols ..... 77
Chapter 7: Aridisols ..... 97
Chapter 8: Entisols ..... 123
Chapter 9: Gelisols ..... 143
Chapter 10: Histosols ..... 153
Chapter 11: Inceptisols ..... 159
Chapter 12: Mollisols ..... 191
Chapter 13: Oxisols ..... 235
Chapter 14: Spodosols ..... 251
Chapter 15: Ultisols ..... 261
Chapter 16: Vertisols ..... 283
Chapter 17: Family and Series Differentiae and Names ..... 295
Chapter 18: Designations for Horizons and Layers ..... 311
Appendix ..... 317
Index ..... 325

# *Foreword*

The publication of this edition of *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* (the 10th edition) coincides with the 18th World Congress of Soil Science, to be held at Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, in July 2006. The last time the World Congress was hosted in the United States was in 1960 at Madison, Wisconsin. At that time, *Soil Classification: A Comprehensive System, 7th Approximation* was released for review and testing. The classification system was officially adopted for use in the United States soil survey program in 1965. The first edition of *Soil Taxonomy: A Basic System of Soil Classification for Making and Interpreting Soil Surveys* was published in 1975. Over the years *Soil Taxonomy* has been modified and expanded to reflect our increased knowledge of the world's soils. After the first eight editions of the *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* were released, the second edition of *Soil Taxonomy* was published in 1998. Since then, the 9th edition of the keys was published in 2003, and now this 10th edition in 2006.

The publication *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* serves two purposes. It provides the taxonomic keys necessary for the classification of soils in a form that can be used easily in the field. It also acquaints users of the taxonomic system with recent changes in the system. This edition of the *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* incorporates all changes approved since publication of the ninth edition in 2003. We plan to continue issuing updated editions of the *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* as changes warrant new editions.

The authors of the *Keys to Soil Taxonomy* are identified as the "Soil Survey Staff." This term is meant to include all of the soil classifiers in the National Cooperative Soil Survey program and in the international community who have made significant contributions to the improvement of the taxonomic system.

Micheal L. Golden
Director, Soil Survey Division
Natural Resources Conservation Service

# CHAPTER 1

## *The Soils That We Classify*

The word "soil," like many common words, has several meanings. In its traditional meaning, soil is the natural medium for the growth of land plants, whether or not it has discernible soil horizons. This meaning is still the common understanding of the word, and the greatest interest in soil is centered on this meaning. People consider soil important because it supports plants that supply food, fibers, drugs, and other wants of humans and because it filters water and recycles wastes. Soil covers the earth's surface as a continuum, except on bare rock, in areas of perpetual frost or deep water, or on the bare ice of glaciers. In this sense, soil has a thickness that is determined by the rooting depth of plants.

*Soil* in this text is a natural body comprised of solids (minerals and organic matter), liquid, and gases that occurs on the land surface, occupies space, and is characterized by one or both of the following: horizons, or layers, that are distinguishable from the initial material as a result of additions, losses, transfers, and transformations of energy and matter *or* the ability to support rooted plants in a natural environment. This definition is expanded from the 1975 version of *Soil Taxonomy* to include soils in areas of Antarctica where pedogenesis occurs but where the climate is too harsh to support the higher plant forms.

The upper limit of soil is the boundary between soil and air, shallow water, live plants, or plant materials that have not begun to decompose. Areas are not considered to have soil if the surface is permanently covered by water too deep (typically more than 2.5 m) for the growth of rooted plants. The horizontal boundaries of soil are areas where the soil grades to deep water, barren areas, rock, or ice. In some places the separation between soil and nonsoil is so gradual that clear distinctions cannot be made.

The lower boundary that separates soil from the nonsoil underneath is most difficult to define. Soil consists of the horizons near the earth's surface that, in contrast to the underlying parent material, have been altered by the interactions of climate, relief, and living organisms over time. Commonly, soil grades at its lower boundary to hard rock or to earthy materials virtually devoid of animals, roots, or other marks of biological activity. The lowest depth of biological activity, however, is difficult to discern and is often gradual. For purposes of classification, the lower boundary of soil is arbitrarily set at 200 cm. In soils where either biological activity or current pedogenic processes extend to depths greater than 200 cm, the lower limit of the soil for classification purposes is still 200 cm. In some instances the more weakly cemented bedrocks (paralithic materials, defined later) have been described and used to differentiate soil series (series control section, defined later), even though the paralithic materials below a paralithic contact are not considered soil in the true sense. In areas where soil has thin cemented horizons that are impermeable to roots, the soil extends as deep as the deepest cemented horizon, but not below 200 cm. For certain management goals, layers deeper than the lower boundary of the soil that is classified (200 cm) must also be described if they affect the content and movement of water and air or other interpretative concerns.

In the humid tropics, earthy materials may extend to a depth of many meters with no obvious changes below the upper 1 or 2 m, except for an occasional stone line. In many wet soils, gleyed soil material may begin a few centimeters below the surface and, in some areas, continue down for several meters apparently unchanged with increasing depth. The latter condition can arise through the gradual filling of a wet basin in which the A horizon is gradually added to the surface and becomes gleyed beneath. Finally, the A horizon rests on a thick mass of gleyed material that may be relatively uniform. In both of these situations, there is no alternative but to set the lower limit of soil at the arbitrary limit of 200 cm.

Soil, as defined in this text, does not need to have discernible horizons, although the presence or absence of horizons and their nature are of extreme importance in soil classification. Plants can be grown under glass in pots filled with earthy materials, such as peat or sand, or even in water. Under proper conditions all these media are productive for plants, but they are nonsoil here in the sense that they cannot be classified in the same system that is used for the soils of a survey area, county, or even nation. Plants even grow on trees, but trees are regarded as nonsoil.

Soil has many properties that fluctuate with the seasons. It may be alternately cold and warm or dry and moist. Biological activity is slowed or stopped if the soil becomes too cold or too dry. The soil receives flushes of organic matter when leaves fall or grasses die. Soil is not static. The pH, soluble salts, amount

of organic matter and carbon-nitrogen ratio, numbers of micro-organisms, soil fauna, temperature, and moisture all change with the seasons as well as with more extended periods of time. Soil must be viewed from both the short-term and long-term perspective.

## Buried Soils

A buried soil is covered with a surface mantle of new soil material that either is 50 cm or more thick or is 30 to 50 cm thick and has a thickness that equals at least half the total thickness of the named diagnostic horizons that are preserved in the buried soil. A surface mantle of new material that does not have the required thickness for buried soils can be used to establish a phase of the mantled soil or even another soil series if the mantle affects the use of the soil.

Any horizons or layers underlying a plaggen epipedon are considered to be buried.

A surface mantle of new material, as defined here, is largely unaltered, at least in the lower part. It may have a diagnostic surface horizon (epipedon) and/or a cambic horizon, but it has no other diagnostic subsurface horizons, all defined later. However, there remains a layer 7.5 cm or more thick that fails the requirements for all diagnostic horizons, as defined later, overlying a horizon sequence that can be clearly identified as the solum of a buried soil in at least half of each pedon. The recognition of a surface mantle should not be based only on studies of associated soils.

# CHAPTER 2

## *Differentiae for Mineral Soils[1] and Organic Soils*

Soil taxonomy differentiates between mineral soils and organic soils. To do this, first, it is necessary to distinguish mineral soil material from organic soil material. Second, it is necessary to define the minimum part of a soil that should be mineral if a soil is to be classified as a mineral soil and the minimum part that should be organic if the soil is to be classified as an organic soil.

Nearly all soils contain more than traces of both mineral and organic components in some horizons, but most soils are dominantly one or the other. The horizons that are less than about 20 to 35 percent organic matter, by weight, have properties that are more nearly those of mineral than of organic soils. Even with this separation, the volume of organic matter at the upper limit exceeds that of the mineral material in the fine-earth fraction.

### Mineral Soil Material

Mineral soil material (less than 2.0 mm in diameter) *either*:

1. Is saturated with water for less than 30 days (cumulative) per year in normal years and contains less than 20 percent (by weight) organic carbon; *or*

2. Is saturated with water for 30 days or more cumulative in normal years (or is artificially drained) and, excluding live roots, has an organic carbon content (by weight) of:

   a. Less than 18 percent if the mineral fraction contains 60 percent or more clay; *or*

   b. Less than 12 percent if the mineral fraction contains no clay; *or*

   c. Less than 12 + (clay percentage multiplied by 0.1) percent if the mineral fraction contains less than 60 percent clay.

### Organic Soil Material

Soil material that contains more than the amounts of organic carbon described above for mineral soil material is considered organic soil material.

In the definition of mineral soil material above, material that has more organic carbon than in item 1 is intended to include what has been called litter or an O horizon. Material that has more organic carbon than in item 2 has been called peat or muck. Not all organic soil material accumulates in or under water. Leaf litter may rest on a lithic contact and support forest vegetation. The soil in this situation is organic only in the sense that the mineral fraction is appreciably less than half the weight and is only a small percentage of the volume of the soil.

### Distinction Between Mineral Soils and Organic Soils

Most soils are dominantly mineral material, but many mineral soils have horizons of organic material. For simplicity in writing definitions of taxa, a distinction between what is meant by a mineral soil and an organic soil is useful. To apply the definitions of many taxa, one must first decide whether the soil is mineral or organic. An exception is the Andisols (defined later). These generally are considered to consist of mineral soils, but some may be organic if they meet other criteria for Andisols. Those that exceed the organic carbon limit defined for mineral soils have a colloidal fraction dominated by short-range-order minerals or aluminum-humus complexes. The mineral fraction in these soils is believed to give more control to the soil properties than the organic fraction. Therefore, the soils are included with the Andisols rather than the organic soils defined later as Histosols.

If a soil has both organic and mineral horizons, the relative thickness of the organic and mineral soil materials must be considered. At some point one must decide that the mineral horizons are more important. This point is arbitrary and depends in part on the nature of the materials. A thick layer of sphagnum has a very low bulk density and contains less organic matter than a thinner layer of well-decomposed muck. It is much easier to measure the thickness of layers in the field than it is to determine tons of organic matter per hectare. The definition of a mineral soil, therefore, is based on the thickness of the horizons, or layers, but the limits of thickness must vary with the kinds of materials. The definition that follows is intended to classify as mineral soils those that have both thick mineral soil layers and no more organic material than the amount permitted in the histic epipedon, which is defined in chapter 3.

In the determination of whether a soil is organic or mineral, the thickness of horizons is measured from the surface of the soil whether that is the surface of a mineral or an organic

[1] Mineral soils include all soils except the suborder Histels and the order Histosols.

horizon, unless the soil is buried as defined in chapter 1. Thus, any O horizon at the surface is considered an organic horizon if it meets the requirements of organic soil material as defined later, and its thickness is added to that of any other organic horizons to determine the total thickness of organic soil materials.

## Definition of Mineral Soils

Mineral soils are soils that have *either* of the following:

1. Mineral soil materials that meet *one or more* of the following:

   a. Overlie cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials and/or have voids[2] that are filled with 10 percent or less organic materials *and* directly below these materials have either a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact; *or*

   b. When added with underlying cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials, total more than 10 cm between the soil surface and a depth of 50 cm; *or*

   c. Constitute more than one-third of the total thickness of the soil to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or have a total thickness of more than 10 cm; *or*

   d. If they are saturated with water for 30 days or more per year in normal years (or are artificially drained) and have organic materials with an upper boundary within 40 cm of the soil surface, have a total thickness of *either*:

      (1) Less than 60 cm if three-fourths or more of their volume consists of moss fibers or if their bulk density, moist, is less than 0.1 g/cm$^3$; *or*

      (2) Less than 40 cm if they consist either of sapric or hemic materials, or of fibric materials with less than three-fourths (by volume) moss fibers and a bulk density, moist, of 0.1 g/cm$^3$ or more; *or*

2. More than 20 percent, by volume, mineral soil materials from the soil surface to a depth of 50 cm or to a glacic layer or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest; *and*

   a. Permafrost within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. Gelic materials within 100 cm of the soil surface and permafrost within 200 cm of the soil surface.

## Definition of Organic Soils

Organic soils have organic soil materials that:

1. Do not have andic soil properties in 60 percent or more of the thickness between the soil surface and either a depth of 60 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or duripan if shallower; *and*

2. Meet *one or more* of the following:

   a. Overlie cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials and/or fill their interstices[2] *and* directly below these materials have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact; *or*

   b. When added with the underlying cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials, total 40 cm or more between the soil surface and a depth of 50 cm; *or*

   c. Constitute two-thirds or more of the total thickness of the soil to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact *and* have no mineral horizons or have mineral horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or less; *or*

   d. Are saturated with water for 30 days or more per year in normal years (or are artificially drained), have an upper boundary within 40 cm of the soil surface, and have a total thickness of *either*:

      (1) 60 cm or more if three-fourths or more of their volume consists of moss fibers or if their bulk density, moist, is less than 0.1 g/cm$^3$; *or*

      (2) 40 cm or more if they consist either of sapric or hemic materials, or of fibric materials with less than three-fourths (by volume) moss fibers and a bulk density, moist, of 0.1 g/cm$^3$ or more; *or*

   e. Are 80 percent or more, by volume, from the soil surface to a depth of 50 cm or to a glacic layer or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

It is a general rule that a soil is classified as an organic soil (Histosol) if more than half of the upper 80 cm (32 in) of the soil is organic or if organic soil material of any thickness rests on rock or on fragmental material having interstices filled with organic materials.

[2] Materials that meet the definition of cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous but have more than 10 percent, by volume, voids that are filled with organic soil materials are considered to be organic soil materials.

# CHAPTER 3



## *Horizons and Characteristics Diagnostic for the Higher Categories*

This chapter defines the horizons and characteristics of both mineral and organic soils. It is divided into three parts—horizons and characteristics diagnostic for mineral soils, characteristics diagnostic for organic soils, and horizons and characteristics diagnostic for both mineral and organic soils.

The horizons and characteristics defined below are not in a key format. Some diagnostic horizons are mutually exclusive, and some are not. An umbric epipedon, for example, could not also be a mollic epipedon. A kandic horizon with clay films, however, could also meet the definition of an argillic horizon.

## Horizons and Characteristics Diagnostic for Mineral Soils

The criteria for some of the following horizons and characteristics, such as histic and folistic epipedons, can be met in organic soils. They are diagnostic, however, only for the mineral soils.

## Diagnostic Surface Horizons: The Epipedon

The epipedon (Gr. *epi*, over, upon, and *pedon*, soil) is a horizon that forms at or near the surface and in which most of the rock structure has been destroyed. It is darkened by organic matter or shows evidence of eluviation, or both. Rock structure as used here and in other places in this taxonomy includes fine stratification (less than 5 mm) in unconsolidated sediments (eolian, alluvial, lacustrine, or marine) and saprolite derived from consolidated rocks in which the unweathered minerals and pseudomorphs of weathered minerals retain their relative positions to each other.

Any horizon may be at the surface of a truncated soil. The following section, however, is concerned with eight diagnostic horizons that have formed at or near the soil surface. These horizons can be covered by a surface mantle of new soil material. If the surface mantle has rock structure, the top of the epipedon is considered the soil surface unless the mantle meets the definition of buried soils in chapter 1. If the soil includes a buried soil, the epipedon, if any, is at the soil surface and the epipedon of the buried soil is considered a buried epipedon and is not considered in selecting taxa unless the keys specifically indicate buried horizons, such as those in Thapto-Histic subgroups. A soil with a mantle thick enough to have a buried soil has no epipedon if the soil has rock structure to the surface or has an Ap horizon less than 25 cm thick that is underlain by soil material with rock structure. The melanic epipedon (defined below) is unique among epipedons. It forms commonly in volcanic deposits and can receive fresh deposits of ash. Therefore, this horizon is permitted to have layers within and above the epipedon that are not part of the melanic epipedon.

A recent alluvial or eolian deposit that retains stratifications (5 mm or less thick) or an Ap horizon directly underlain by such stratified material is not included in the concept of the epipedon because time has not been sufficient for soil-forming processes to erase these transient marks of deposition and for diagnostic and accessory properties to develop.

An epipedon is not the same as an A horizon. It may include part or all of an illuvial B horizon if the darkening by organic matter extends from the soil surface into or through the B horizon.

### Anthropic Epipedon

#### Required Characteristics

The anthropic epipedon consists of mineral soil material that shows some evidence of disturbance by human activity. After mixing of the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or of the whole mineral soil if its depth to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a petrocalcic horizon, or a duripan (all defined below) is less than 18 cm, the anthropic epipedon has the following properties:

1. When dry, *either or both*:

   a. Structural units with a diameter of 30 cm or less or secondary structure with a diameter of 30 cm or less; *or*

   b. A moderately hard or softer rupture-resistance class; *and*

2. Rock structure, including fine (less than 5 mm) stratifications, in less than one-half of the volume of all parts; *and*

3. *One* of the following:

   a. *Both* of the following:

      (1) Dominant colors with a value of 3 or less, moist, and of 5 or less, dry; *and*

      (2) Dominant colors with chroma of 3 or less, moist; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction that has a calcium carbonate equivalent of 15 to 40 percent and colors with value and chroma of 3 or less, moist; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction that has a calcium carbonate equivalent of 40 percent or more and a color value, moist, of 5 or less; *and*

4. An organic-carbon content of:

a. 2.5 percent or more if the epipedon has a color value, moist, of 4 or 5; *or*

b. 0.6 percent more (absolute) than that of the C horizon (if one occurs) if the mollic epipedon has a color value less than 1 Munsell unit lower or chroma less than 2 units lower (both moist and dry) than the C horizon; *or*

c. 0.6 percent or more and the epipedon does not meet the qualifications in 4-a or 4-b above; *and*

5. The minimum thickness of the epipedon is as follows:

a. 25 cm if:

(1) The texture of the epipedon is loamy fine sand or coarser throughout; *or*

(2) There are no underlying diagnostic horizons (defined below), and the organic-carbon content of the underlying materials decreases irregularly with increasing depth; *or*

(3) *Both* of the following are 75 cm or more below the mineral soil surface:

(a) The lower boundary of the deepest of any argillic, cambic, natric, oxic, or spodic horizon (defined below); *and*

(b) The upper boundary of the shallowest of any calcic horizon, petrocalcic horizon, duripan, fragipan, or identifiable secondary carbonates; *or*

b. 10 cm if the epipedon is finer than loamy fine sand (when mixed) and is directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a petrocalcic horizon, or a duripan; *or*

c. 18 to 25 cm and the thickness is one-third or more of the total thickness between the mineral soil surface and:

(1) The upper boundary of the shallowest of any identifiable secondary carbonates, a calcic horizon, a petrocalcic horizon, a duripan, or a fragipan; *or*

(2) The lower boundary of the deepest of any argillic, cambic, natric, oxic, or spodic horizon; *or*

d. 18 cm if none of the above conditions apply.

6. *One or both* of the following:

a. Has a phosphate content of 1,500 or more milligrams per kilogram by citric-acid extraction; *and*

(1) The phosphorous content decreases regularly with increasing depth below the epipedon; *and*

(2) Phosporous is not in the form of nodules; *or*

b. All parts of the epipedon are moist for less than 90 days (cumulative) in normal years during times when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher, if the soil is not irrigated; *and*

7. The n value (defined below) is less than 0.7.

## Folistic Epipedon

### Required Characteristics

The folistic epipedon is defined as a layer (one or more horizons) that is saturated for less than 30 days (cumulative) in normal years (and is not artificially drained) and *either*:

1. Consists of organic soil material that:

a. Is 20 cm or more thick and either contains 75 percent or more (by volume) *Sphagnum* fibers or has a bulk density, moist, of less than 0.1; *or*

b. Is 15 cm or more thick; *or*

2. Is an Ap horizon that, when mixed to a depth of 25 cm, has an organic-carbon content (by weight) of:

a. 16 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains 60 percent or more clay; *or*

b. 8 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains no clay; *or*

c. 8 + (clay percentage divided by 7.5) percent or more if the mineral fraction contains less than 60 percent clay.

Most folistic epipedons consist of organic soil material (defined in chapter 2). Item 2 provides for a folistic epipedon that is an Ap horizon consisting of mineral soil material.

## Histic Epipedon

### Required Characteristics

The histic epipedon is a layer (one or more horizons) that is characterized by saturation (for 30 days or more, cumulative) and reduction for some time during normal years (or is artificially drained) and *either*:

1. Consists of organic soil material that:

a. Is 20 to 60 cm thick and either contains 75 percent or more (by volume) *Sphagnum* fibers or has a bulk density, moist, of less than 0.1; *or*

b. Is 20 to 40 cm thick; *or*

2. Is an Ap horizon that, when mixed to a depth of 25 cm, has an organic-carbon content (by weight) of:

a. 16 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains 60 percent or more clay; *or*

b. 8 percent or more if the mineral fraction contains no clay; *or*

c. 8 + (clay percentage divided by 7.5) percent or more if the mineral fraction contains less than 60 percent clay.

Most histic epipedons consist of organic soil material (defined in chapter 2). Item 2 provides for a histic epipedon that is an Ap horizon consisting of mineral soil material. A histic epipedon consisting of mineral soil material can also be part of a mollic or umbric epipedon.

## Melanic Epipedon

### Required Characteristics

The melanic epipedon has *both* of the following:

1. An upper boundary at, or within 30 cm of, either the mineral soil surface or the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties (defined below), whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In layers with a cumulative thickness of 30 cm or more within a total thickness of 40 cm, *all* of the following:

a. Andic soil properties throughout; *and*

b. A color value, moist, and chroma (Munsell designations) of 2 or less throughout and a melanic index of 1.70 or less throughout; *and*

c. 6 percent or more organic carbon as a weighted average and 4 percent or more organic carbon in all layers.

## Mollic Epipedon

### Required Characteristics

The mollic epipedon consists of mineral soil materials and, after mixing of the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or of the whole mineral soil if its depth to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a petrocalcic horizon, or a duripan (all defined below) is less than 18 cm, has the following properties:

1. When dry, *either or both*:

a. Structural units with a diameter of 30 cm or less or secondary structure with a diameter of 30 cm or less; *or*

b. A moderately hard or softer rupture-resistance class; *and*

2. Rock structure, including fine (less than 5 mm) stratifications, in less than one-half of the volume of all parts; *and*

3. *One* of the following:

a. *Both* of the following:

(1) Dominant colors with a value of 3 or less, moist, and of 5 or less, dry; *and*

(2) Dominant colors with chroma of 3 or less, moist; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction that has a calcium carbonate equivalent of 15 to 40 percent and colors with a value and chroma of 3 or less, moist; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction that has a calcium carbonate equivalent of 40 percent or more and a color value, moist, of 5 or less; *and*

4. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 50 percent or more throughout; *and*

5. An organic-carbon content of:

a. 2.5 percent or more if the epipedon has a color value, moist, of 4 or 5; *or*

b. 0.6 percent (absolute) more than that of the C horizon (if one occurs) if the mollic epipedon has a color value less than 1 Munsell unit lower or chroma less than 2 units lower (both moist and dry) than the C horizon; *or*

c. 0.6 percent or more and the epipedon does not meet the qualifications in 5-a or 5-b above; *and*

6. The minimum thickness of the epipedon is as follows:

a. 25 cm if:

(1) The texture of the epipedon is loamy fine sand or coarser throughout; *or*

(2) There are no underlying diagnostic horizons (defined below) and the organic-carbon content of the underlying materials decreases irregularly with increasing depth; *or*

(3) *Both* of the following are 75 cm or more below the mineral soil surface:

(a) The lower boundary of the deepest of any argillic, cambic, natric, oxic, or spodic horizon (defined below); *and*

(b) The upper boundary of the shallowest of any petrocalcic horizon, duripan, fragipan, or identifiable secondary carbonates; *or*

b. 10 cm if the epipedon is finer than loamy fine sand (when mixed) and it is directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a petrocalcic horizon, or a duripan; *or*

c. 18 to 25 cm and the thickness is one-third or more of the total thickness between the mineral soil surface and*:*

(1) The upper boundary of the shallowest of any identifiable secondary carbonates or a calcic horizon, petrocalcic horizon, duripan, or fragipan; *or*

(2) The lower boundary of the deepest of any argillic, cambic, natric, oxic, or spodic horizon; *or*

d. 18 cm if none of the above conditions apply; *and*

7. Phosphate:

a. Content less than 1,500 milligrams per kilogram by citric-acid extraction; *or*

b. Content decreasing irregularly with increasing depth below the epipedon; *or*

c. Nodules are within the epipedon; *and*

8. Some part of the epipedon is moist for 90 days or more (cumulative) in normal years during times when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher, if the soil is not irrigated; *and*

9. The *n* value (defined below) is less than 0.7.

## Ochric Epipedon

The ochric epipedon fails to meet the definitions for any of the other seven epipedons because it is too thin or too dry, has too high a color value or chroma, contains too little organic carbon, has too high an *n* value or melanic index, or is both massive and hard or harder when dry. Many ochric epipedons have either a Munsell color value of 4 or more, moist, and 6 or more, dry, or chroma of 4 or more, or they include an A or Ap horizon that has both low color values and low chroma but is too thin to be recognized as a mollic or umbric epipedon (and has less than 15 percent calcium carbonate equivalent in the fine-earth fraction). Ochric epipedons also include horizons of organic materials that are too thin to meet the requirements for a histic or folistic epipedon.

The ochric epipedon includes eluvial horizons that are at or near the soil surface, and it extends to the first underlying diagnostic illuvial horizon (defined below as an argillic, kandic, natric, or spodic horizon). If the underlying horizon is a B horizon of alteration (defined below as a cambic or oxic horizon) and there is no surface horizon that is appreciably darkened by humus, the lower limit of the ochric epipedon is the lower boundary of the plow layer or an equivalent depth (18 cm) in a soil that has not been plowed. Actually, the same horizon in an unplowed soil may be both part of the epipedon and part of the cambic horizon; the ochric epipedon and the subsurface diagnostic horizons are not all mutually exclusive. The ochric epipedon does not have rock structure and does not include finely stratified fresh sediments, nor can it be an Ap horizon directly overlying such deposits.

## Plaggen Epipedon

The plaggen epipedon is a human-made surface layer 50 cm or more thick that has been produced by long-continued manuring.

A plaggen epipedon can be identified by several means. Commonly, it contains artifacts, such as bits of brick and pottery, throughout its depth. There may be chunks of diverse materials, such as black sand and light gray sand, as large as the size held by a spade. The plaggen epipedon normally shows spade marks throughout its depth and also remnants of thin stratified beds of sand that were probably produced on the soil surface by beating rains and were later buried by spading. A map unit delineation of soils with plaggen epipedons would tend to have straight-sided rectangular bodies that are higher than the adjacent soils by as much as or more than the thickness of the plaggen epipedon.

### Required Characteristics

The plaggen epipedon consists of mineral soil materials and has the following:

1. Locally raised land surfaces; *and* one or both of the following:

a. Artifacts; *or*

b. Spade marks below a depth of 30 cm; *and*

2. Colors with a value of 4 or less, moist, 5 or less, dry, and chroma of 2 or less; *and*

3. An organic-carbon content of 0.6 percent or more; *and*

4. A thickness of 50 cm or more; *and*

5. Some part of the epipedon that is moist for 90 days or more (cumulative) in normal years during times when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher, if the soil is not irrigated.

## Umbric Epipedon

### Required Characteristics

The umbric epipedon consists of mineral soil materials and, after mixing of the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or of the whole mineral soil if its depth to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a petrocalcic horizon, or a duripan (all defined below) is less than 18 cm, has the following properties:

1. When dry, *either or both*:

a. Structural units with a diameter of 30 cm or less or secondary structure with a diameter of 30 cm or less; *or*

b. A moderately hard or softer rupture-resistance class; *and*

2. Rock structure, including fine (less than 5 mm) stratifications, in less than one-half of the volume of all parts; *and*

3. *Both* of the following:

a. Dominant colors with a value of 3 or less, moist, and of 5 or less, dry; *and*

b. Dominant colors with chroma of 3 or less, moist; *and*

4. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent in some or all parts; *and*

5. An organic-carbon content of:

a. 0.6 percent (absolute) more than that of the C horizon (if one occurs) if the umbric epipedon has a color value less than 1 Munsell unit lower or chroma less than 2 units lower (both moist and dry) than the C horizon; *or*

b. 0.6 percent or more and the epipedon does not meet the qualifications in 5-a above; *and*

6. The minimum thickness of the epipedon is as follows:

a. 25 cm if:

(1) The texture of the epipedon is loamy fine sand or coarser throughout; *or*

(2) There are no underlying diagnostic horizons (defined below) and the organic-carbon content of the underlying materials decreases irregularly with increasing depth; *or*

(3) *Both* of the following are 75 cm or more below the mineral soil surface:

(a) The lower boundary of the deepest of any argillic, cambic, natric, oxic, or spodic horizon (defined below); *and*

(b) The upper boundary of the shallowest of any petrocalcic horizon, duripan, fragipan, or identifiable secondary carbonates; *or*

b. 10 cm if the epipedon is finer than loamy fine sand (when mixed) and it is directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a petrocalcic horizon, or a duripan; *or*

c. 18 to 25 cm and the thickness is one-third or more of the total thickness between the mineral soil surface and:

(1) The upper boundary of the shallowest of any identifiable secondary carbonates or a calcic horizon, petrocalcic horizon, duripan, or fragipan; *or*

(2) The lower boundary of the deepest of any argillic, cambic, natric, oxic, or spodic horizon; *or*

d. 18 cm if none of the above conditions apply; *and*

7. Phosphate:

a. Content less than 1,500 milligrams per kilogram by citric-acid extraction; *or*

b. Content decreasing irregularly with increasing depth below the epipedon; *or*

c. Nodules are within the epipedon; *and*

8. Some part of the epipedon is moist for 90 days or more (cumulative) in normal years during times when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher, if the soil is not irrigated; *and*

9. The *n* value (defined below) is less than 0.7; *and*

10. The umbric epipedon does not have the artifacts, spade marks, and raised surfaces that are characteristic of the plaggen epipedon.



# Diagnostic Subsurface Horizons

The horizons described in this section form below the surface of the soil, although in some areas they form directly below a layer of leaf litter. They may be exposed at the surface by truncation of the soil. Some of these horizons are generally regarded as B horizons, some are considered B horizons by many but not all pedologists, and others are generally regarded as parts of the A horizon.

## Agric Horizon

The agric horizon is an illuvial horizon that has formed under cultivation and contains significant amounts of illuvial silt, clay, and humus.

### Required Characteristics

The agric horizon is directly below an Ap horizon and has the following properties:

1. A thickness of 10 cm or more and *either*:

a. 5 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, including coatings that are 2 mm or more thick and have a value, moist, of 4 or less and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

b. 5 percent or more (by volume) lamellae that have a thickness of 5 mm or more and have a value, moist, of 4 or less and chroma of 2 or less.

## Albic Horizon

The albic horizon is an eluvial horizon, 1.0 cm or more thick, that has 85 percent or more (by volume) albic materials (defined below). It generally occurs below an A horizon but may be at the mineral soil surface. Under the albic horizon there generally is an argillic, cambic, kandic, natric, or spodic horizon or a fragipan (defined below). The albic horizon may lie between a spodic horizon and either a fragipan or an argillic horizon, or it may be between an argillic or kandic horizon and a fragipan. It may lie between a mollic epipedon and an argillic or natric horizon or between a cambic horizon and an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon or a fragipan. The albic horizon may separate horizons that, if they were together, would meet the requirements for a mollic epipedon. It may separate lamellae that together meet the requirements for an argillic horizon.

These lamellae are not considered to be part of the albic horizon.

## Argillic Horizon

An argillic horizon is normally a subsurface horizon with a significantly higher percentage of phyllosilicate clay than the overlying soil material. It shows evidence of clay illuviation. The argillic horizon forms below the soil surface, but it may be exposed at the surface later by erosion.

**Required Characteristics**

1. All argillic horizons must meet *both* of the following requirements:

   a. *One* of the following:

      (1) If the argillic horizon is coarse-loamy, fine-loamy, coarse-silty, fine-silty, fine, or very-fine or is loamy or clayey, including skeletal counterparts, it must be at least 7.5 cm thick or at least one-tenth as thick as the sum of the thickness of all overlying horizons, whichever is greater; *or*

      (2) If the argillic horizon is sandy or sandy-skeletal, it must be at least 15 cm thick; *or*

      (3) If the argillic horizon is composed entirely of lamellae, the combined thickness of the lamellae that are 0.5 cm or more thick must be 15 cm or more; *and*

   b. Evidence of clay illuviation in at least *one* of the following forms:

      (1) Oriented clay bridging the sand grains; *or*

      (2) Clay films lining pores; *or*

      (3) Clay films on both vertical and horizontal surfaces of peds; *or*

      (4) Thin sections with oriented clay bodies that are more than 1 percent of the section; *or*

      (5) If the coefficient of linear extensibility is 0.04 or higher and the soil has distinct wet and dry seasons, then the ratio of fine clay to total clay in the illuvial horizon is greater by 1.2 times or more than the ratio in the eluvial horizon; *and*

2. If an eluvial horizon remains and there is no lithologic discontinuity between it and the illuvial horizon and no plow layer directly above the illuvial layer, then the illuvial horizon must contain more total clay than the eluvial horizon within a vertical distance of 30 cm or less, as follows:

   a. If any part of the eluvial horizon has less than 15 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction, the argillic horizon must contain at least 3 percent (absolute) more clay (10 percent versus 13 percent, for example); *or*

   b. If the eluvial horizon has 15 to 40 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction, the argillic horizon must have at least 1.2 times more clay than the eluvial horizon; *or*

   c. If the eluvial horizon has 40 percent or more total clay in the fine-earth fraction, the argillic horizon must contain at least 8 percent (absolute) more clay (42 percent versus 50 percent, for example).

## Calcic Horizon

The calcic horizon is an illuvial horizon in which secondary calcium carbonate or other carbonates have accumulated to a significant extent.

**Required Characteristics**

The calcic horizon:

1. Is 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Has *one or more* of the following:

   a. 15 percent or more (by weight) $CaCO_3$ equivalent (see below), and its $CaCO_3$ equivalent is 5 percent or more (absolute) higher than that of an underlying horizon; *or*

   b. 15 percent or more (by weight) $CaCO_3$ equivalent and 5 percent or more (by volume) identifiable secondary carbonates; *or*

   c. 5 percent or more (by weight) calcium carbonate equivalent and has:

      (1) Less than 18 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

      (2) A sandy, sandy-skeletal, coarse-loamy, or loamy-skeletal particle-size class; *and*

      (3) 5 percent or more (by volume) identifiable secondary carbonates or a calcium carbonate equivalent (by weight) that is 5 percent or more (absolute) higher than that of an underlying horizon; *and*

3. Is not cemented or indurated in any part by carbonates, with or without other cementing agents, or is cemented in some part and the cemented part satisfies *one* of the following:

   a. It is characterized by so much lateral discontinuity that roots can penetrate through noncemented zones or along vertical fractures with a horizontal spacing of less than 10 cm; *or*

   b. The cemented layer is less than 1 cm thick and consists of a laminar cap underlain by a lithic or paralithic contact; *or*

c. The cememted layer is less than 10 cm thick.

## Cambic Horizon

A cambic horizon is the result of physical alterations, chemical transformations, or removals or of a combination of two or more of these processes.

**Required Characteristics**

The cambic horizon is an altered horizon 15 cm or more thick. If it is composed of lamellae, the combined thickness of the lamellae must be 15 cm or more. In addition, the cambic horizon must meet *all* of the following:

1. Has a texture of very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, or finer; *and*

2. Shows evidence of alteration in *one* of the following forms:

   a. Aquic conditions within 50 cm of the soil surface or artificial drainage and *all* of the following:

      (1) Soil structure or the absence of rock structure in more than one-half of the volume; *and*

      (2) Colors that do not change on exposure to air; *and*

      (3) Dominant color, moist, on faces of peds or in the matrix as follows:

         (a) Value of 3 or less and chroma of 0; *or*

         (b) Value of 4 or more and chroma of 1 or less; *or*

         (c) Any value, chroma of 2 or less, and redox concentrations; *or*

   b. Does not have the combination of aquic conditions within 50 cm of the soil surface or artificial drainage and colors, moist, as defined in item 2-a-(3) above, and has soil structure or the absence of rock structure in more than one-half of the volume and *one or more* of the following properties:

      (1) Higher chroma, higher value, redder hue, or higher clay content than the underlying horizon or an overlying horizon; *or*

      (2) Evidence of the removal of carbonates or gypsum; *and*

3. Has properties that do not meet the requirements for an anthropic, histic, folistic, melanic, mollic, plaggen, or umbric epipedon, a duripan or fragipan, or an argillic, calcic, gypsic, natric, oxic, petrocalcic, petrogypsic, placic, or spodic horizon; *and*

4. Is not part of an Ap horizon and does not have a brittle manner of failure in more than 60 percent of the matrix.

## Duripan

**Required Characteristics**

A duripan is a silica-cemented subsurface horizon with or without auxiliary cementing agents. It can occur in conjunction with a petrocalcic horizon.

A duripan must meet *all* of the following requirements:

1. The pan is cemented or indurated in more than 50 percent of the volume of some horizon; *and*

2. The pan shows evidence of the accumulation of opal or other forms of silica, such as laminar caps, coatings, lenses, partly filled interstices, bridges between sand-sized grains, or coatings on rock and pararock fragments; *and*

3. Less than 50 percent of the volume of air-dry fragments slakes in 1N HCl even during prolonged soaking, but more than 50 percent slakes in concentrated KOH or NaOH or in alternating acid and alkali; *and*

4. Because of lateral continuity, roots can penetrate the pan only along vertical fractures with a horizontal spacing of 10 cm or more.

## Fragipan

**Required Characteristics**

To be identified as a fragipan, a layer must have *all* of the following characteristics:

1. The layer is 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. The layer shows evidence of pedogenesis within the horizon or, at a minimum, on the faces of structural units; *and*

3. The layer has very coarse prismatic, columnar, or blocky structure of any grade, has weak structure of any size, or is massive. Separations between structural units that allow roots to enter have an average spacing of 10 cm or more on the horizontal dimensions; *and*

4. Air-dry fragments of the natural soil fabric, 5 to 10 cm in diameter, from more than 50 percent of the layer slake when they are submerged in water; *and*

5. The layer has, in 60 percent or more of the volume, a firm or firmer rupture-resistance class, a brittle manner of failure at or near field capacity, and virtually no roots; *and*

6. The layer is not effervescent (in dilute HCl).

## Glossic Horizon

The glossic horizon (Gr. *glossa*, tongue) develops as a result of the degradation of an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon from which clay and free iron oxides are removed.

**Required Characteristics**

The glossic horizon is 5 cm or more thick and consists of:

1. An eluvial part, i.e., albic materials (defined below), which constitute 15 to 85 percent (by volume) of the glossic horizon; *and*

2. An illuvial part, i.e., remnants (pieces) of an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon (defined below).

## Gypsic Horizon

The gypsic horizon is an illuvial horizon in which secondary gypsum has accumulated to a significant extent.

**Required Characteristics**

A gypsic horizon has *all* of the following properties:

1. Is 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Is not cemented or indurated by gypsum, with or without other cementing agents; is cemented and the cemented parts are less than 10 cm thick; or, because of lateral discontinuity, roots can penetrate along vertical fractures with a horizontal spacing of less than 10 cm; *and*

3. Is 5 percent or more (by weight) gypsum and 1 percent or more (by volume) secondary visible gypsum; *and*

4. Has a product of thickness, in cm, multiplied by the gypsum content (percent by weight) of 150 or more. Thus, a horizon 30 cm thick that is 5 percent gypsum qualifies as a gypsic horizon if it is 1 percent or more (by volume) visible gypsum and any cementation is as described in 2 above. The gypsum content (percent by weight) is calculated as the product of gypsum content, expressed as $cmol_c\ kg^{-1}$ soil (of the fine-earth fraction), and the equivalent weight of gypsum (86) expressed as a percentage.

## Kandic Horizon

**Required Characteristics**

The kandic horizon:

1. Is a vertically continuous subsurface horizon that underlies a coarser textured surface horizon. The minimum thickness of the surface horizon is 18 cm after mixing or 5 cm if the textural transition to the kandic horizon is abrupt and there is no densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact (defined below) within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Has its upper boundary:

   a. At the point where the clay percentage in the fine-earth fraction, increasing with depth within a vertical distance of 15 cm or less, is *either*:

      (1) 4 percent or more (absolute) higher than that in the surface horizon if that horizon has less than 20 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction; *or*

      (2) 20 percent or more (relative) higher than that in the surface horizon if that horizon has 20 to 40 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction; *or*

      (3) 8 percent or more (absolute) higher than that in the surface horizon if that horizon has more than 40 percent total clay in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

   b. At a depth:

      (1) Between 100 cm and 200 cm from the mineral soil surface if the particle-size class is sandy or sandy-skeletal throughout the upper 100 cm; *or*

      (2) Within 100 cm from the mineral soil surface if the clay content in the fine-earth fraction of the surface horizon is 20 percent or more; *or*

      (3) Within 125 cm from the mineral soil surface for all other soils; *and*

3. Has a thickness of *either*:

   a. 30 cm or more; *or*

   b. 15 cm or more if there is a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface and the kandic horizon constitutes 60 percent or more of the vertical distance between a depth of 18 cm and the contact; *and*

4. Has a texture of loamy very fine sand or finer; *and*

5. Has an apparent CEC of 16 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) and an apparent ECEC of 12 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7 plus 1N KCl-extractable Al) in 50 percent or more of its thickness between the point where the clay increase requirements are met and either a depth of 100 cm below that point or a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact if shallower. (The percentage of clay is either measured by the pipette method or estimated to be 2.5 times [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon], whichever is higher, but no more than 100); *and*

6. Has a regular decrease in organic-carbon content with increasing depth, no fine stratification, and no overlying layers more than 30 cm thick that have fine stratification and/or an organic-carbon content that decreases irregularly with increasing depth.

## Natric Horizon

**Required Characteristics**

The natric horizon has, in addition to the properties of the argillic horizon:

1. *Either:*

a. Columns or prisms in some part (generally the upper part), which may break to blocks; *or*

b. Both blocky structure and eluvial materials, which contain uncoated silt or sand grains and extend more than 2.5 cm into the horizon; *and*

2. *Either:*

a. An exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 percent or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio [SAR] of 13 or more) in one or more horizons within 40 cm of its upper boundary; *or*

b. More exchangeable magnesium plus sodium than calcium plus exchange acidity (at pH 8.2) in one or more horizons within 40 cm of its upper boundary if the ESP is 15 or more (or the SAR is 13 or more) in one or more horizons within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

## Ortstein

### Required Characteristics

Ortstein has *all* of the following:

1. Consists of spodic materials; *and*

2. Is in a layer that is 50 percent or more cemented; *and*

3. Is 25 mm or more thick.

## Oxic Horizon

### Required Characteristics

The oxic horizon is a subsurface horizon that does not have andic soil properties (defined below) and has *all* of the following characteristics:

1. A thickness of 30 cm or more; *and*

2. A texture of sandy loam or finer in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

3. Less than 10 percent weatherable minerals in the 50- to 200-micron fraction; *and*

4. Rock structure in less than 5 percent of its volume, unless the lithorelicts with weatherable minerals are coated with sesquioxides; *and*

5. A diffuse upper boundary, i.e., within a vertical distance of 15 cm, a clay increase with increasing depth of:

a. Less than 4 percent (absolute) in its fine-earth fraction if the fine-earth fraction of the surface horizon contains less than 20 percent clay; *or*

b. Less than 20 percent (relative) in its fine-earth fraction if the fine-earth fraction of the surface horizon contains 20 to 40 percent clay; *or*

c. Less than 8 percent (absolute) in its fine-earth fraction if the fine-earth fraction of the surface horizon contains 40 percent or more clay); *and*

6. An apparent CEC of 16 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) and an apparent ECEC of 12 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7 plus 1N KCl-extractable Al). (The percentage of clay is either measured by the pipette method or estimated to be 3 times [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon], whichever value is higher, but no more than 100).

## Petrocalcic Horizon

The petrocalcic horizon is an illuvial horizon in which secondary calcium carbonate or other carbonates have accumulated to the extent that the horizon is cemented or indurated.

### Required Characteristics

A petrocalcic horizon must meet the following requirements:

1. The horizon is cemented or indurated by carbonates, with or without silica or other cementing agents; *and*

2. Because of lateral continuity, roots can penetrate only along vertical fractures with a horizontal spacing of 10 cm or more; *and*

3. The horizon has a thickness of:

a. 10 cm or more; *or*

b. 1 cm or more if it consists of a laminar cap directly underlain by bedrock.

## Petrogypsic Horizon

The petrogypsic horizon is an illuvial horizon, 10 cm or more thick, in which secondary gypsum has accumulated to the extent that the horizon is cemented or indurated.

### Required Characteristics

A petrogypsic horizon must meet the following requirements:

1. The horizon is cemented or indurated by gypsum, with or without other cementing agents; *and*

2. Because of lateral continuity, roots can penetrate only along vertical fractures with a horizontal spacing of 10 cm or more; *and*

3. The horizon is 10 cm or more thick; *and*

4. The horizon is 5 percent or more gypsum, and the product of its thickness, in cm, multiplied by the gypsum content percentage is 150 or more.

## Placic Horizon

The placic horizon (Gr. base of *plax*, flat stone; meaning a thin cemented pan) is a thin, black to dark reddish pan that is cemented by iron (or iron and manganese) and organic matter.

**Required Characteristics**

A placic horizon must meet the following requirements:

1. The horizon is cemented or indurated with iron or iron and manganese and organic matter, with or without other cementing agents; *and*

2. Because of lateral continuity, roots can penetrate only along vertical fractures with a horizontal spacing of 10 cm or more; *and*

3. The horizon has a minimum thickness of 1 mm and, where associated with spodic materials, is less than 25 mm thick.

## Salic Horizon

A salic horizon is a horizon of accumulation of salts that are more soluble than gypsum in cold water.

**Required Characteristics**

A salic horizon is 15 cm or more thick and has, for 90 consecutive days or more in normal years:

1. An electrical conductivity (EC) equal to or greater than 30 dS/m in the water extracted from a saturated paste; *and*

2. A product of the EC, in dS/m, and thickness, in cm, equal to 900 or more.

## Sombric Horizon

A sombric horizon (F. *sombre*, dark) is a subsurface horizon in mineral soils that has formed under free drainage. It contains illuvial humus that is neither associated with aluminum, as is the humus in the spodic horizon, nor dispersed by sodium, as is common in the natric horizon. Consequently, the sombric horizon does not have the high cation-exchange capacity in its clay that characterizes a spodic horizon and does not have the high base saturation of a natric horizon. It does not underlie an albic horizon.

Sombric horizons are thought to be restricted to the cool, moist soils of high plateaus and mountains in tropical or subtropical regions. Because of strong leaching, their base saturation is low (less than 50 percent by $NH_4OAc$).

The sombric horizon has a lower color value or chroma, or both, than the overlying horizon and commonly contains more organic matter. It may have formed in an argillic, cambic, or oxic horizon. If peds are present, the dark colors are most pronounced on surfaces of peds.

In the field a sombric horizon is easily mistaken for a buried A horizon. It can be distinguished from some buried epipedons by lateral tracing. In thin sections the organic matter of a sombric horizon appears more concentrated on peds and in pores than uniformly dispersed throughout the matrix.

## Spodic Horizon

A spodic horizon is an illuvial layer with 85 percent or more spodic materials (defined below).

**Required Characteristics**

A spodic horizon is normally a subsurface horizon underlying an O, A, Ap, or E horizon. It may, however, meet the definition of an umbric epipedon.

A spodic horizon must have 85 percent or more spodic materials in a layer 2.5 cm or more thick that is not part of any Ap horizon.

# Other Diagnostic Soil Characteristics (Mineral Soils)

Diagnostic soil characteristics are features of the soil that are used in various places in the keys or in definitions of diagnostic horizons.

## Abrupt Textural Change

An abrupt textural change is a specific kind of change that may occur between an ochric epipedon or an albic horizon and an argillic horizon. It is characterized by a considerable increase in clay content within a very short vertical distance in the zone of contact. If the clay content in the fine-earth fraction of the ochric epipedon or albic horizon is less than 20 percent, it doubles within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or less. If the clay content in the fine-earth fraction of the ochric epipedon or the albic horizon is 20 percent or more, there is an increase of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or less (e.g., an increase from 22 to 42 percent) and the clay content in some part of the argillic horizon is 2 times or more the amount contained in the overlying horizon.

Normally, there is no transitional horizon between an ochric epipedon or an albic horizon and an argillic horizon, or the transitional horizon is too thin to be sampled. Some soils, however, have a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials (defined below) in parts of the argillic horizon. The upper boundary of such a horizon is irregular or even discontinuous. Sampling this mixture as a single horizon might create the impression of a relatively thick transitional horizon, whereas the thickness of the actual transition at the contact may be no more than 1 mm.

## Albic Materials

Albic (L. *albus*, white) materials are soil materials with a color that is largely determined by the color of primary sand and silt particles rather than by the color of their coatings. This definition implies that clay and/or free iron oxides have been removed from the materials or that the oxides have been segregated to such an extent that the color of the materials is largely determined by the color of the primary particles.

**Required Characteristics**

Albic materials have *one* of the following colors:

1. Chroma of 2 or less; *and either*

   a. A color value, moist, of 3 and a color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and a color value, dry, of 5 or more; *or*

2. Chroma of 3 or less; *and either*

   a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, dry, of 7 or more; *or*

3. Chroma that is controlled by the color of uncoated grains of silt or sand, hue of 5YR or redder, and the color values listed in item 1-a or 1-b above.

Relatively unaltered layers of light colored sand, volcanic ash, or other materials deposited by wind or water are not considered albic materials, although they may have the same color and apparent morphology. These deposits are parent materials that are not characterized by the removal of clay and/or free iron and do not overlie an illuvial horizon or other soil horizon, except for a buried soil. Light colored krotovinas or filled root channels should be considered albic materials only if they have no fine stratifications or lamellae, if any sealing along the krotovina walls has been destroyed, and if these intrusions have been leached of free iron oxides and/or clay after deposition.

## Andic Soil Properties

Andic soil properties commonly form during weathering of tephra or other parent materials containing a significant content of volcanic glass. Soils that are in cool, humid climates and have abundant organic carbon, however, may develop andic soil properties without the influence of volcanic glass. A suite of glass and glass-coated minerals rich in silica is termed volcanic glass in this taxonomy. These minerals are relatively soluble and undergo fairly rapid transformation when the soils are moist. Andic soil properties represent a stage in transition where weathering and transformation of primary alumino-silicates (e.g., volcanic glass) have proceeded only to the point of the formation of short-range-order materials, such as allophane, imogolite, and ferrihydrite, or of metal-humus complexes. The concept of andic soil properties includes moderately weathered soil material, rich in short-range-order materials or metal-humus complexes, or both, with or without volcanic glass (required characteristic 2) and weakly weathered soil, less rich in short-range-order materials with volcanic glass (required characteristic 3).

Relative amounts of allophane, imogolite, ferrihydrite, or metal-humus complexes in the colloidal fraction are inferred from laboratory analyses of aluminum, iron, and silica extracted by ammonium oxalate, and from phosphate retention. Soil scientists may use smeariness or pH in 1N sodium fluoride (NaF) as field indicators of andic soil properties. *Volcanic glass content* is the percent volcanic glass (by grain count) in the coarse silt and sand (0.02 to 2.0 mm) fraction. Most soil materials with andic soil properties consist of mineral soil materials, but some are organic soil materials with less than 25 percent organic carbon.

**Required Characteristics**

Soil materials with andic soil properties must have a fine-earth fraction that meets the following requirements:

1. Less than 25 percent organic carbon (by weight) and *one or both* of the following:

2. *All* of the following:

   a. Bulk density, measured at 33 kPa water retention, of 0.90 g/cm$^3$ or less; *and*

   b. Phosphate retention of 85 percent or more; *and*

   c. Al + ½ Fe content (by ammonium oxalate) equal to 2.0 percent or more; *or*

3. *All* of the following:

   a. 30 percent or more of the fine-earth fraction is 0.02 to 2.0 mm in size; *and*

   b. Phosphate retention of 25 percent or more; *and*

   c. Al + ½ Fe content (by ammonium oxalate) equal to 0.4 percent or more; *and*

   d. Volcanic glass content of 5 percent or more; *and*

   e. [(Al + ½ Fe content, percent) times (15.625)] + [volcanic glass content, percent] = 36.25 or more.

   The shaded area in figure 1 illustrates criteria 3c, 3d, and 3e.

## Anhydrous Conditions

Anhydrous conditions (Gr. *anydros*, waterless) refer to the moisture condition of soils in very cold deserts and other areas with permafrost (often dry permafrost). These soils typically

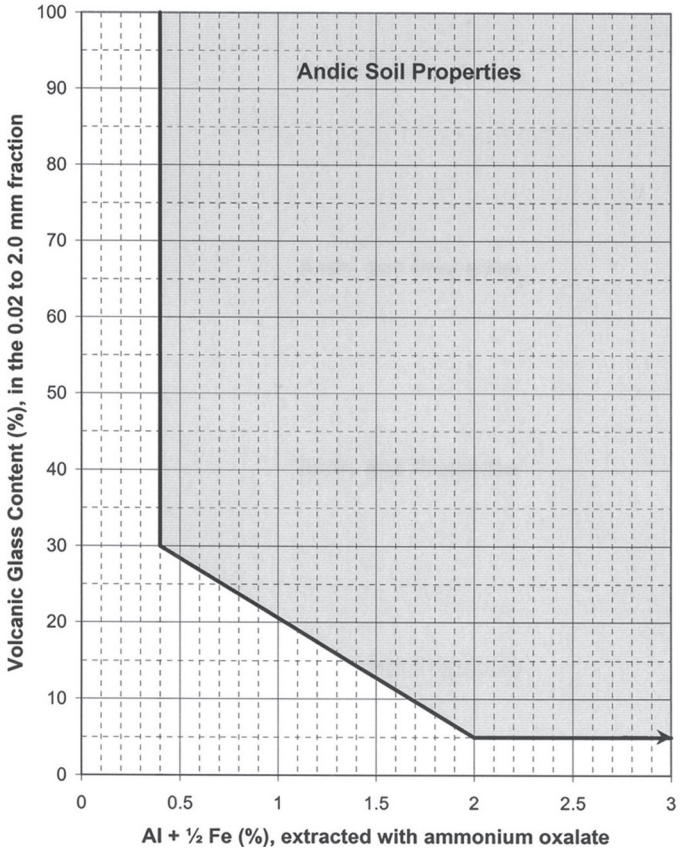



**Figure 1.—Soils that are plotted in the shaded area meet the andic soil properties criteria c, d, and e under item 3 of the required characteristics. To qualify as soils with andic properties, the soils must also meet the listed requirements for organic-carbon content, phosphate retention, and particle-size distribution.**

have low precipitation (usually less than 50 mm water equivalent per year) and a moisture content of less than 3 percent by weight. Anhydrous soil conditions are similar to the aridic (torric) soil moisture regimes (defined below), except that the soil temperature at 50 cm is less than 5 °C throughout the year in the soil layers with these conditions.

### Required Characteristics

Soils with anhydrous conditions have a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder. The layer from 10 to 70 cm below the soil surface has a soil temperature of less than 5 °C throughout the year *and* this layer:

1. Includes no ice-cemented permafrost; *and*

2. Is dry (water held at 1500 kPa or more) in one-half or more of the soil for one-half or more of the time the layer has a soil temperature above 0 °C; *or*

3. Has a rupture-resistance class of loose to slightly hard throughout when the soil temperature is 0 °C or colder, except where a cemented pedogenic horizon occurs.

## Coefficient of Linear Extensibility (COLE)

The coefficient of linear extensibility (COLE) is the ratio of the difference between the moist length and dry length of a clod to its dry length. It is (Lm - Ld)/Ld, where Lm is the length at 33 kPa tension and Ld is the length when dry. COLE can be calculated from the differences in bulk density of the clod when moist and when dry. An estimate of COLE can be calculated in the field by measuring the distance between two pins in a clod of undisturbed soil at field capacity and again after the clod has dried. COLE does not apply if the shrinkage is irreversible.

## Durinodes

Durinodes (L. *durus*, hard, and *nodus*, knot) are weakly cemented to indurated nodules with a diameter of 1 cm or more. The cement is $SiO_2$, presumably opal and microcrystalline forms of silica. Durinodes break down in hot concentrated KOH after treatment with HCl to remove carbonates but do not break down with concentrated HCl alone. Dry durinodes do not slake appreciably in water, but prolonged soaking can result in spalling of very thin platelets. Durinodes are firm or firmer and brittle when wet, both before and after treatment with acid. Most durinodes are roughly concentric when viewed in cross section, and concentric stringers of opal are visible under a hand lens.

## Fragic Soil Properties

Fragic soil properties are the essential properties of a fragipan. They have neither the layer thickness nor volume requirements for the fragipan. Fragic soil properties are in subsurface horizons, although they can be at or near the surface in truncated soils. Aggregates with fragic soil properties have a firm or firmer rupture-resistance class and a brittle manner of failure when soil water is at or near field capacity. Air-dry fragments of the natural fabric, 5 to 10 cm in diameter, slake when they are submerged in water. Aggregates with fragic soil properties show evidence of pedogenesis, including one or more of the following: oriented clay within the matrix or on faces of peds, redoximorphic features within the matrix or on faces of peds, strong or moderate soil structure, and coatings of albic materials or uncoated silt and sand grains on faces of peds or in seams. Peds with these properties are considered to have fragic soil properties regardless of whether or not the density and brittleness are pedogenic.

Soil aggregates with fragic soil properties must:

1. Show evidence of pedogenesis within the aggregates or, at a minimum, on the faces of the aggregates; *and*

2. Slake when air-dry fragments of the natural fabric, 5 to 10 cm in diameter, are submerged in water; *and*

3. Have a firm or firmer rupture-resistance class and a brittle manner of failure when soil water is at or near field capacity; *and*

4. Restrict the entry of roots into the matrix when soil water is at or near field capacity.

## Identifiable Secondary Carbonates

The term "identifiable secondary carbonates" is used in the definitions of a number of taxa. It refers to translocated authigenic calcium carbonate that has been precipitated in place from the soil solution rather than inherited from a soil parent material, such as a calcareous loess or till.

Identifiable secondary carbonates either may disrupt the soil structure or fabric, forming masses, nodules, concretions, or spheroidal aggregates (white eyes) that are soft and powdery when dry, or may be present as coatings in pores, on structural faces, or on the undersides of rock or pararock fragments. If present as coatings, the secondary carbonates cover a significant part of the surfaces. Commonly, they coat all of the surfaces to a thickness of 1 mm or more. If little calcium carbonate is present in the soil, however, the surfaces may be only partially coated. The coatings must be thick enough to be visible when moist. Some horizons are entirely engulfed by carbonates. The color of these horizons is largely determined by the carbonates. The carbonates in these horizons are within the concept of identifiable secondary carbonates.

The filaments commonly seen in a dry calcareous horizon are within the meaning of identifiable secondary carbonates if the filaments are thick enough to be visible when the soil is moist. Filaments commonly branch on structural faces.

## Interfingering of Albic Materials

The term "interfingering of albic materials" refers to albic materials that penetrate 5 cm or more into an underlying argillic, kandic, or natric horizon along vertical and, to a lesser degree, horizontal faces of peds. There need not be a continuous overlying albic horizon. The albic materials constitute less than 15 percent of the layer that they penetrate, but they form continuous skeletans (ped coatings of clean silt or sand defined by Brewer, 1976) 1 mm or more thick on the vertical faces of peds, which means a total width of 2 mm or more between abutting peds. Because quartz is such a common constituent of silt and sand, these skeletans are usually light gray when moist and nearly white when dry, but their color is determined in large part by the color of the sand or silt fraction.

### Required Characteristics

Interfingering of albic materials is recognized if albic materials:

1. Penetrate 5 cm or more into an underlying argillic or natric horizon; *and*

2. Are 2 mm or more thick between vertical faces of abutting peds; *and*

3. Constitute less than 15 percent (by volume) of the layer that they penetrate.

## Lamellae

A lamella is an illuvial horizon less than 7.5 cm thick. Each lamella contains an accumulation of oriented silicate clay on or bridging sand and silt grains (and rock fragments if any are present). A lamella has more silicate clay than the overlying eluvial horizon.

### Required Characteristics

A lamella is an illuvial horizon less than 7.5 cm thick formed in unconsolidated regolith more than 50 cm thick. Each lamella contains an accumulation of oriented silicate clay on or bridging the sand and silt grains (and coarse fragments if any are present). Each lamella is required to have more silicate clay than the overlying eluvial horizon.

Lamellae occur in a vertical series of two or more, and each lamella must have an overlying eluvial horizon. (An eluvial horizon is not required above the uppermost lamella if the soil is truncated.)

Lamellae may meet the requirements for either a cambic or an argillic horizon. A combination of two or more lamellae 15 cm or more thick is a cambic horizon if the texture is very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, or finer. A combination of two or more lamellae meets the requirements for an argillic horizon if there is 15 cm or more cumulative thickness of lamellae that are 0.5 cm or more thick and that have a clay content of *either*:

1. 3 percent or more (absolute) higher than in the overlying eluvial horizon (e.g., 13 percent versus 10 percent) if any part of the eluvial horizon has less than 15 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction; *or*

2. 20 percent or more (relative) higher than in the overlying eluvial horizon (e.g., 24 percent versus 20 percent) if all parts of the eluvial horizon have more than 15 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction.

## Linear Extensibility (LE)

Linear extensibility (LE) helps to predict the potential of a soil to shrink and swell. The LE of a soil layer is the product of the thickness, in cm, multiplied by the COLE of the layer in question. The LE of a soil is the sum of these products for all soil horizons.

## Lithologic Discontinuities

Lithologic discontinuities are significant changes in particle-size distribution or mineralogy that represent differences in lithology within a soil. A lithologic discontinuity can also

denote an age difference. For information on using horizon designations for lithologic discontinuities, see the *Soil Survey Manual* (USDA, SCS, 1993).

Not everyone agrees on the degree of change required for a lithologic discontinuity. No attempt is made to quantify lithologic discontinuities. The discussion below is meant to serve as a guideline.

Several lines of field evidence can be used to evaluate lithologic discontinuities. In addition to mineralogical and textural differences that may require laboratory studies, certain observations can be made in the field. These include but are not limited to the following:

1. **Abrupt textural contacts.**—An abrupt change in particle-size distribution, which is not solely a change in clay content resulting from pedogenesis, can often be observed.
2. **Contrasting sand sizes.**—Significant changes in sand size can be detected. For example, if material containing mostly medium sand or finer sand abruptly overlies material containing mostly coarse sand and very coarse sand, one can assume that there are two different materials. Although the materials may be of the same mineralogy, the contrasting sand sizes result from differences in energy at the time of deposition by water and/or wind.
3. **Bedrock lithology vs. rock fragment lithology in the soil.**—If a soil with rock fragments overlies a lithic contact, one would expect the rock fragments to have a lithology similar to that of the material below the lithic contact. If many of the rock fragments do not have the same lithology as the underlying bedrock, the soil is not derived completely from the underlying bedrock.
4. **Stone lines.**—The occurrence of a horizontal line of rock fragments in the vertical sequence of a soil indicates that the soil may have developed in more than one kind of parent material. The material above the stone line is most likely transported, and the material below may be of different origin.
5. **Inverse distribution of rock fragments.**—A lithologic discontinuity is often indicated by an erratic distribution of rock fragments. The percentage of rock fragments decreases with increasing depth. This line of evidence is useful in areas of soils that have relatively unweathered rock fragments.
6. **Rock fragment weathering rinds.**—Horizons containing rock fragments with no rinds that overlie horizons containing rocks with rinds suggest that the upper material is in part depositional and not related to the lower part in time and perhaps in lithology.
7. **Shape of rock fragments.**—A soil with horizons containing angular rock fragments overlying horizons containing well rounded rock fragments may indicate a discontinuity. This line of evidence represents different mechanisms of transport (colluvial vs. alluvial) or even different transport distances.
8. **Soil color.**—Abrupt changes in color that are not the result of pedogenic processes can be used as indicators of discontinuity.
9. **Micromorphological features.**—Marked differences in the size and shape of resistant minerals in one horizon and not in another are indicators of differences in materials.

**Use of Laboratory Data**

Discontinuities are not always readily apparent in the field. In these cases laboratory data are necessary. Even with laboratory data, detecting discontinuities may be difficult. The decision is a qualitative or perhaps a partly quantitative judgment. General concepts of lithology as a function of depth might include:

1. **Laboratory data—visual scan.**—The array of laboratory data is assessed in an attempt to determine if a field-designated discontinuity is corroborated and if any data show evidence of a discontinuity not observed in the field. One must sort changes in lithology from changes caused by pedogenic processes. In most cases the quantities of sand and coarser fractions are not altered significantly by soil-forming processes. Therefore, an abrupt change in sand size or sand mineralogy is a clue to lithologic change. Gross soil mineralogy and the resistant mineral suite are other clues.
2. **Data on a clay-free basis.**—A common manipulation in assessing lithologic change is computation of sand and silt separates on a carbonate-free, clay-free basis (percent fraction, e.g., fine sand and very fine sand, divided by percent sand plus silt, times 100). Clay distribution is subject to pedogenic change and may either mask inherited lithologic differences or produce differences that are not inherited from lithology. The numerical array computed on a clay-free basis can be inspected visually or plotted as a function of depth.

Another aid used to assess lithologic changes is computation of the ratios of one sand separate to another. The ratios can be computed and examined as a numerical array, or they can be plotted. The ratios work well if sufficient quantities of the two fractions are available. Low quantities magnify changes in ratios, especially if the denominator is low.

## *n* Value

The *n* value (Pons and Zonneveld, 1965) characterizes the relation between the percentage of water in a soil under field conditions and its percentages of inorganic clay and humus. The *n* value is helpful in predicting whether a soil can be grazed by livestock or can support other loads and in predicting what degree of subsidence would occur after drainage.

For mineral soil materials that are not thixotropic, the *n* value can be calculated by the following formula:

$$n = (A - 0.2R)/(L + 3H)$$

In this formula, A is the percentage of water in the soil in field condition, calculated on a dry-soil basis; R is the percentage of silt plus sand; L is the percentage of clay; and H is the percentage of organic matter (percent organic carbon multiplied by 1.724).

Few data for calculations of the *n* value are available in the United States, but the critical *n* value of 0.7 can be approximated closely in the field by a simple test of squeezing a soil sample in the hand. If the soil flows between the fingers with difficulty, the *n* value is between 0.7 and 1.0 (slightly fluid manner of failure class); if the soil flows easily between the fingers, the *n* value is 1 or more (moderately fluid or very fluid manner of failure class).

## Petroferric Contact

A petroferric (Gr. *petra*, rock, and L. *ferrum*, iron; implying ironstone) contact is a boundary between soil and a continuous layer of indurated material in which iron is an important cement and organic matter is either absent or present only in traces. The indurated layer must be continuous within the limits of each pedon, but it may be fractured if the average lateral distance between fractures is 10 cm or more. The fact that this ironstone layer contains little or no organic matter distinguishes it from a placic horizon and an indurated spodic horizon (ortstein), both of which contain organic matter.

Several features can aid in making the distinction between a lithic contact and a petroferric contact. First, a petroferric contact is roughly horizontal. Second, the material directly below a petroferric contact contains a high amount of iron (normally 30 percent or more $Fe_2O_3$). Third, the ironstone sheets below a petroferric contact are thin; their thickness ranges from a few centimeters to very few meters. Sandstone, on the other hand, may be thin or very thick, may be level-bedded or tilted, and may contain only a small percentage of $Fe_2O_3$. In the Tropics, the ironstone is generally more or less vesicular.

## Plinthite

Plinthite (Gr. *plinthos*, brick) is an iron-rich, humus-poor mixture of clay with quartz and other minerals. It commonly occurs as dark red redox concentrations that usually form platy, polygonal, or reticulate patterns. Plinthite changes irreversibly to an ironstone hardpan or to irregular aggregates on exposure to repeated wetting and drying, especially if it is also exposed to heat from the sun. The lower boundary of a zone in which plinthite occurs generally is diffuse or gradual, but it may be abrupt at a lithologic discontinuity.

Generally, plinthite forms in a horizon that is saturated with water for some time during the year. Initially, iron is normally segregated in the form of soft, more or less clayey, red or dark red redox concentrations. These concentrations are not considered plinthite unless there has been enough segregation of iron to permit their irreversible hardening on exposure to repeated wetting and drying. Plinthite is firm or very firm when the soil moisture content is near field capacity and hard when the moisture content is below the wilting point. Plinthite does not harden irreversibly as a result of a single cycle of drying and rewetting. After a single drying, it will remoisten and then can be dispersed in large part if one shakes it in water with a dispersing agent.

In a moist soil, plinthite is soft enough to be cut with a spade. After irreversible hardening, it is no longer considered plinthite but is called ironstone. Indurated ironstone materials can be broken or shattered with a spade but cannot be dispersed if one shakes tham in water with a dispersing agent.

## Resistant Minerals

Several references are made to resistant minerals in this taxonomy. Obviously, the stability of a mineral in the soil is a partial function of the soil moisture regime. Where resistant minerals are referred to in the definitions of diagnostic horizons and of various taxa, a humid climate, past or present, is always assumed.

Resistant minerals are durable minerals in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction. Examples are quartz, zircon, tourmaline, beryl, anatase, rutile, iron oxides and oxyhydroxides, 1:1 dioctahedral phyllosilicates (kandites), gibbsite, and hydroxy-alluminum interlayered 2:1 minerals (Burt, 2004).

## Slickensides

Slickensides are polished and grooved surfaces and generally have dimensions exceeding 5 cm. They are produced when one soil mass slides past another. Some slickensides occur at the lower boundary of a slip surface where a mass of soil moves downward on a relatively steep slope. Slickensides result directly from the swelling of clay minerals and shear failure. They are very common in swelling clays that undergo marked changes in moisture content.

## Spodic Materials

Spodic materials form in an illuvial horizon that normally underlies a histic, ochric, or umbric epipedon or an albic horizon. In most undisturbed areas, spodic materials underlie an albic horizon. They may occur within an umbric epipedon or an Ap horizon.

A horizon consisting of spodic materials normally has an optical-density-of-oxalate-extract (ODOE) value of 0.25 or more, and that value is commonly at least 2 times as high as the ODOE value in an overlying eluvial horizon. This increase in ODOE value indicates an accumulation of translocated organic materials in an illuvial horizon. Soils with spodic materials show evidence that organic materials and aluminum, with or without iron, have been moved from an eluvial horizon to an illuvial horizon.

### Definition of Spodic Materials

Spodic materials are mineral soil materials that do not have all of the properties of an argillic or kandic horizon; are

dominated by active amorphous materials that are illuvial and are composed of organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; and have *both* of the following:

1. A pH value in water (1:1) of 5.9 or less and an organic-carbon content of 0.6 percent or more; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

   a. An overlying albic horizon that extends horizontally through 50 percent or more of each pedon and, directly under the albic horizon, colors, moist (crushed and smoothed sample), as follows:

      (1) Hue of 5YR or redder; *or*

      (2) Hue of 7.5YR, color value of 5 or less, and chroma of 4 or less; *or*

      (3) Hue of 10YR or neutral and a color value and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

      (4) A color of 10YR 3/1; *or*

   b. With or without an albic horizon and one of the colors listed above or hue of 7.5YR, color value, moist, of 5 or less, chroma of 5 or 6 (crushed and smoothed sample), and *one or more* of the following morphological or chemical properties:

      (1) Cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron, in 50 percent or more of each pedon and a very firm or firmer rupture-resistance class in the cemented part; *or*

      (2) 10 percent or more cracked coatings on sand grains; *or*

      (3) Al + ½ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.50 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying umbric (or subhorizon of an umbric) epipedon, ochric epipedon, or albic horizon; *or*

      (4) An optical-density-of-oxalate-extract (ODOE) value of 0.25 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying umbric (or subhorizon of an umbric) epipedon, ochric epipedon, or albic horizon.

### Volcanic Glass

Volcanic glass is defined herein as optically isotropic translucent glass or pumice of any color. It includes glass, pumice, glass-coated crystalline minerals, glass aggregates, and glassy materials.

Volcanic glass is typically a dominant component in relatively unweathered tephra. Weathering and mineral transformation of volcanic glass can produce short-range-order minerals, such as allophane, imogolite, and ferrihydrite.

*Volcanic glass content* is the percent (by grain count) of glass, glass-coated mineral grains, glass aggregates, and glassy materials in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction. Typically, the content is determined for one particle-size fraction (i.e., coarse silt, very fine sand, or fine sand) and used as an estimate of glass content in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction.

Volcanic glass content is a criterion in classification of andic soil properties, subgroups with the formative element "vitr(i)," and families with "ashy" substitute particle-size classes and the glassy mineralogy class.

### Weatherable Minerals

Several references are made to weatherable minerals in this taxonomy. Obviously, the stability of a mineral in a soil is a partial function of the soil moisture regime. Where weatherable minerals are referred to in the definitions of diagnostic horizons and of various taxa in this taxonomy, a humid climate, either present or past, is always assumed. Examples of the minerals that are included in the meaning of weatherable minerals are all 2:1 phyllosilicates, chlorite, sepiolite, palygorskite, allophane, 1:1 trioctahedral phyllosilicates (serpentines), feldspars, feldspathoids, ferromagnesian minerals, glass, zeolites, dolomite, and apatite in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction.

Obviously, this definition of the term “weatherable minerals” is restrictive. The intent is to include, in the definitions of diagnostic horizons and various taxa, only those weatherable minerals that are unstable in a humid climate compared to other minerals, such as quartz and 1:1 lattice clays, but that are more resistant to weathering than calcite. Calcite, carbonate aggregates, gypsum, and halite are not considered weatherable minerals because they are mobile in the soil. They appear to be recharged in some otherwise strongly weathered soils.

# Characteristics Diagnostic for Organic Soils

Following is a description of the characteristics that are used only with organic soils.

## Kinds of Organic Soil Materials

Three different kinds of organic soil materials are distinguished in this taxonomy, based on the degree of decomposition of the plant materials from which the organic materials are derived. The three kinds are (1) fibric, (2) hemic, and (3) sapric. Because of the importance of fiber content in the definitions of these materials, fibers are defined before the kinds of organic soil materials.

### Fibers

Fibers are pieces of plant tissue in organic soil materials (excluding live roots) that:

1. Are large enough to be retained on a 100-mesh sieve (openings 0.15 mm across) when the materials are screened; *and*

2. Show evidence of the cellular structure of the plants from which they are derived; *and*

3. Either are 2 cm or less in their smallest dimension or are decomposed enough to be crushed and shredded with the fingers.

Pieces of wood that are larger than 2 cm in cross section and are so undecomposed that they cannot be crushed and shredded with the fingers, such as large branches, logs, and stumps, are not considered fibers but are considered coarse fragments (comparable to gravel, stones, and boulders in mineral soils).

## Fibric Soil Materials

Fibric soil materials are organic soil materials that *either*:

1. Contain three-fourths or more (by volume) fibers after rubbing, excluding coarse fragments; *or*

2. Contain two-fifths or more (by volume) fibers after rubbing, excluding coarse fragments, and yield color values and chromas of 7/1, 7/2, 8/1, 8/2, or 8/3 (fig. 2) on white chromatographic or filter paper that is inserted into a paste made of the soil materials in a saturated sodium-pyrophosphate solution.

## Hemic Soil Materials

Hemic soil materials (Gr. *hemi*, half; implying intermediate decomposition) are intermediate in their degree of decomposition between the less decomposed fibric and more decomposed sapric materials. Their morphological features give intermediate values for fiber content, bulk density, and water content. Hemic soil materials are partly altered both physically and biochemically.

## Sapric Soil Materials

Sapric soil materials (Gr. *sapros*, rotten) are the most highly decomposed of the three kinds of organic soil materials. They have the smallest amount of plant fiber, the highest bulk density, and the lowest water content on a dry-weight basis at saturation. Sapric soil materials are commonly very dark gray to black. They are relatively stable; i.e., they change very little physically and chemically with time in comparison to other organic soil materials.

Sapric materials have the following characteristics:

1. The fiber content, after rubbing, is less than one-sixth (by volume), excluding coarse fragments; *and*

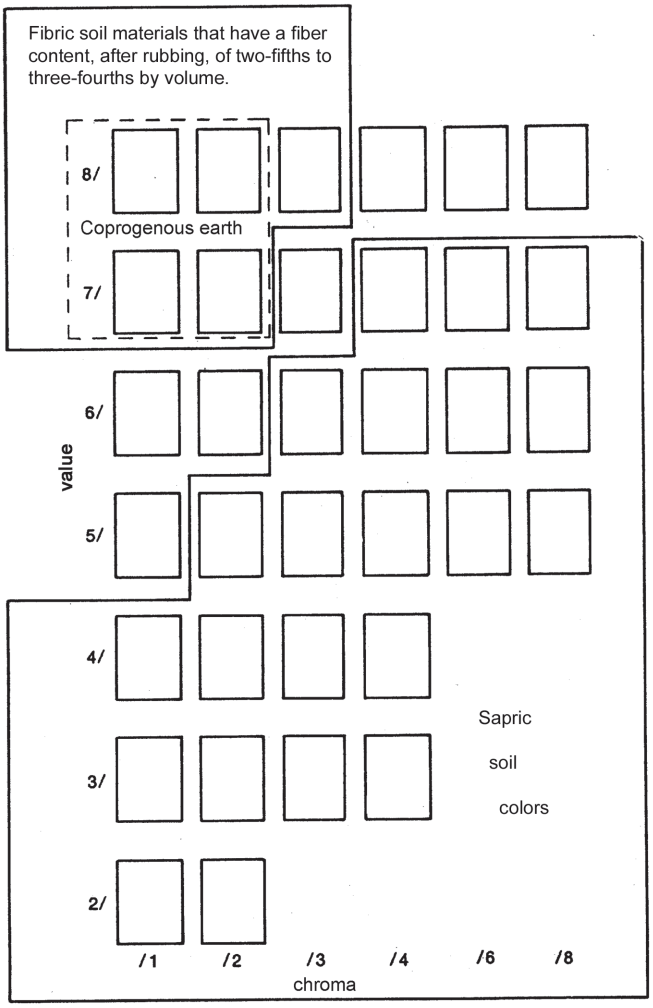



**Figure 2.—Value and chroma of pyrophosphate solution of fibric and sapric materials.**

2. The color of the sodium-pyrophosphate extract on white chromatographic or filter paper is below or to the right of a line drawn to exclude blocks 5/1, 6/2, and 7/3 (Munsell designations, fig. 2). If few or no fibers can be detected and the color of the pyrophosphate extract is to the left of or above this line, the possibility that the material is limnic must be considered.

## Humilluvic Material

Humilluvic material, i.e., illuvial humus, accumulates in the lower parts of some organic soils that are acid and have been drained and cultivated. The humilluvic material has a $C^{14}$ age that is not older than the overlying organic materials. It has very high solubility in sodium pyrophosphate and rewets very slowly after drying. Most commonly, it accumulates near a contact with a sandy mineral horizon.

To be recognized as a differentia in classification, the humilluvic material must constitute one-half or more (by volume) of a layer 2 cm or more thick.

## Limnic Materials

The presence or absence of limnic deposits is taken into account in the higher categories of Histosols but not Histels. The nature of such deposits is considered in the lower categories of Histosols. Limnic materials include both organic and inorganic materials that were either (1) deposited in water by precipitation or through the action of aquatic organisms, such as algae or diatoms, or (2) derived from underwater and floating aquatic plants and subsequently modified by aquatic animals. They include coprogenous earth (sedimentary peat), diatomaceous earth, and marl.

### Coprogenous Earth

A layer of coprogenous earth (sedimentary peat) is a limnic layer that:

1. Contains many fecal pellets with diameters between a few hundredths and a few tenths of a millimeter; *and*

2. Has a color value, moist, of 4 or less; *and*

3. Either forms a slightly viscous water suspension and is nonplastic or slightly plastic but not sticky, or shrinks upon drying, forming clods that are difficult to rewet and often tend to crack along horizontal planes; *and*

4. Either yields a saturated sodium-pyrophosphate extract on white chromatographic or filter paper that has a color value of 7 or more and chroma of 2 or less (fig. 2) or has a cation-exchange capacity of less than 240 cmol(+) per kg organic matter (measured by loss on ignition), or both.

### Diatomaceous Earth

A layer of diatomaceous earth is a limnic layer that:

1. If not previously dried, has a matrix color value of 3, 4, or 5, which changes irreversibly on drying as a result of the irreversible shrinkage of organic-matter coatings on diatoms (identifiable by microscopic, 440 X, examination of dry samples); *and*

2. Either yields a saturated sodium-pyrophosphate extract on white chromatographic or filter paper that has a color value of 8 or more and chroma of 2 or less or has a cation-exchange capacity of less than 240 cmol(+) per kg organic matter (by loss on ignition), or both.

### Marl

A layer of marl is a limnic layer that:

1. Has a color value, moist, of 5 or more; *and*

2. Reacts with dilute HCl to evolve $CO_2$.

The color of marl usually does not change irreversibly on drying because a layer of marl contains too little organic matter, even before it has been shrunk by drying, to coat the carbonate particles.

# Thickness of Organic Soil Materials (Control Section of Histosols and Histels)

The thickness of organic materials over limnic materials, mineral materials, water, or permafrost is used to define the Histosols and Histels.

For practical reasons, an arbitrary control section has been established for the classification of Histosols and Histels. Depending on the kinds of soil material in the surface layer, the control section has a thickness of either 130 cm or 160 cm from the soil surface if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, thick layer of water, or permafrost within the respective limit. The thicker control section is used if the surface layer to a depth of 60 cm either contains three-fourths or more fibers derived from *Sphagnum*, *Hypnum*, or other mosses or has a bulk density of less than 0.1. Layers of water, which may be between a few centimeters and many meters thick in these soils, are considered to be the lower boundary of the control section only if the water extends below a depth of 130 or 160 cm, respectively. A densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, if shallower than 130 or 160 cm, constitutes the lower boundary of the control section. In some soils the lower boundary is 25 cm below the upper limit of permafrost. An unconsolidated mineral substratum shallower than those limits does not change the lower boundary of the control section.

The control section of Histosols and Histels is divided somewhat arbitrarily into three tiers—surface, subsurface, and bottom tiers.

## Surface Tier

The surface tier of a Histosol or Histel extends from the soil surface to a depth of 60 cm if either (1) the materials within that depth are fibric and three-fourths or more of the fiber volume is derived from *Sphagnum* or other mosses or (2) the materials have a bulk density of less than 0.1. Otherwise, the surface tier extends from the soil surface to a depth of 30 cm.

Some organic soils have a mineral surface layer less than 40 cm thick as a result of flooding, volcanic eruptions, additions of mineral materials to increase soil strength or reduce the hazard of frost, or other causes. If such a mineral layer is less than 30 cm thick, it constitutes the upper part of the surface tier; if it is 30 to 40 cm thick, it constitutes the whole surface tier and part of the subsurface tier.

### Subsurface Tier

The subsurface tier is normally 60 cm thick. If the control section ends at a shallower depth (at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or a water layer or in permafrost), however, the subsurface tier extends from the lower boundary of the surface tier to the lower boundary of the control section. It includes any unconsolidated mineral layers that may be present within those depths.

### Bottom Tier

The bottom tier is 40 cm thick unless the control section has its lower boundary at a shallower depth (at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or a water layer or in permafrost).

Thus, if the organic materials are thick, there are two possible thicknesses of the control section, depending on the presence or absence and the thickness of a surface mantle of fibric moss or other organic material that has a low bulk density (less than 0.1). If the fibric moss extends to a depth of 60 cm and is the dominant material within this depth (three-fourths or more of the volume), the control section is 160 cm thick. If the fibric moss is thin or absent, the control section extends to a depth of 130 cm.

## Horizons and Characteristics Diagnostic for Both Mineral and Organic Soils

Following are descriptions of the horizons and characteristics that are diagnostic for both mineral and organic soils.

### Aquic Conditions

Soils with aquic (L. *aqua*, water) conditions are those that currently undergo continuous or periodic saturation and reduction. The presence of these conditions is indicated by redoximorphic features, except in Histosols and Histels, and can be verified by measuring saturation and reduction, except in artificially drained soils. Artificial drainage is defined here as the removal of free water from soils having aquic conditions by surface mounding, ditches, or subsurface tiles to the extent that water table levels are changed significantly in connection with specific types of land use. In the keys, artificially drained soils are included with soils that have aquic conditions.

Elements of aquic conditions are as follows:

1. Saturation is characterized by zero or positive pressure in the soil water and can generally be determined by observing free water in an unlined auger hole. Problems may arise, however, in clayey soils with peds, where an unlined auger hole may fill with water flowing along faces of peds while the soil matrix is and remains unsaturated (bypass flow). Such free water may incorrectly suggest the presence of a water table, while the actual water table occurs at greater depth. Use of well sealed piezometers or tensiometers is therefore recommended for measuring saturation. Problems may still occur, however, if water runs into piezometer slits near the bottom of the piezometer hole or if tensiometers with slowly reacting manometers are used. The first problem can be overcome by using piezometers with smaller slits and the second by using transducer tensiometry, which reacts faster than manometers. Soils are considered wet if they have pressure heads greater than -1 kPa. Only macropores, such as cracks between peds or channels, are then filled with air, while the soil matrix is usually still saturated. Obviously, exact measurements of the wet state can be obtained only with tensiometers. For operational purposes, the use of piezometers is recommended as a standard method.

The duration of saturation required for creating aquic conditions varies, depending on the soil environment, and is not specified.

Three types of saturation are defined:

a. *Endosaturation.*—The soil is saturated with water in all layers from the upper boundary of saturation to a depth of 200 cm or more from the mineral soil surface.

b. *Episaturation.*—The soil is saturated with water in one or more layers within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface and also has one or more unsaturated layers, with an upper boundary above a depth of 200 cm, below the saturated layer. The zone of saturation, i.e., the water table, is perched on top of a relatively impermeable layer.

c. *Anthric saturation.*—This term refers to a special kind of aquic conditions that occur in soils that are cultivated and irrigated (flood irrigation). Soils with anthraquic conditions must meet the requirements for aquic conditions and in addition have *both* of the following:

(1) A tilled surface layer and a directly underlying slowly permeable layer that has, for 3 months or more in normal years, *both*:

(a) Saturation and reduction; *and*

(b) Chroma of 2 or less in the matrix; *and*

(2) A subsurface horizon with *one or more* of the following:

(a) Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less in macropores; *or*

(b) Redox concentrations of iron; *or*

(c) 2 times or more the amount of iron (by dithionite citrate) contained in the tilled surface layer.

2. The degree of reduction in a soil can be characterized by the direct measurement of redox potentials. Direct

measurements should take into account chemical equilibria as expressed by stability diagrams in standard soil textbooks. Reduction and oxidation processes are also a function of soil pH. Obtaining accurate measurements of the degree of reduction in a soil is difficult. In the context of this taxonomy, however, only a degree of reduction that results in reduced iron is considered, because it produces the visible redoximorphic features that are identified in the keys. A simple field test is available to determine if reduced iron ions are present. A freshly broken surface of a field-wet soil sample is treated with alpha,alpha-dipyridyl in neutral, 1-normal ammonium-acetate solution. The appearance of a strong red color on the freshly broken surface indicates the presence of reduced iron ions. A positive reaction to the alpha,alpha-dipyridyl field test for ferrous iron (Childs, 1981) may be used to confirm the existence of reducing conditions and is especially useful in situations where, despite saturation, normal morphological indicators of such conditions are either absent or obscured (as by the dark colors characteristic of melanic great groups). A negative reaction, however, does not imply that reducing conditions are always absent. It may only mean that the level of free iron in the soil is below the sensitivity limit of the test or that the soil is in an oxidized phase at the time of testing. Use of alpha,alpha-dipyridyl in a 10 percent acetic-acid solution is not recommended because the acid is likely to change soil conditions, for example, by dissolving $CaCO_3$.

The duration of reduction required for creating aquic conditions is not specified.

3. Redoximorphic features associated with wetness result from alternating periods of reduction and oxidation of iron and manganese compounds in the soil. Reduction occurs during saturation with water, and oxidation occurs when the soil is not saturated. The reduced iron and manganese ions are mobile and may be transported by water as it moves through the soil. Certain redox patterns occur as a function of the patterns in which the ion-carrying water moves through the soil and as a function of the location of aerated zones in the soil. Redox patterns are also affected by the fact that manganese is reduced more rapidly than iron, while iron oxidizes more rapidly upon aeration. Characteristic color patterns are created by these processes. The reduced iron and manganese ions may be removed from a soil if vertical or lateral fluxes of water occur, in which case there is no iron or manganese precipitation in that soil. Wherever the iron and manganese are oxidized and precipitated, they form either soft masses or hard concretions or nodules. Movement of iron and manganese as a result of redox processes in a soil may result in redoximorphic features that are defined as follows:

a. *Redox concentrations.*—These are zones of apparent accumulation of Fe-Mn oxides, including:

(1) Nodules and concretions, which are cemented bodies that can be removed from the soil intact. Concretions are distinguished from nodules on the basis of internal organization. A concretion typically has concentric layers that are visible to the naked eye. Nodules do not have visible organized internal structure. Boundaries commonly are diffuse if formed *in situ* and sharp after pedoturbation. Sharp boundaries may be relict features in some soils; *and*

(2) Masses, which are noncemented concentrations of substances within the soil matrix; *and*

(3) Pore linings, i.e., zones of accumulation along pores that may be either coatings on pore surfaces or impregnations from the matrix adjacent to the pores.

b. *Redox depletions.*—These are zones of low chroma (chromas less than those in the matrix) where either Fe-Mn oxides alone or both Fe-Mn oxides and clay have been stripped out, including:

(1) Iron depletions, i.e., zones that contain low amounts of Fe and Mn oxides but have a clay content similar to that of the adjacent matrix (often referred to as albans or neoalbans); *and*

(2) Clay depletions, i.e., zones that contain low amounts of Fe, Mn, and clay (often referred to as silt coatings or skeletans).

c. *Reduced matrix.*—This is a soil matrix that has low chroma *in situ* but undergoes a change in hue or chroma within 30 minutes after the soil material has been exposed to air.

d. In soils that have no visible redoximorphic features, a reaction to an alpha,alpha-dipyridyl solution satisfies the requirement for redoximorphic features.

Field experience indicates that it is not possible to define a specific set of redoximorphic features that is uniquely characteristic of all of the taxa in one particular category. Therefore, color patterns that are unique to specific taxa are referenced in the keys.

Anthraquic conditions are a variant of episaturation and are associated with controlled flooding (for such crops as wetland rice and cranberries), which causes reduction processes in the saturated, puddled surface soil and oxidation of reduced and mobilized iron and manganese in the unsaturated subsoil.

## Cryoturbation

Cryoturbation (frost churning) is the mixing of the soil matrix within the pedon that results in irregular or broken horizons, involutions, accumulation of organic matter on the permafrost table, oriented rock fragments, and silt caps on rock fragments.

## Densic Contact

A densic contact (L. *densus*, thick) is a contact between soil and densic materials (defined below). It has no cracks, or the spacing of cracks that roots can enter is 10 cm or more.

## Densic Materials

Densic materials are relatively unaltered materials (do not meet the requirements for any other named diagnostic horizons or any other diagnostic soil characteristic) that have a noncemented rupture-resistance class. The bulk density or the organization is such that roots cannot enter, except in cracks. These are mostly earthy materials, such as till, volcanic mudflows, and some mechanically compacted materials, for example, mine spoils. Some noncemented rocks can be densic materials if they are dense or resistant enough to keep roots from entering, except in cracks.

Densic materials are noncemented and thus differ from paralithic materials and the material below a lithic contact, both of which are cemented.

Densic materials have, at their upper boundary, a densic contact if they have no cracks or if the spacing of cracks that roots can enter is 10 cm or more. These materials can be used to differentiate soil series if the materials are within the series control section.

## Gelic Materials

Gelic materials are mineral or organic soil materials that show evidence of cryoturbation (frost churning) and/or ice segregation in the active layer (seasonal thaw layer) and/or the upper part of the permafrost. Cryoturbation is manifested by irregular and broken horizons, involutions, accumulation of organic matter on top of and within the permafrost, oriented rock fragments, and silt-enriched layers. The characteristic structures associated with gelic materials include platy, blocky, or granular macrostructures; the structural results of sorting; and orbiculic, conglomeric, banded, or vesicular microfabrics. Ice segregation is manifested by ice lenses, vein ice, segregated ice crystals, and ice wedges. Cryopedogenic processes that lead to gelic materials are driven by the physical volume change of water to ice, moisture migration along a thermal gradient in the frozen system, or thermal contraction of the frozen material by continued rapid cooling.

## Glacic Layer

A glacic layer is massive ice or ground ice in the form of ice lenses or wedges. The layer is 30 cm or more thick and contains 75 percent or more visible ice.

## Lithic Contact

A lithic contact is the boundary between soil and a coherent underlying material. Except in Ruptic-Lithic subgroups, the underlying material must be virtually continuous within the limits of a pedon. Cracks that can be penetrated by roots are few, and their horizontal spacing is 10 cm or more. The underlying material must be sufficiently coherent when moist to make hand-digging with a spade impractical, although the material may be chipped or scraped with a spade. The material below a lithic contact must be in a strongly cemented or more cemented rupture-resistance class. Commonly, the material is indurated. The underlying material considered here does not include diagnostic soil horizons, such as a duripan or a petrocalcic horizon.

A lithic contact is diagnostic at the subgroup level if it is within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface in Oxisols and within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface in all other mineral soils. In organic soils the lithic contact must be within the control section to be recognized at the subgroup level.

## Paralithic Contact

A paralithic (lithiclike) contact is a contact between soil and paralithic materials (defined below) where the paralithic materials have no cracks or the spacing of cracks that roots can enter is 10 cm or more.

## Paralithic Materials

Paralithic materials are relatively unaltered materials (do not meet the requirements for any other named diagnostic horizons or any other diagnostic soil characteristic) that have an extremely weakly cemented to moderately cemented rupture-resistance class. Cementation, bulk density, and the organization are such that roots cannot enter, except in cracks. Paralithic materials have, at their upper boundary, a paralithic contact if they have no cracks or if the spacing of cracks that roots can enter is 10 cm or more. Commonly, these materials are partially weathered bedrock or weakly consolidated bedrock, such as sandstone, siltstone, or shale. Paralithic materials can be used to differentiate soil series if the materials are within the series control section. Fragments of paralithic materials 2.0 mm or more in diameter are referred to as pararock fragments.

## Permafrost

Permafrost is defined as a thermal condition in which a material (including soil material) remains below 0 °C for 2 or more years in succession. Those gelic materials having permafrost contain the unfrozen soil solution that drives cryopedogenic processes. Permafrost may be cemented by ice

or, in the case of insufficient interstitial water, may be dry. The frozen layer has a variety of ice lenses, vein ice, segregated ice crystals, and ice wedges. The permafrost table is in dynamic equilibrium with the environment.

## Soil Moisture Regimes

The term "soil moisture regime" refers to the presence or absence either of ground water or of water held at a tension of less than 1500 kPa in the soil or in specific horizons during periods of the year. Water held at a tension of 1500 kPa or more is not available to keep most mesophytic plants alive. The availability of water is also affected by dissolved salts. If a soil is saturated with water that is too salty to be available to most plants, it is considered salty rather than dry. Consequently, a horizon is considered dry when the moisture tension is 1500 kPa or more and is considered moist if water is held at a tension of less than 1500 kPa but more than zero. A soil may be continuously moist in some or all horizons either throughout the year or for some part of the year. It may be either moist in winter and dry in summer or the reverse. In the Northern Hemisphere, summer refers to June, July, and August and winter refers to December, January, and February.

### Normal Years

In the discussions that follow and throughout the keys, the term "normal years" is used. A normal year is defined as a year that has plus or minus one standard deviation of the long-term mean annual precipitation. (Long-term refers to 30 years or more.) Also, the mean monthly precipitation during a normal year must be plus or minus one standard deviation of the long-term monthly precipitation for 8 of the 12 months. For the most part, normal years can be calculated from the mean annual precipitation. When catastrophic events occur during a year, however, the standard deviations of the monthly means should also be calculated. The term "normal years" replaces the terms "most years" and "6 out of 10 years," which were used in the 1975 edition of *Soil Taxonomy* (USDA, SCS, 1975).

### Soil Moisture Control Section

The intent in defining the soil moisture control section is to facilitate estimation of soil moisture regimes from climatic data. The upper boundary of this control section is the depth to which a dry (tension of more than 1500 kPa, but not air-dry) soil will be moistened by 2.5 cm of water within 24 hours. The lower boundary is the depth to which a dry soil will be moistened by 7.5 cm of water within 48 hours. These depths do not include the depth of moistening along any cracks or animal burrows that are open to the surface.

If 7.5 cm of water moistens the soil to a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact or to a petrocalcic or petrogypsic horizon or a duripan, the contact or the upper boundary of the cemented horizon constitutes the lower boundary of the soil moisture control section. If a soil is moistened to one of these contacts or horizons by 2.5 cm of water, the soil moisture control section is the boundary or the contact itself. The control section of such a soil is considered moist if the contact or upper boundary of the cemented horizon has a thin film of water. If that upper boundary is dry, the control section is considered dry.

The moisture control section of a soil extends approximately (1) from 10 to 30 cm below the soil surface if the particle-size class of the soil is fine-loamy, coarse-silty, fine-silty, or clayey; (2) from 20 to 60 cm if the particle-size class is coarse-loamy; and (3) from 30 to 90 cm if the particle-size class is sandy. If the soil contains rock and pararock fragments that do not absorb and release water, the limits of the moisture control section are deeper. The limits of the soil moisture control section are affected not only by the particle-size class but also by differences in soil structure or pore-size distribution or by other factors that influence the movement and retention of water in the soil.

### Classes of Soil Moisture Regimes

The soil moisture regimes are defined in terms of the level of ground water and in terms of the seasonal presence or absence of water held at a tension of less than 1500 kPa in the moisture control section. It is assumed in the definitions that the soil supports whatever vegetation it is capable of supporting, i.e., crops, grass, or native vegetation, and that the amount of stored moisture is not being increased by irrigation or fallowing. These cultural practices affect the soil moisture conditions as long as they are continued.

**Aquic moisture regime.**—The aquic (L. *aqua*, water) moisture regime is a reducing regime in a soil that is virtually free of dissolved oxygen because it is saturated by water. Some soils are saturated with water at times while dissolved oxygen is present, either because the water is moving or because the environment is unfavorable for micro-organisms (e.g., if the temperature is less than 1 °C); such a regime is not considered aquic.

It is not known how long a soil must be saturated before it is said to have an aquic moisture regime, but the duration must be at least a few days, because it is implicit in the concept that dissolved oxygen is virtually absent. Because dissolved oxygen is removed from ground water by respiration of micro-organisms, roots, and soil fauna, it is also implicit in the concept that the soil temperature is above biologic zero for some time while the soil is saturated. Biologic zero is defined as 5 °C in this taxonomy. In some of the very cold regions of the world, however, biological activity occurs at temperatures below 5 °C.

Very commonly, the level of ground water fluctuates with the seasons; it is highest in the rainy season or in fall, winter, or spring if cold weather virtually stops evapotranspiration. There are soils, however, in which the ground water is always at or

very close to the surface. Examples are soils in tidal marshes or in closed, landlocked depressions fed by perennial streams. Such soils are considered to have a peraquic moisture regime.

**Aridic and torric (L. *aridus*, dry, and L. *torridus*, hot and dry) moisture regimes.**—These terms are used for the same moisture regime but in different categories of the taxonomy.

In the aridic (torric) moisture regime, the moisture control section is, in normal years:

1. Dry in all parts for more than half of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is above 5 °C; *and*

2. Moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is above 8 °C.

Soils that have an aridic (torric) moisture regime normally occur in areas of arid climates. A few are in areas of semiarid climates and either have physical properties that keep them dry, such as a crusty surface that virtually precludes the infiltration of water, or are on steep slopes where runoff is high. There is little or no leaching in this moisture regime, and soluble salts accumulate in the soils if there is a source.

The limits set for soil temperature exclude from these moisture regimes soils in the very cold and dry polar regions and in areas at high elevations. Such soils are considered to have anhydrous conditions (defined earlier).

**Udic moisture regime.**—The udic (L. *udus*, humid) moisture regime is one in which the soil moisture control section is not dry in any part for as long as 90 cumulative days in normal years. If the mean annual soil temperature is lower than 22 °C and if the mean winter and mean summer soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface differ by 6 °C or more, the soil moisture control section, in normal years, is dry in all parts for less than 45 consecutive days in the 4 months following the summer solstice. In addition, the udic moisture regime requires, except for short periods, a three-phase system, solid-liquid-gas, in part or all of the soil moisture control section when the soil temperature is above 5 °C.

The udic moisture regime is common to the soils of humid climates that have well distributed rainfall; have enough rain in summer so that the amount of stored moisture plus rainfall is approximately equal to, or exceeds, the amount of evapotranspiration; or have adequate winter rains to recharge the soils and cool, foggy summers, as in coastal areas. Water moves downward through the soils at some time in normal years.

In climates where precipitation exceeds evapotranspiration in all months of normal years, the moisture tension rarely reaches 100 kPa in the soil moisture control section, although there are occasional brief periods when some stored moisture is used. The water moves through the soil in all months when it is not frozen. Such an extremely wet moisture regime is called perudic (L. *per*, throughout in time, and L. *udus*, humid). In the names of most taxa, the formative element "ud" is used to indicate either a udic or a perudic regime; the formative element "per" is used in selected taxa.

**Ustic moisture regime.**—The ustic (L. *ustus*, burnt; implying dryness) moisture regime is intermediate between the aridic regime and the udic regime. Its concept is one of moisture that is limited but is present at a time when conditions are suitable for plant growth. The concept of the ustic moisture regime is not applied to soils that have permafrost (defined above).

If the mean annual soil temperature is 22 °C or higher or if the mean summer and winter soil temperatures differ by less than 6 °C at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface, the soil moisture control section in areas of the ustic moisture regime is dry in some or all parts for 90 or more cumulative days in normal years. It is moist, however, in some part either for more than 180 cumulative days per year or for 90 or more consecutive days.

If the mean annual soil temperature is lower than 22 °C and if the mean summer and winter soil temperatures differ by 6 °C or more at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface, the soil moisture control section in areas of the ustic moisture regime is dry in some or all parts for 90 or more cumulative days in normal years, but it is not dry in all parts for more than half of the cumulative days when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is higher than 5 °C. If in normal years the moisture control section is moist in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days in the 4 months following the winter solstice, the moisture control section is dry in all parts for less than 45 consecutive days in the 4 months following the summer solstice.

In tropical and subtropical regions that have a monsoon climate with either one or two dry seasons, summer and winter seasons have little meaning. In those regions the moisture regime is ustic if there is at least one rainy season of 3 months or more. In temperate regions of subhumid or semiarid climates, the rainy seasons are usually spring and summer or spring and fall, but never winter. Native plants are mostly annuals or plants that have a dormant period while the soil is dry.

**Xeric moisture regime.**—The xeric (Gr. *xeros*, dry) moisture regime is the typical moisture regime in areas of Mediterranean climates, where winters are moist and cool and summers are warm and dry. The moisture, which falls during the winter, when potential evapotranspiration is at a minimum, is particularly effective for leaching. In areas of a xeric moisture regime, the soil moisture control section, in normal years, is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days in the 4 months following the summer solstice and moist in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days in the 4 months following the winter solstice. Also, in normal years, the moisture control section is moist in some part for more than half of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is higher than 5 °C or for 90 or more consecutive days when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is higher than 8 °C. The mean annual soil temperature is lower

than 22 °C, and the mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures differ by 6 °C or more either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

## Soil Temperature Regimes

### Classes of Soil Temperature Regimes

Following is a description of the soil temperature regimes used in defining classes at various categoric levels in this taxonomy.

**Cryic (Gr. *kryos*, coldness; meaning very cold soils).**—Soils in this temperature regime have a mean annual temperature lower than 8 °C but do not have permafrost.

1. In mineral soils the mean summer soil temperature (June, July, and August in the Northern Hemisphere and December, January, and February in the Southern Hemisphere) either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower, is as follows:

   a. If the soil is not saturated with water during some part of the summer and

      (1) If there is no O horizon: lower than 15 °C; *or*

      (2) If there is an O horizon: lower than 8 °C; *or*

   b. If the soil is saturated with water during some part of the summer and

      (1) If there is no O horizon: lower than 13 °C; *or*

      (2) If there is an O horizon or a histic epipedon: lower than 6 °C.

2. In organic soils the mean annual soil temperature is lower than 6 °C.

Cryic soils that have an aquic moisture regime commonly are churned by frost.

Isofrigid soils could also have a cryic temperature regime. A few with organic materials in the upper part are exceptions.

The concepts of the soil temperature regimes described below are used in defining classes of soils in the low categories.

**Frigid.**—A soil with a frigid temperature regime is warmer in summer than a soil with a cryic regime, but its mean annual temperature is lower than 8 °C and the difference between mean summer (June, July, and August) and mean winter (December, January, and February) soil temperatures is more than 6 °C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Mesic.**—The mean annual soil temperature is 8 °C or higher but lower than 15 °C, and the difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures is more than 6 °C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Thermic.**—The mean annual soil temperature is 15 °C or higher but lower than 22 °C, and the difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures is more than 6 °C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Hyperthermic.**—The mean annual soil temperature is 22 °C or higher, and the difference between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures is more than 6 °C either at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

If the name of a soil temperature regime has the prefix *iso*, the mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures differ by less than 6 °C at a depth of 50 cm or at a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Isofrigid.**—The mean annual soil temperature is lower than 8 °C.

**Isomesic.**—The mean annual soil temperature is 8 °C or higher but lower than 15 °C.

**Isothermic.**—The mean annual soil temperature is 15 °C or higher but lower than 22 °C.

**Isohyperthermic.**—The mean annual soil temperature is 22 °C or higher.

## Sulfidic Materials

Sulfidic materials contain oxidizable sulfur compounds. They are mineral or organic soil materials that have a pH value of more than 3.5 and that, if incubated as a layer 1 cm thick under moist aerobic conditions (field capacity) at room temperature, show a drop in pH of 0.5 or more units to a pH value of 4.0 or less (1:1 by weight in water or in a minimum of water to permit measurement) within 8 weeks.

Sulfidic materials accumulate as a soil or sediment that is permanently saturated, generally with brackish water. The sulfates in the water are biologically reduced to sulfides as the materials accumulate. Sulfidic materials most commonly accumulate in coastal marshes near the mouth of rivers that carry noncalcareous sediments, but they may occur in freshwater marshes if there is sulfur in the water. Upland sulfidic materials may have accumulated in a similar manner in the geologic past.

If a soil containing sulfidic materials is drained or if sulfidic materials are otherwise exposed to aerobic conditions, the sulfides oxidize and form sulfuric acid. The pH value, which normally is near neutrality before drainage or exposure, may drop below 3. The acid may induce the formation of iron and aluminum sulfates. The iron sulfate, jarosite, may segregate, forming the yellow redoximorphic concentrations that commonly characterize a sulfuric horizon. The transition from sulfidic materials to a sulfuric horizon normally requires very

few years and may occur within a few weeks. A sample of sulfidic materials, if air-dried slowly in shade for about 2 months with occasional remoistening, becomes extremely acid.

## Sulfuric Horizon

### Required Characteristics

The sulfuric (L. *sulfur*) horizon is 15 cm or more thick and is composed of either mineral or organic soil material that has a pH value of 3.5 or less (1:1 by weight in water or in a minimum of water to permit measurement) and shows evidence that the low pH value is caused by sulfuric acid. The evidence is *one or both* of the following:

1. The horizon has:

   a. Concentrations of jarosite, schwertmannite, and other iron sulfates, hydroxisulfates, and elemental sulfur; *or*

   b. Concentrations with a Munsell hue of 2.5Y or 5Y and a chroma of 6 or more, moist; *or*

   c. 0.05 percent or more water-soluble sulfate; *or*

2. The layer directly underlying the horizon consists of sulfidic materials (defined above).

# Literature Cited

Brewer, R. 1976. Fabric and Mineral Analysis of Soils. Second edition. John Wiley and Sons, Inc. New York, New York.

Burt, R., ed. 2004 Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual. Soil Survey Investigations Report 42, Version 4.0. United States Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service, National Soil Survey Center.

Childs, C.W. 1981. Field Test for Ferrous Iron and Ferric-Organic Complexes (on Exchange Sites or in Water-Soluble Forms) in Soils. Austr. J. of Soil Res. 19: 175-180.

Pons, L.J., and I.S. Zonneveld. 1965. Soil Ripening and Soil Classification. Initial Soil Formation in Alluvial Deposits and a Classification of the Resulting Soils. Int. Inst. Land Reclam. and Impr. Pub. 13. Wageningen, The Netherlands.

United States Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service. 1975. Soil Taxonomy: A Basic System of Soil Classification for Making and Interpreting Soil Surveys. Soil Surv. Staff. U.S. Dep. Agric. Handb. 436.

United States Department of Agriculture, Soil Conservation Service. 1993. Soil Survey Manual. Soil Surv. Div. Staff. U.S. Dep. Agric. Handb. 18.

# CHAPTER 4

## *Identification of the Taxonomic Class of a Soil*



The taxonomic class of a specific soil can be determined by using the keys that follow in this and other chapters. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the definitions of diagnostic horizons and properties that are given in chapters 2 and 3 of this publication and with the meanings of the terms used for describing soils given in the *Soil Survey Manual*. The Index at the back of this publication indicates the pages on which definitions of terms are given.

Standard rounding conventions should be used to determine numerical values.

Soil colors (hue, value, and chroma) are used in many of the criteria that follow. Soil colors typically change value and some change hue and chroma, depending on the water state. In many of the criteria of the keys, the water state is specified. If no water state is specified, the soil is considered to meet the criterion if it does so when moist or dry or both moist and dry.

All of the keys in this taxonomy are designed in such a way that the user can determine the correct classification of a soil by going through the keys systematically. The user must start at the beginning of the "Key to Soil Orders" and eliminate, one by one, all classes that include criteria that do not fit the soil in question. The soil belongs to the first class listed for which it meets all the required criteria.

In classifying a specific soil, the user of soil taxonomy begins by checking through the "Key to Soil Orders" to determine the name of the first order that, according to the criteria listed, includes the soil in question. The next step is to go to the page indicated to find the "Key to Suborders" of that particular order. Then the user systematically goes through the key to identify the suborder that includes the soil, i.e., the first in the list for which it meets all the required criteria. The same procedure is used to find the great group class of the soil in the "Key to Great Groups" of the identified suborder. Likewise, going through the "Key to Subgroups" of that great group, the user selects as the correct subgroup name the name of the first taxon for which the soil meets all of the required criteria.

The family level is determined, in a similar manner, after the subgroup has been determined. Chapter 17 can be used, as one would use other keys in this taxonomy, to determine which components are part of the family. The family, however, typically has more than one component, and therefore the entire chapter must be used. The keys to control sections for classes used as components of a family must be used to determine the control section before use of the keys to classes.

The descriptions and definitions of individual soil series are not included in this text. Definitions of the series and of the control section are given in chapter 17.

In the "Key to Soil Orders" and the other keys that follow, the diagnostic horizons and the properties mentioned do not include those below any densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact. The properties of buried soils and the properties of a surface mantle are considered on the basis of whether or not the soil meets the meaning of the term "buried soil" given in chapter 1.

If a soil has a surface mantle and is not a buried soil, the top of the original surface layer is considered the "soil surface" for determining depth to and thickness of diagnostic horizons and most other diagnostic soil characteristics. The only properties of the surface mantle that are considered are soil temperature, soil moisture (including aquic conditions), and any andic or vitrandic properties and family criteria.

If a soil profile includes a buried soil, the present soil surface is used to determine soil moisture and temperature as well as depth to and thickness of diagnostic horizons and other diagnostic soil characteristics. Diagnostic horizons of the buried soil are not considered in selecting taxa unless the criteria in the keys specifically indicate buried horizons, such as in Thapto-Histic subgroups. Most other diagnostic soil characteristics of the buried soil are not considered, but organic carbon if of Holocene age, andic soil properties, base saturation, and all properties used to determine family and series placement are considered.

### Key to Soil Orders

A. Soils that have:

1. Permafrost within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Gelic materials within 100 cm of the soil surface and permafrost within 200 cm of the soil surface.

**Gelisols**, p. 143

B. Other soils that:

1. Do not have andic soil properties in 60 percent or more of the thickness between the soil surface and either a depth of 60 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or duripan if shallower; *and*

2. Have organic soil materials that meet *one or more* of the following:

a. Overlie cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials and/or fill their interstices[1] *and* directly below these materials, have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact; *or*

b. When added with the underlying cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials, total 40 cm or more between the soil surface and a depth of 50 cm; *or*

c. Constitute two-thirds or more of the total thickness of the soil to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact *and* have no mineral horizons or have mineral horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or less; *or*

d. Are saturated with water for 30 days or more per year in normal years (or are artificially drained), have an upper boundary within 40 cm of the soil surface, and have a total thickness of *either*:

(1) 60 cm or more if three-fourths or more of their volume consists of moss fibers or if their bulk density, moist, is less than 0.1 g/cm$^3$; *or*

(2) 40 cm or more if they consist either of sapric or hemic materials, or of fibric materials with less than three-fourths (by volume) moss fibers and a bulk density, moist, of 0.1 g/cm$^3$ or more.

**Histosols**, p. 153

C. Other soils that do not have a plaggen epipedon or an argillic or kandic horizon above a spodic horizon, *and* have *one or more* of the following:

1. A spodic horizon, an albic horizon in 50 percent or more of each pedon, and a cryic soil temperature regime; *or*

2. An Ap horizon containing 85 percent or more spodic materials; *or*

3. A spodic horizon with *all* of the following characteristics:

a. *One or more* of the following:

(1) A thickness of 10 cm or more; *or*

(2) An overlying Ap horizon; *or*

(3) Cementation in 50 percent or more of each pedon; *or*

(4) A coarse-loamy, loamy-skeletal, or finer particle-size class and a frigid temperature regime in the soil; *or*

(5) A cryic temperature regime in the soil; *and*

b. An upper boundary within the following depths from the mineral soil surface: *either*

(1) Less than 50 cm; *or*

(2) Less than 200 cm if the soil has a sandy particle-size class in at least some part between the mineral soil surface and the spodic horizon; *and*

c. A lower boundary as follows:

(1) *Either* at a depth of 25 cm or more below the mineral soil surface or at the top of a duripan or fragipan or at a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact, whichever is shallowest; *or*

(2) At any depth,

(a) If the spodic horizon has a coarse-loamy, loamy-skeletal, or finer particle-size class and the soil has a frigid temperature regime; *or*

(b) If the soil has a cryic temperature regime; *and*

d. *Either*:

(1) A directly overlying albic horizon in 50 percent or more of each pedon; *or*

(2) No andic soil properties in 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

(a) Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

(b) Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Spodosols**, p. 251

D. Other soils that have andic soil properties in 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Andisols**, p. 77

E. Other soils that have *either*:

[1] Materials that meet the definition of cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous but have more than 10 percent, by volume, voids that are filled with organic soil materials are considered to be organic soil materials.

1. An oxic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface and no kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within that depth; *or*

2. 40 percent or more (by weight) clay in the fine-earth fraction between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm (after mixing) *and* a kandic horizon that has the weatherable-mineral properties of an oxic horizon and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Oxisols**, p. 235

F. Other soils that have:

1. A layer 25 cm or more thick, with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that has *either* slickensides *or* wedge-shaped peds that have their long axes tilted 10 to 60 degrees from the horizontal; *and*

2. A weighted average of 30 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction either between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm or in an Ap horizon, whichever is thicker, *and* 30 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of all horizons between a depth of 18 cm and either a depth of 50 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon if shallower; *and*

3. Cracks[2] that open and close periodically.

**Vertisols**, p. 283

G. Other soils that:

1. Have:

a. An aridic soil moisture regime; *and*

b. An ochric or anthropic epipedon; *and*

c. *One or more* of the following with the upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface: a cambic horizon with a lower depth of 25 cm or more; a cryic temperature regime and a cambic horizon; a calcic, gypsic, petrocalcic, petrogypsic, or salic horizon; or a duripan; *or*

d. An argillic or natric horizon; *or*

2. Have a salic horizon; *and*

a. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more during a normal year; *and*

b. A moisture control section that is dry in some or all parts at some time during normal years; *and*

c. No sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Aridisols**, p. 97

H. Other soils that have *either*:

1. An argillic or kandic horizon, but no fragipan, and a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent at one of the following depths:

a. If the epipedon has a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout, *either*:

(1) 125 cm below the upper boundary of the argillic horizon (but no deeper than 200 cm below the mineral soil surface) or 180 cm below the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper; *or*

(2) At a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact if shallower; *or*

b. The shallowest of the following depths:

(1) 125 cm below the upper boundary of the argillic or kandic horizon; *or*

(2) 180 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

(3) At a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact; *or*

2. A fragipan and *both* of the following:

a. Either an argillic or a kandic horizon above, within, or below it or clay films 1 mm or more thick in one or more of its subhorizons; *and*

b. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent at the shallowest of the following depths:

(1) 75 cm below the upper boundary of the fragipan; *or*

(2) 200 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

(3) At a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact.

**Ultisols**, p. 261

I. Other soils that have *both* of the following:

1. *Either*:

a. A mollic epipedon; *or*

b. *Both* a surface horizon that meets all the requirements for a mollic epipedon except thickness after the soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm *and* a subhorizon more than 7.5 cm thick, within the upper part of an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon, that meets the color, organic-carbon content, base saturation, and structure requirements of a mollic epipedon but is separated from the surface horizon by an albic horizon; *and*

[2] A crack is a separation between gross polyhedrons. If the surface is strongly self-mulching, i.e., a mass of granules, or if the soil is cultivated while cracks are open, the cracks may be filled mainly by granular materials from the surface, but they are open in the sense that the polyhedrons are separated. A crack is regarded as open if it controls the infiltration and percolation of water in a dry, clayey soil.

2. A base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all horizons *either* between the upper boundary of any argillic, kandic, or natric horizon and a depth of 125 cm below that boundary, *or* between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 180 cm, *or* between the mineral soil surface and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever depth is shallowest.

**Mollisols**, p. 191

J. Other soils that do not have a plaggen epipedon and that have *either*:

1. An argillic, kandic, or natric horizon; *or*

2. A fragipan that has clay films 1 mm or more thick in some part.

**Alfisols**, p. 35

K. Other soils that have *either*:

1. *One or more* of the following:

a. A cambic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface and its lower boundary at a depth of 25 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A calcic, petrocalcic, gypsic, petrogypsic, or placic horizon or a duripan with an upper boundary within a depth of 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

c. A fragipan or an oxic, sombric, or spodic horizon with an upper boundary within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

d. A sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

e. A cryic temperature regime and a cambic horizon; *or*

2. No sulfidic materials within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and both*:

a. In one or more horizons between 20 and 50 cm below the mineral soil surface, either an *n* value of 0.7 or less or less than 8 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

b. *One or both* of the following:

(1) A salic horizon or a histic, mollic, plaggen, or umbric epipedon; *or*

(2) In 50 percent or more of the layers between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 50 cm, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more), which decreases with increasing depth below 50 cm, *and* also ground water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface at some time during the year when the soil is not frozen in any part.

**Inceptisols**, p. 159

L. Other soils.

**Entisols**, p. 123

# CHAPTER 5

# *Alfisols*



## Key to Suborders

JA. Alfisols that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions (other than anthraquic conditions) for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) *and* have *one or both* of the following:

1. Redoximorphic features in all layers between either the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 40 cm; *and one* of the following within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic, natric, glossic, or kandic horizon:

   a. 50 percent or more redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less on faces of peds and redox concentrations within peds; *or*

   b. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in the matrix; *or*

   c. 50 percent or more redox depletions with chroma of 1 or less on faces of peds or in the matrix, or both; *or*

2. In the horizons that have aquic conditions, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aqualfs**, p. 35

JB. Other Alfisols that have a cryic or isofrigid temperature regime.

**Cryalfs**, p. 44

JC. Other Alfisols that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustalfs**, p. 59

JD. Other Alfisols that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeralfs**, p. 71

JE. Other Alfisols.

**Udalfs**, p. 47

## Aqualfs

### Key to Great Groups

JAA. Aqualfs that have a cryic temperature regime.

**Cryaqualfs**, p. 37

JAB. Other Aqualfs that have one or more horizons, at a depth between 30 and 150 cm from the mineral soil surface, in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthaqualfs**, p. 43

JAC. Other Aqualfs that have a duripan.

**Duraqualfs**, p. 37

JAD. Other Aqualfs that have a natric horizon.

**Natraqualfs**, p. 43

JAE. Other Aqualfs that have a fragipan with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaqualfs**, p. 41

JAF. Other Aqualfs that have a kandic horizon.

**Kandiaqualfs**, p. 42

JAG. Other Aqualfs that have one or more layers, at least 25 cm thick (cumulative) within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that have 50 percent or more (by volume) recognizable bioturbation, such as filled animal burrows, wormholes, or casts.

**Vermaqualfs**, p. 43

JAH. Other Aqualfs that have an abrupt textural change between the ochric epipedon or the albic horizon and the argillic horizon and have a moderately low or lower saturated hydraulic conductivity in the argillic horizon.

**Albaqualfs**, p. 35

JAI. Other Aqualfs that have a glossic horizon.

**Glossaqualfs**, p. 41

JAJ. Other Aqualfs that have episaturation.

**Epiaqualfs**, p. 39

JAK. Other Aqualfs.

**Endoaqualfs**, p. 37

### Albaqualfs

#### Key to Subgroups

JAHA. Albaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the

mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Albaqualfs**

JAHB. Other Albaqualfs that have *both* of the following:

1. *One or both*:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix between the lower boundary of the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Aeric Vertic Albaqualfs**

JAHC. Other Albaqualfs that have *both* of the following:

1. *One or both*:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. An Ap horizon or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that, after mixing, have *one or more* of the following:

   a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

   c. Chroma of 4 or more.

**Chromic Vertic Albaqualfs**

JAHD. Other Albaqualfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Albaqualfs**

JAHE. Other Albaqualfs that have *both*:

1. Chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix between the lower boundary of the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for a mollic epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing.

**Udollic Albaqualfs**

JAHF. Other Albaqualfs that have chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix between the lower boundary of the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Aeric Albaqualfs**

JAHG. Other Albaqualfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Albaqualfs**

JAHH. Other Albaqualfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for a mollic epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing.

**Mollic Albaqualfs**

JAHI. Other Albaqualfs that have an umbric epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for an umbric epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing.

**Umbric Albaqualfs**

JAHJ. Other Albaqualfs.

**Typic Albaqualfs**

## Cryaqualfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JAAA. All Cryaqualfs (provisionally).

**Typic Cryaqualfs**

## Duraqualfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JACA. All Duraqualfs (provisionally).

**Typic Duraqualfs**

## Endoaqualfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JAKA. Endoaqualfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Endoaqualfs**

JAKB. Other Endoaqualfs that have *both* of the following:

1. *One or both*:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. An Ap horizon or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that, after mixing, have *one or more* of the following:

   a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

   c. Chroma of 4 or more.

**Chromic Vertic Endoaqualfs**

JAKC. Other Endoaqualfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Endoaqualfs**

JAKD. Other Endoaqualfs that have:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

   b. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

      (1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

      (2) Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Fragic Endoaqualfs**

JAKE. Other Endoaqualfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Endoaqualfs**

JAKF. Other Endoaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Endoaqualfs**

JAKG. Other Endoaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Grossarenic Endoaqualfs**

JAKH. Other Endoaqualfs that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for a mollic epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

   b. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

      (1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

      (2) Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Udollic Endoaqualfs**

JAKI. Other Endoaqualfs that have *both*:

1. An umbric epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for an umbric epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

   b. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

      (1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

      (2) Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Umbric Endoaqualfs**

JAKJ. Other Endoaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

1. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

   a. If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

   b. If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

2. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

   a. Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

   b. Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Endoaqualfs**

JAKK. Other Endoaqualfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for a mollic epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing.

**Mollic Endoaqualfs**

JAKL. Other Endoaqualfs that have an umbric epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for an umbric epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing.

**Umbric Endoaqualfs**

JAKM. Other Endoaqualfs.

**Typic Endoaqualfs**

## Epiaqualfs

### Key to Subgroups

JAJA. Epiaqualfs that have *all* of the following:

1. *One or both*:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

   b. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

      (1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

      (2) Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations; *and*

3. An Ap horizon or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that, after mixing, have *one or more* of the following:

   a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

   c. Chroma of 4 or more.

**Aeric Chromic Vertic Epiaqualfs**

JAJB. Other Epiaqualfs that have *both* of the following:

1. *One or both*:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

   b. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

      (1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

      (2) Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Vertic Epiaqualfs**

JAJC. Other Epiaqualfs that have *both* of the following:

1. *One or both*:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. An Ap horizon or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that, after mixing, have *one or more* of the following:

   a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

   c. Chroma of 4 or more.

**Chromic Vertic Epiaqualfs**

JAJD. Other Epiaqualfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Epiaqualfs**

JAJE. Other Epiaqualfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Epiaqualfs**

JAJF. Other Epiaqualfs that have:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

   b. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

      (1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

      (2) Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Fragic Epiaqualfs**

JAJG. Other Epiaqualfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Epiaqualfs**

JAJH. Other Epiaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Epiaqualfs**

JAJI. Other Epiaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Grossarenic Epiaqualfs**

JAJJ. Other Epiaqualfs that have:

1. An umbric epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for an umbric epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

   b. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

(1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

(2) Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Umbric Epiaqualfs**

JAJK. Other Epiaqualfs that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for a mollic epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing *and*

2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, one or a combination of the following colors:

a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

(1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

(2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

b. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

(1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

(2) Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Udollic Epiaqualfs**

JAJL. Other Epiaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

1. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

a. If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

b. If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

2. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

a. Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

b. Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Epiaqualfs**

JAJM. Other Epiaqualfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for a mollic epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing.

**Mollic Epiaqualfs**

JAJN. Other Epiaqualfs that have an umbric epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all of the requirements for an umbric epipedon, except for thickness, after mixing.

**Umbric Epiaqualfs**

JAJO. Other Epiaqualfs.

**Typic Epiaqualfs**



## Fragiaqualfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JAEA. Fragiaqualfs that have one or more layers, at least 25 cm thick (cumulative) within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that have 25 percent or more (by volume) recognizable bioturbation, such as filled animal burrows, wormholes, or casts.

**Vermic Fragiaqualfs**

JAEB. Other Fragiaqualfs that have, between the A or Ap horizon and a fragipan, a horizon with 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more if hue is 10YR or redder or of 4 or more if hue is 2.5Y or yellower.

**Aeric Fragiaqualfs**

JAEC. Other Fragiaqualfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Fragiaqualfs**

JAED. Other Fragiaqualfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Humic Fragiaqualfs**

JAEE. Other Fragiaqualfs.

**Typic Fragiaqualfs**

## Glossaqualfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JAIA. Glossaqualfs that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Glossaqualfs**

JAIB. Other Glossaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Glossaqualfs**

JAIC. Other Glossaqualfs that have:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

   b. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

      (1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

      (2) Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Fragic Glossaqualfs**

JAID. Other Glossaqualfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Glossaqualfs**

JAIE. Other Glossaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

1. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

   a. If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

   b. If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

2. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

   a. Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

   b. Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Glossaqualfs**

JAIF. Other Glossaqualfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets the requirements for a mollic epipedon after mixing.

**Mollic Glossaqualfs**

JAIG. Other Glossaqualfs.

**Typic Glossaqualfs**

## Kandiaqualfs

### Key to Subgroups

JAFA. Kandiaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Kandiaqualfs**

JAFB. Other Kandiaqualfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Grossarenic Kandiaqualfs**

JAFC. Other Kandiaqualfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiaqualfs**

JAFD. Other Kandiaqualfs that have *both*:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. In one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

      (1) If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

      (2) If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

b. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

(1) Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

(2) Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Umbric Kandiaqualfs**

JAFE. Other Kandiaqualfs that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, one or a combination of the following colors:

1. Hue of 7.5YR or redder; *and*

a. If peds are present, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less (both moist and dry) in ped interiors; *or*

b. If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry); *or*

2. Hue of 10YR or yellower *and either*:

a. Both a color value of 3 or more (moist) and chroma of 3 or more (moist and dry); *or*

b. Chroma of 2 or more (both moist and dry) and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Kandiaqualfs**

JAFF. Other Kandiaqualfs that have an umbric epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets the color requirements for an umbric epipedon after mixing.

**Umbric Kandiaqualfs**

JAFG. Other Kandiaqualfs.

**Typic Kandiaqualfs**

## Natraqualfs

### Key to Subgroups

JADA. Natraqualfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natraqualfs**

JADB. Other Natraqualfs that have one or more layers, at least 25 cm thick (cumulative) within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that have 25 percent or more (by volume) recognizable bioturbation, such as filled animal burrows, wormholes, or casts.

**Vermic Natraqualfs**

JADC. Other Natraqualfs that have *both*:

1. A glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon; *and*

2. An exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 and less magnesium plus sodium than calcium plus extractable acidity either throughout the upper 15 cm of the natric horizon or in all horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper.

**Albic Glossic Natraqualfs**

JADD. Other Natraqualfs that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 and less magnesium plus sodium than calcium plus extractable acidity either throughout the upper 15 cm of the natric horizon or in all horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper.

**Albic Natraqualfs**

JADE. Other Natraqualfs that have a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon.

**Glossic Natraqualfs**

JADF. Other Natraqualfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets the color requirements for a mollic epipedon after mixing.

**Mollic Natraqualfs**

JADG. Other Natraqualfs.

**Typic Natraqualfs**

## Plinthaqualfs

### Key to Subgroups

JABA. All Plinthaqualfs (provisionally).

**Typic Plinthaqualfs**

## Vermaqualfs

### Key to Subgroups

JAGA. Vermaqualfs that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 7 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 6 or more) *either or both*:

1. Throughout the upper 15 cm of the argillic horizon; *and/or*

2. Throughout all horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Natric Vermaqualfs**

JAGB. Other Vermaqualfs.

**Typic Vermaqualfs**

# Cryalfs

## Key to Great Groups

JBA. Cryalfs that have *all* of the following:

1. An argillic, kandic, or natric horizon that has its upper boundary 60 cm or more below *both*:

   a. The mineral soil surface; *and*

   b. The lower boundary of any surface mantle containing 30 percent or more vitric volcanic ash, cinders, or other vitric pyroclastic materials; *and*

2. A texture (in the fine-earth fraction) finer than loamy fine sand in one or more horizons above the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon; *and*

3. Either a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon.

**Palecryalfs**, p. 47

JBB. Other Cryalfs that have a glossic horizon.

**Glossocryalfs**, p. 44

JBC. Other Cryalfs.

**Haplocryalfs**, p. 45

## Glossocryalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JBBA. Glossocryalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Glossocryalfs**

JBBB. Other Glossocryalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Glossocryalfs**

JBBC. Other Glossocryalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Glossocryalfs**

JBBD. Other Glossocryalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Glossocryalfs**

JBBE. Other Glossocryalfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Glossocryalfs**

JBBF. Other Glossocryalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Glossocryalfs**

JBBG. Other Glossocryalfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Glossocryalfs**

JBBH. Other Glossocryalfs that have:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

3. A base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Xerollic Glossocryalfs**

JBBI. Other Glossocryalfs that have:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have these color values after mixing.

**Umbric Xeric Glossocryalfs**

JBBJ. Other Glossocryalfs that:

1. Are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years; *and*

2. Have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing; *and*

3. Have a base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Ustollic Glossocryalfs**

JBBK. Other Glossocryalfs that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Glossocryalfs**

JBBL. Other Glossocryalfs that are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years.

**Ustic Glossocryalfs**

JBBM. Other Glossocryalfs that:

1. Have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. Have a base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Mollic Glossocryalfs**

JBBN. Other Glossocryalfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Umbric Glossocryalfs**

JBBO. Other Glossocryalfs that have a base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Glossocryalfs**

JBBP. Other Glossocryalfs.

**Typic Glossocryalfs**



## Haplocryalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JBCA. Haplocryalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplocryalfs**

JBCB. Other Haplocryalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplocryalfs**

JBCC. Other Haplocryalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haplocryalfs**

JBCD. Other Haplocryalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplocryalfs**

JBCE. Other Haplocryalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplocryalfs**

JBCF. Other Haplocryalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplocryalfs**

JBCG. Other Haplocryalfs that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Haplocryalfs**

JBCH. Other Haplocryalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon or throughout the entire argillic, kandic, or natric horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Haplocryalfs**

JBCI. Other Haplocryalfs that have:

1. An argillic, kandic, or natric horizon that is 35 cm or less thick; *and*

2. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Haplocryalfs**

JBCJ. Other Haplocryalfs that have:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

3. A base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Xerollic Haplocryalfs**

JBCK. Other Haplocryalfs that have:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have these color values after mixing.

**Umbric Xeric Haplocryalfs**

JBCL. Other Haplocryalfs that:

1. Are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years; *and*

2. Have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing; *and*

3. Have a base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Ustollic Haplocryalfs**

JBCM. Other Haplocryalfs that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Haplocryalfs**

JBCN. Other Haplocryalfs that are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years.

**Ustic Haplocryalfs**

JBCO. Other Haplocryalfs that:

1. Have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. Have a base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Mollic Haplocryalfs**

JBCP. Other Haplocryalfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Umbric Haplocryalfs**

JBCQ. Other Haplocryalfs that have a base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Haplocryalfs**

JBCR. Other Haplocryalfs.

**Typic Haplocryalfs**

## Palecryalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JBAA. Palecryalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Palecryalfs**

JBAB. Other Palecryalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Palecryalfs**

JBAC. Other Palecryalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Palecryalfs**

JBAD. Other Palecryalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Palecryalfs**

JBAE. Other Palecryalfs that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Palecryalfs**

JBAF. Other Palecryalfs that are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years.

**Ustic Palecryalfs**

JBAG. Other Palecryalfs that:

1. Have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. Have a base saturation of 50 percent or more (by $NH_4OAc$) in all parts from the mineral soil surface to a depth of 180 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Mollic Palecryalfs**

JBAH. Other Palecryalfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Umbric Palecryalfs**

JBAI. Other Palecryalfs.

**Typic Palecryalfs**

# Udalfs

## Key to Great Groups

JEA. Udalfs that have a natric horizon.

**Natrudalfs**, p. 56

JEB. Other Udalfs that have:

1. A glossic horizon; *and*

2. In the argillic or kandic horizon, discrete nodules, 2.5 to 30 cm in diameter, that:

a. Are enriched with iron and extremely weakly cemented to indurated; *and*

b. Have exteriors with either a redder hue or a higher chroma than the interiors.

**Ferrudalfs**, p. 49

JEC. Other Udalfs that have *both*:

1. A glossic horizon; *and*

2. A fragipan with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fraglossudalfs**, p. 49

JED. Other Udalfs that have a fragipan with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiudalfs**, p. 49

JEE. Other Udalfs that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Have a kandic horizon; *and*

3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content [Clay is measured noncarbonate clay or based on the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon), whichever value is greater, but no more than 100]; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Kandiudalfs**, p. 55

JEF. Other Udalfs that have a kandic horizon.

**Kanhapludalfs**, p. 56

JEG. Other Udalfs that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content [Clay is measured noncarbonate clay or based on the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon), whichever value is greater, but no more than 100]; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

3. Have an argillic horizon with *one or more* of the following:

a. In 50 percent or more of the matrix of one or more subhorizons in its lower one-half, hue of 7.5YR or redder and chroma of 5 or more; *or*

b. In 50 percent or more of the matrix of horizons that total more than one-half the total thickness, hue of 2.5YR or redder, value, moist, of 3 or less, and value, dry, of 4 or less; *or*

c. Many coarse redox concentrations with hue of 5YR or redder or chroma of 6 or more, or both, in one or more subhorizons; *or*

4. Have a frigid temperature regime and *all* of the following:

a. An argillic horizon that has its upper boundary 60 cm or more below *both*:

(1) The mineral soil surface; *and*

(2) The lower boundary of any surface mantle containing 30 percent or more vitric volcanic ash, cinders, or other vitric pyroclastic materials; *and*

b. A texture (in the fine-earth fraction) finer than loamy fine sand in one or more horizons above the argillic horizon; *and*

c. Either a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the argillic horizon.

**Paleudalfs**, p. 57

JEH. Other Udalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodudalfs**, p. 59

JEI. Other Udalfs that have a glossic horizon.

**Glossudalfs**, p. 50

JEJ. Other Udalfs.

**Hapludalfs**, p. 51

## Ferrudalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JEBA. Ferrudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Ferrudalfs**

JEBB. Other Ferrudalfs.

**Typic Ferrudalfs**

## Fragiudalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JEDA. Fragiudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Fragiudalfs**

JEDB. Other Fragiudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Fragiudalfs**

JEDC. Other Fragiudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Fragiudalfs**

JEDD. Other Fragiudalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers above the fragipan in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Fragiudalfs**

JEDE. Other Fragiudalfs.

**Typic Fragiudalfs**

## Fraglossudalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JECA. Fraglossudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Fraglossudalfs**

JECB. Other Fraglossudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Fraglossudalfs**

JECC. Other Fraglossudalfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Fraglossudalfs**

JECD. Other Fraglossudalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers above the fragipan in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Fraglossudalfs**

JECE. Other Fraglossudalfs.

**Typic Fraglossudalfs**

## Glossudalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JEIA. Glossudalfs that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

   a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Aquertic Glossudalfs**

JEIB. Other Glossudalfs that have *both*:

1. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Oxyaquic Vertic Glossudalfs**

JEIC. Other Glossudalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Glossudalfs**

JEID. Other Glossudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

   b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Glossudalfs**

JEIE. Other Glossudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Glossudalfs**

JEIF. Other Glossudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Glossudalfs**

JEIG. Other Glossudalfs that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaquic Glossudalfs**

JEIH. Other Glossudalfs that have *both:*

1. In one or more subhorizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Aquic Arenic Glossudalfs**

JEII. Other Glossudalfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Glossudalfs**

JEIJ. Other Glossudalfs that have *both:*

1. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

b. 30 or more cumulative days; *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Oxyaquic Glossudalfs**

JEIK. Other Glossudalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Glossudalfs**

JEIL. Other Glossudalfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Glossudalfs**

JEIM. Other Glossudalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Glossudalfs**

JEIN. Other Glossudalfs that have a glossic horizon less than 50 cm in total thickness.

**Haplic Glossudalfs**

JEIO. Other Glossudalfs.

**Typic Glossudalfs**

## Hapludalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JEJA. Hapludalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Hapludalfs**

JEJB. Other Hapludalfs that have *all* of the following:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick

that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*

3. An Ap horizon or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that, after mixing, have *one or more* of the following:

a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

c. Chroma of 4 or more.

**Aquertic Chromic Hapludalfs**

JEJC. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Aquertic Hapludalfs**

JEJD. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

b. 30 or more cumulative days; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Oxyaquic Vertic Hapludalfs**

JEJE. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. An Ap horizon or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that, after mixing, have *one or more* of the following:

a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

c. Chroma of 4 or more.

**Chromic Vertic Hapludalfs**

JEJF. Other Hapludalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Hapludalfs**

JEJG. Other Hapludalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Hapludalfs**

JEJH. Other Hapludalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Hapludalfs**

JEJI. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

   a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaquic Hapludalfs**

JEJJ. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Fragic Oxyaquic Hapludalfs**

JEJK. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Aquic Arenic Hapludalfs**

JEJL. Other Hapludalfs that have *both:*

1. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days; *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of the argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Oxyaquic Hapludalfs**

JEJM. Other Hapludalfs that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Hapludalfs**

JEJN. Other Hapludalfs that have:

1. An abrupt textural change; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

   a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*

3. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent at a depth of 125 cm from the top of the argillic horizon, at a depth of 180 cm from the mineral soil surface, or directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Albaquultic Hapludalfs**

JEJO. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. An abrupt textural change; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Albaquic Hapludalfs**

JEJP. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. Interfingering of albic materials in the upper part of the argillic horizon; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Glossaquic Hapludalfs**

JEJQ. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent at a depth of 125 cm from the top of the argillic horizon, at a depth of 180 cm from the mineral soil surface, or directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Aquultic Hapludalfs**

JEJR. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Aquollic Hapludalfs**

JEJS. Other Hapludalfs that have redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

1. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Aquic Hapludalfs**

JEJT. Other Hapludalfs that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets the color requirements for a mollic epipedon after mixing; *and*

2. Saturation with water in 1 or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Mollic Oxyaquic Hapludalfs**

JEJU. Other Hapludalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Hapludalfs**

JEJV. Other Hapludalfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Hapludalfs**

JEJW. Other Hapludalfs that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Hapludalfs**

JEJX. Other Hapludalfs that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Hapludalfs**

JEJY. Other Hapludalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Hapludalfs**

JEJZ. Other Hapludalfs that have interfingering of albic materials in one or more subhorizons of the argillic horizon.

**Glossic Hapludalfs**

JEJZa. Other Hapludalfs that have:

1. An argillic, kandic, or natric horizon that is 35 cm or less thick; *and*

2. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Hapludalfs**

JEJZb. Other Hapludalfs that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent at a depth of 125 cm below the top of the argillic horizon, at a depth of 180 cm below the mineral soil surface, or directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Ultic Hapludalfs**

JEJZc. Other Hapludalfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets all the color requirements for a mollic epipedon after mixing.

**Mollic Hapludalfs**

JEJZd. Other Hapludalfs.

**Typic Hapludalfs**

## Kandiudalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JEEA. Kandiudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthaquic Kandiudalfs**

JEEB. Other Kandiudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandiudalfs**

JEEC. Other Kandiudalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Kandiudalfs**

JEED. Other Kandiudalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Kandiudalfs**

JEEE. Other Kandiudalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout

a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Grossarenic Plinthic Kandiudalfs**

JEEF. Other Kandiudalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Kandiudalfs**

JEEG. Other Kandiudalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Kandiudalfs**

JEEH. Other Kandiudalfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiudalfs**

JEEI. Other Kandiudalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*
2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*
3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kandiudalfs**

JEEJ. Other Kandiudalfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets the color requirements for a mollic epipedon after mixing.

**Mollic Kandiudalfs**

JEEK. Other Kandiudalfs.

**Typic Kandiudalfs**

## Kanhapludalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JEFA. Kanhapludalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kanhapludalfs**

JEFB. Other Kanhapludalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kanhapludalfs**

JEFC. Other Kanhapludalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Kanhapludalfs**

JEFD. Other Kanhapludalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*
2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*
3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kanhapludalfs**

JEFE. Other Kanhapludalfs.

**Typic Kanhapludalfs**

## Natrudalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JEAA. Natrudalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrudalfs**

JEAB. Other Natrudalfs that have:

1. Either a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon; *and*
2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:
   a. Within the upper 25 cm of the natric horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the natric horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Glossaquic Natrudalfs**

JEAC. Other Natrudalfs that have redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

1. Within the upper 25 cm of the natric horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the natric horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Aquic Natrudalfs**

JEAD. Other Natrudalfs.

**Typic Natrudalfs**

## Paleudalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JEGA. Paleudalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Paleudalfs**

JEGB. Other Paleudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Paleudalfs**

JEGC. Other Paleudalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Paleudalfs**

JEGD. Other Paleudalfs that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Paleudalfs**

JEGE. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

   a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaquic Paleudalfs**

JEGF. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthaquic Paleudalfs**

JEGG. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A glossic horizon or, in the upper part of the argillic horizon, one or more subhorizons that have 5 percent or more (by volume) clay depletions with chroma of 2 or less.

**Glossaquic Paleudalfs**

JEGH. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also

aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm at the upper boundary of the argillic horizon.

**Albaquic Paleudalfs**

JEGI. Other Paleudalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Paleudalfs**

JEGJ. Other Paleudalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Paleudalfs**

JEGK. Other Paleudalfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Paleudalfs**

JEGL. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Paleudalfs**

JEGM. Other Paleudalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Grossarenic Plinthic Paleudalfs**

JEGN. Other Paleudalfs that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

   a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

   b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Paleudalfs**

JEGO. Other Paleudalfs that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or hroughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Paleudalfs**

JEGP. Other Paleudalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Paleudalfs**

JEGQ. Other Paleudalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Paleudalfs**

JEGR. Other Paleudalfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Paleudalfs**

JEGS. Other Paleudalfs that have *either*:

1. A glossic horizon; *or*

2. In the upper part of the argillic horizon, one or more subhorizons that have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

3. 5 percent or more (by volume) albic materials in some subhorizon of the argillic horizon.

**Glossic Paleudalfs**

JEGT. Other Paleudalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Paleudalfs**

JEGU. Other Paleudalfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets the color requirements for a mollic epipedon after mixing.

**Mollic Paleudalfs**

JEGV. Other Paleudalfs.

**Typic Paleudalfs**

## Rhodudalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JEHA. All Rhodudalfs (provisionally).

**Typic Rhodudalfs**

# Ustalfs

## Key to Great Groups

JCA. Ustalfs that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durustalfs**, p. 60

JCB. Other Ustalfs that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthustalfs**, p. 70

JCC. Other Ustalfs that have a natric horizon.

**Natrustalfs**, p. 65

JCD. Other Ustalfs that:

1. Have a kandic horizon; *and*

2. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. Do not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content [Clay is measured noncarbonate clay or based on the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon), whichever value is greater, but no more than 100]; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Kandiustalfs**, p. 63

JCE. Other Ustalfs that have a kandic horizon.

**Kanhaplustalfs**, p. 64

JCF. Other Ustalfs that have *one or more* of the following:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface *and* an argillic horizon that has *both*:

a. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

(1) With increasing depth, no clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content [Clay is measured noncarbonate clay or based on the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon), whichever value is greater, but no more than 100]; *or*

(2) 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

b. In the lower one-half of the argillic horizon, one or more subhorizons with *either or both*:

(1) Hue of 7.5YR or redder and chroma of 5 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

(2) Common or many coarse redox concentrations with hue of 7.5YR or redder or chroma of 6 or more, or both; *or*

3. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface *and* an argillic horizon that has *both*:

a. A clayey or clayey-skeletal particle-size class throughout one or more subhorizons in its upper part; *and*

b. At its upper boundary, a clay increase (in the fine-earth fraction) of *either* 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm.

**Paleustalfs**, p. 67

JCG. Other Ustalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodustalfs**, p. 70

JCH. Other Ustalfs.

**Haplustalfs**, p. 60

## Durustalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JCAA. All Durustalfs (provisionally).

**Typic Durustalfs**

## Haplustalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JCHA. Haplustalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplustalfs**

JCHB. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquertic Haplustalfs**

JCHC. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Vertic Haplustalfs**

JCHD. Other Haplustalfs that have *both* of the following:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

      (1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

      (2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C;

2. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrertic Haplustalfs**

JCHE. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

   a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil

temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Udertic Haplustalfs**

JCHF. Other Haplustalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplustalfs**

JCHG. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Aquic Arenic Haplustalfs**

JCHH. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. An argillic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

**Aquultic Haplustalfs**

JCHI. Other Haplustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplustalfs**

JCHJ. Other Haplustalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplustalfs**

JCHK. Other Haplustalfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplustalfs**

JCHL. Other Haplustalfs that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Haplustalfs**

JCHM. Other Haplustalfs that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Haplustalfs**

JCHN. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Arenic Aridic Haplustalfs**

JCHO. Other Haplustalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Haplustalfs**

JCHP. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Calcidic Haplustalfs**

JCHQ. Other Haplustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Haplustalfs**

JCHR. Other Haplustalfs that have a CEC of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick *or* of its upper 100 cm.

**Kanhaplic Haplustalfs**

JCHS. Other Haplustalfs that have:

1. An argillic, kandic, or natric horizon that is 35 cm or less thick; *and*

2. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Haplustalfs**

JCHT. Other Haplustalfs that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Calcic Udic Haplustalfs**

JCHU. Other Haplustalfs that have an argillic horizon with a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

**Ultic Haplustalfs**

JCHV. Other Haplustalfs that have a calcic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haplustalfs**

JCHW. Other Haplustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Haplustalfs**

JCHX. Other Haplustalfs.

**Typic Haplustalfs**

## Kandiustalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JCDA. Kandiustalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Kandiustalfs**

JCDB. Other Kandiustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Aquic Arenic Kandiustalfs**

JCDC. Other Kandiustalfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiustalfs**

JCDD. Other Kandiustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandiustalfs**

JCDE. Other Kandiustalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Arenic Aridic Kandiustalfs**

JCDF. Other Kandiustalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Kandiustalfs**

JCDG. Other Kandiustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Kandiustalfs**

JCDH. Other Kandiustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for 135 cumulative days or less per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Kandiustalfs**

JCDI. Other Kandiustalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kandiustalfs**

JCDJ. Other Kandiustalfs.

**Typic Kandiustalfs**

## Kanhaplustalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JCEA. Kanhaplustalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kanhaplustalfs**

JCEB. Other Kanhaplustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kanhaplustalfs**

JCEC. Other Kanhaplustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than5 °C.

**Aridic Kanhaplustalfs**

JCED. Other Kanhaplustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a

moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for 135 cumulative days or less per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Kanhaplustalfs**

JCEE. Other Kanhaplustalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kanhaplustalfs**

JCEF. Other Kanhaplustalfs.

**Typic Kanhaplustalfs**

## Natrustalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JCCA. Natrustalfs that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salidic Natrustalfs**

JCCB. Other Natrustalfs that have *all* of the following:

1. Visible crystals of gypsum or other salts more soluble than gypsum, or both, within 40 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

3. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Leptic Torrertic Natrustalfs**

JCCC. Other Natrustalfs that have *both* of the following:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or

more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrertic Natrustalfs**

JCCD. Other Natrustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquertic Natrustalfs**

JCCE. Other Natrustalfs that have *both* of the following:

1. Visible crystals of gypsum or other salts more soluble than gypsum, or both, within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Leptic Natrustalfs**

JCCF. Other Natrustalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrustalfs**

JCCG. Other Natrustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Aquic Arenic Natrustalfs**

JCCH. Other Natrustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Natrustalfs**

JCCI. Other Natrustalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Natrustalfs**

JCCJ. Other Natrustalfs that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Natrustalfs**

JCCK. Other Natrustalfs that have visible crystals of gypsum or other salts more soluble than gypsum, or both, within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Natrustalfs**

JCCL. Other Natrustalfs that have *both* of the following:

1. An exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 (or a sodium adsorption ratio of less than 13) in 50 percent or more of the natric horizon; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Haplargidic Natrustalfs**

JCCM. Other Natrustalfs that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in 6 normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, an isomesic, or a warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. A glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon.

**Aridic Glossic Natrustalfs**

JCCN. Other Natrustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Natrustalfs**

JCCO. Other Natrustalfs that have a mollic epipedon, or the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil meets the color requirements for a mollic epipedon after mixing.

**Mollic Natrustalfs**

JCCP. Other Natrustalfs.

**Typic Natrustalfs**

## Paleustalfs

### Key to Subgroups

JCFA. Paleustalfs that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquertic Paleustalfs**

JCFB. Other Paleustalfs that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Vertic Paleustalfs**

JCFC. Other Paleustalfs that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the time (cumulative) per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Udertic Paleustalfs**

JCFD. Other Paleustalfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Paleustalfs**

JCFE. Other Paleustalfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Aquic Arenic Paleustalfs**

JCFF. Other Paleustalfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Paleustalfs**

JCFG. Other Paleustalfs that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Paleustalfs**

JCFH. Other Paleustalfs that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Paleustalfs**

JCFI. Other Paleustalfs that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Paleustalfs**

JCFJ. Other Paleustalfs that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the time (cumulative) per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the time (cumulative) per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Arenic Aridic Paleustalfs**

JCFK. Other Paleustalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Paleustalfs**

JCFL. Other Paleustalfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Paleustalfs**

JCFM. Other Paleustalfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Paleustalfs**

JCFN. Other Paleustalfs that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Paleustalfs**

JCFO. Other Paleustalfs that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the time (cumulative) per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the time (cumulative) per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. A calcic horizon *either* within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface if the weighted average particle-size class of the upper 50 cm of the argillic horizon is sandy, *or* within 60 cm if it is loamy, *or* within 50 cm if it is clayey, *and* carbonates in all horizons above the calcic horizon.

**Calcidic Paleustalfs**

JCFP. Other Paleustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have:

1. A frigid temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the time (cumulative) per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the time (cumulative) per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years:

   a. Is moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

   b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Paleustalfs**

JCFQ. Other Paleustalfs that have a CEC of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick *or* of its upper 100 cm.

**Kandic Paleustalfs**

JCFR. Other Paleustalfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Paleustalfs**

JCFS. Other Paleustalfs that have an argillic horizon with a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

**Ultic Paleustalfs**

JCFT. Other Paleustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the time (cumulative) per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Paleustalfs**

JCFU. Other Paleustalfs.

**Typic Paleustalfs**

## Plinthustalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JCBA. All Plinthustalfs (provisionally).

**Typic Plinthustalfs**

## Rhodustalfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JCGA. Rhodustalfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Rhodustalfs**

JCGB. Other Rhodustalfs that have a CEC of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) in 50 percent or more *either* of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick *or* of its upper 100 cm.

**Kanhaplic Rhodustalfs**

JCGC. Other Rhodustalfs that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the time (cumulative) per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime *and* a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Rhodustalfs**

JCGD. Other Rhodustalfs.

**Typic Rhodustalfs**

# Xeralfs

## Key to Great Groups

JDA. Xeralfs that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durixeralfs**, p. 71

JDB. Other Xeralfs that have a natric horizon.

**Natrixeralfs**, p. 74

JDC. Other Xeralfs that have a fragipan with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragixeralfs**, p. 72

JDD. Other Xeralfs that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthoxeralfs**, p. 76

JDE. Other Xeralfs that have, in *all* subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon or throughout the entire argillic or kandic horizon if less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*
2. Value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*
3. Dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodoxeralfs**, p. 76

JDF. Other Xeralfs that have *one or more* of the following:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface *and* an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:
   a. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:
      (1) With increasing depth, no clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content [Clay is measured noncarbonate clay or based on the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon), whichever value is greater, but no more than 100]; *or*
      (2) 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction; *and*
   b. A base at a depth of 150 cm or mre; *or*
3. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface *and* an argillic or kandic horizon that has within 15 cm of its upper boundary *both*:
   a. A clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine particle-size class; *and*
   b. A clay increase, in the fine-earth fraction, of *either* 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm.

**Palexeralfs**, p. 74

JDG. Other Xeralfs.

**Haploxeralfs**, p. 72

## Durixeralfs

### Key to Subgroups

JDAA. Durixeralfs that have a natric horizon.

**Natric Durixeralfs**

JDAB. Other Durixeralfs that have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*
2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

**Vertic Durixeralfs**

JDAC. Other Durixeralfs that have, in one or more subhorizons within the argillic horizon, redox depletions with croma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Durixeralfs**

JDAD. Other Durixeralfs that have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon that has *both*:
   a. A clayey particle-size class throughout some subhorizon 7.5 cm or more thick; *and*
   b. At its upper boundary or within some part, a clay increase *either* of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction; *and*
2. A duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons.

**Abruptic Haplic Durixeralfs**

JDAE. Other Durixeralfs that have an argillic horizon that has *both*:

1. A clayey particle-size class throughout some subhorizon 7.5 cm or more thick; *and*

2. At its upper boundary or within some part, a clay increase *either* of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm *or* of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

**Abruptic Durixeralfs**

JDAF. Other Durixeralfs that have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons.

**Haplic Durixeralfs**

JDAG. Other Durixeralfs.

**Typic Durixeralfs**

## Fragixeralfs

### Key to Subgroups

JDCA. Fragixeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Fragixeralfs**

JDCB. Other Fragixeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Fragixeralfs**

JDCC. Other Fragixeralfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Fragixeralfs**

JDCD. Other Fragixeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Fragixeralfs**

JDCE. Other Fragixeralfs that, above the fragipan, do not have an argillic or kandic horizon with clay films on both vertical and horizontal faces of any peds.

**Inceptic Fragixeralfs**

JDCF. Other Fragixeralfs.

**Typic Fragixeralfs**

## Haploxeralfs

### Key to Subgroups

JDGA. Haploxeralfs that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and 0.7 percent or more organic carbon either throughout an Ap horizon or throughout the upper 10 cm of an A horizon.

**Lithic Mollic Haploxeralfs**

JDGB. Other Haploxeralfs that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. An argillic or kandic horizon that is discontinuous horizontally in each pedon.

**Lithic Ruptic-Inceptic Haploxeralfs**

JDGC. Other Haploxeralfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haploxeralfs**

JDGD. Other Haploxeralfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haploxeralfs**

JDGE. Other Haploxeralfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also

aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Haploxeralfs**

JDGF. Other Haploxeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haploxeralfs**

JDGG. Other Haploxeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haploxeralfs**

JDGH. Other Haploxeralfs that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic or kandic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaquic Haploxeralfs**

JDGI. Other Haploxeralfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. An argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent in one or more subhorizons within its upper 75 cm or above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquultic Haploxeralfs**

JDGJ. Other Haploxeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haploxeralfs**

JDGK. Other Haploxeralfs that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) in one or more subhorizons of the argillic or kandic horizon.

**Natric Haploxeralfs**

JDGL. Other Haploxeralfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Haploxeralfs**

JDGM. Other Haploxeralfs that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Haploxeralfs**

JDGN. Other Haploxeralfs that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Haploxeralfs**

JDGO. Other Haploxeralfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Haploxeralfs**

JDGP. Other Haploxeralfs that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haploxeralfs**

JDGQ. Other Haploxeralfs that have:

1. An argillic, kandic, or natric horizon that is 35 cm or less thick; *and*

2. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Haploxeralfs**

JDGR. Other Haploxeralfs that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent in one or more subhorizons within its upper 75 cm or above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Ultic Haploxeralfs**

JDGS. Other Haploxeralfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and 0.7 percent or more organic carbon either throughout the upper 10 cm of the mineral soil (unmixed) or throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil after mixing.

**Mollic Haploxeralfs**

JDGT. Other Haploxeralfs.

**Typic Haploxeralfs**

## Natrixeralfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JDBA. Natrixeralfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrixeralfs**

JDBB. Other Natrixeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Natrixeralfs**

JDBC. Other Natrixeralfs.

**Typic Natrixeralfs**

## Palexeralfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JDFA. Palexeralfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Palexeralfs**

JDFB. Other Palexeralfs that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Palexeralfs**

JDFC. Other Palexeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Palexeralfs**

JDFD. Other Palexeralfs that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Palexeralfs**

JDFE. Other Palexeralfs that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in layers that also have aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon if its upper boundary is within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if the upper boundary of the argillic or kandic horizon is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaquic Palexeralfs**

JDFF. Other Palexeralfs that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Palexeralfs**

JDFG. Other Palexeralfs that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Palexeralfs**

JDFH. Other Palexeralfs that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Palexeralfs**

JDFI. Other Palexeralfs that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Palexeralfs**

JDFJ. Other Palexeralfs that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or kandic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Palexeralfs**

JDFK. Other Palexeralfs that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or

more) in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Natric Palexeralfs**

JDFL. Other Palexeralfs that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Palexeralfs**

JDFM. Other Palexeralfs that have a calcic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Palexeralfs**

JDFN. Other Palexeralfs that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Palexeralfs**

JDFO. Other Palexeralfs that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 75 percent throughout.

**Ultic Palexeralfs**

JDFP. Other Palexeralfs with an argillic or kandic horizon that has, in the fine-earth fraction, *either or both*:

1. Less than 35 percent clay throughout all subhorizons within 15 cm of its upper boundary; *or*

2. At its upper boundary, a clay increase of less than 20 percent (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm and of less than 15 percent (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm.

**Haplic Palexeralfs**

JDFQ. Other Palexeralfs that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and 0.7 percent or more organic carbon either throughout the upper 10 cm of the mineral soil (unmixed) or throughout the upper 18 cm of the mineral soil after mixing.

**Mollic Palexeralfs**

JDFR. Other Palexeralfs.

**Typic Palexeralfs**

## Plinthoxeralfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JDDA. All Plinthoxeralfs (provisionally).

**Typic Plinthoxeralfs**

## Rhodoxeralfs

**Key to Subgroups**

JDEA. Rhodoxeralfs that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Rhodoxeralfs**

JDEB. Other Rhodoxeralfs that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Rhodoxeralfs**

JDEC. Other Rhodoxeralfs that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Rhodoxeralfs**

JDED. Other Rhodoxeralfs that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Rhodoxeralfs**

JDEE. Other Rhodoxeralfs that have an argillic or kandic horizon that is either less than 35 cm thick or is discontinuous horizontally in each pedon.

**Inceptic Rhodoxeralfs**

JDEF. Other Rhodoxeralfs.

**Typic Rhodoxeralfs**

# CHAPTER 6

# *Andisols*



## Key to Suborders

DA. Andisols that have *either*:

1. A histic epipedon; *or*

2. In a layer above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or in a layer at a depth between 40 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallowest, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

   a. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

   c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquands**, p. 77

DB. Other Andisols that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*

2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelands**, p. 84

DC. Other Andisols that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryands**, p. 81

DD. Other Andisols that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Torrands**, p. 84

DE. Other Andisols that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xerands**, p. 95

DF. Other Andisols that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Vitrands**, p. 93

DG. Other Andisols that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustands**, p. 92

DH. Other Andisols.

**Udands**, p. 85

## Aquands

### Key to Great Groups

DAA. Aquands that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*

2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelaquands**, p. 79

DAB. Other Aquands that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryaquands**, p. 78

DAC. Other Aquands that have, in half or more of each pedon, a placic horizon within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Placaquands**, p. 80

DAD. Other Aquands that have, in 75 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duraquands**, p. 78

DAE. Other Aquands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of

less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact.

**Vitraquands**, p. 80

DAF. Other Aquands that have a melanic epipedon.
**Melanaquands**, p. 79

DAG. Other Aquands that have episaturation.
**Epiaquands**, p. 79

DAH. Other Aquands.
**Endoaquands**, p. 78

## Cryaquands

### Key to Subgroups

DABA. Cryaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Lithic Cryaquands**

DABB. Other Cryaquands that have a histic epipedon.
**Histic Cryaquands**

DABC. Other Cryaquands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.
**Thaptic Cryaquands**

DABD. Other Cryaquands.
**Typic Cryaquands**

## Duraquands

### Key to Subgroups

DADA. Duraquands that have a histic epipedon.
**Histic Duraquands**

DADB. Other Duraquands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Acraquoxic Duraquands**

DADC. Other Duraquands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.
**Thaptic Duraquands**

DADD. Other Duraquands.
**Typic Duraquands**

## Endoaquands

### Key to Subgroups

DAHA. Endoaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Lithic Endoaquands**

DAHB. Other Endoaquands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Duric Endoaquands**

DAHC. Other Endoaquands that have a histic epipedon.
**Histic Endoaquands**

DAHD. Other Endoaquands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Alic Endoaquands**

DAHE. Other Endoaquands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral

soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Endoaquands**

DAHF. Other Endoaquands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Endoaquands**

DAHG. Other Endoaquands.

**Typic Endoaquands**

## Epiaquands

**Key to Subgroups**

DAGA. Epiaquands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duric Epiaquands**

DAGB. Other Epiaquands that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Epiaquands**

DAGC. Other Epiaquands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alic Epiaquands**

DAGD. Other Epiaquands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Epiaquands**

DAGE. Other Epiaquands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Epiaquands**

DAGF. Other Epiaquands.

**Typic Epiaquands**

## Gelaquands

**Key to Subgroups**

DAAA. Gelaquands that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Gelaquands**

DAAB. Other Gelaquands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Gelaquands**

DAAC. Other Gelaquands.

**Typic Gelaquands**

## Melanaquands

**Key to Subgroups**

DAFA. Melanaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Melanaquands**

DAFB. Other Melanaquands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acraquoxic Melanaquands**

DAFC. Other Melanaquands that have *both*:

1. On undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a

mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Pachic Melanaquands**

DAFD. Other Melanaquands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Melanaquands**

DAFE. Other Melanaquands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Melanaquands**

DAFF. Other Melanaquands that have, at a depth between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Melanaquands**

DAFG. Other Melanaquands.

**Typic Melanaquands**

## Placaquands

### Key to Subgroups

DACA. Placaquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Placaquands**

DACB. Other Placaquands that have *both*:

1. A histic epipedon; *and*

2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duric Histic Placaquands**

DACC. Other Placaquands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duric Placaquands**

DACD. Other Placaquands that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Placaquands**

DACE. Other Placaquands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Placaquands**

DAFF. Other Placaquands.

**Typic Placaquands**

## Vitraquands

### Key to Subgroups

DAEA. Vitraquands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Vitraquands**

DAEB. Other Vitraquands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duric Vitraquands**

DAEC. Other Vitraquands that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Vitraquands**

DAED. Other Vitraquands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Vitraquands**

DAEE. Other Vitraquands.

**Typic Vitraquands**

# Cryands

## Key to Great Groups

DCA. Cryands that have, in 75 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duricryands**, p. 81

DCB. Other Cryands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 100 percent or more, by weighted average, throughout *either*:

1. One or more layers with a total thickness of 35 cm between the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. 60 percent or more of the horizon thickness between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Hydrocryands**, p. 83

DCC. Other Cryands that have a melanic epipedon.

**Melanocryands**, p. 83

DCD. Other Cryands that have a layer that meets the depth, thickness, and organic-carbon requirements for a melanic epipedon.

**Fulvicryands**, p. 82

DCE. Other Cryands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Vitricryands**, p. 83

DCF. Other Cryands.

**Haplocryands**, p. 82

## Duricryands

### Key to Subgroups

DCAA. Duricryands that have, in some subhorizon at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Duricryands**

DCAB. Other Duricryands that have *both*:

1. No horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Saturation with water in one or more layers above the cemented horizon in normal years for *either or both:*

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Eutric Oxyaquic Duricryands**

DCAC. Other Duricryands that are saturated with water in one or more layers above the cemented horizon in normal years for *either or both:*

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Duricryands**

DCAD. Other Duricryands that have no horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic properties, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Duricryands**

DCAE. Other Duricryands.

**Typic Duricryands**

## Fulvicryands

### Key to Subgroups

DCDA. Fulvicryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Fulvicryands**

DCDB. Other Fulvicryands that have *both*:

1. No horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic properties, whichever is shallower:

   a. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon, by weighted average; *and*

   b. More than 4.0 percent organic carbon in all parts.

**Eutric Pachic Fulvicryands**

DCDC. Other Fulvicryands that have no horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic properties, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Fulvicryands**

DCDD. Other Fulvicryands that have, throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower:

1. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon, by weighted average; *and*

2. More than 4.0 percent organic carbon in all parts.

**Pachic Fulvicryands**

DCDE. Other Fulvicryands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Vitric Fulvicryands**

DCDF. Other Fulvicryands.

**Typic Fulvicryands**

## Haplocryands

### Key to Subgroups

DCFA. Haplocryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Haplocryands**

DCFB. Other Haplocryands that have, in some subhorizon at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Haplocryands**

DCFC. Other Haplocryands that are saturated with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplocryands**

DCFD. Other Haplocryands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alic Haplocryands**

DCFE. Other Haplocryands that have an ablic horizon overlying a cambic horizon in 50 percent or more in each pedon or have a spodic horizon in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

**Spodic Haplocryands**

DCFF. Other Haplocryands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of

an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Haplocryands**

DCFG. Other Haplocryands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Vitric Haplocryands**

DCFH. Other Haplocryands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Haplocryands**

DCFI. Other Haplocryands that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Haplocryands**

DCFJ. Other Haplocryands.

**Typic Haplocryands**

## Hydrocryands

### Key to Subgroups

DCBA. Hydrocryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Hydrocryands**

DCBB. Other Hydrocryands that have a placic horizon within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Placic Hydrocryands**

DCBC. Other Hydrocryands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Hydrocryands**

DCBD. Other Hydrocryands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Hydrocryands**

DCBE. Other Hydrocryands.

**Typic Hydrocryands**

## Melanocryands

### Key to Subgroups

DCCA. Melanocryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer that has andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Melanocryands**

DCCB. Other Melanocryands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Vitric Melanocryands**

DCCC. Other Melanocryands.

**Typic Melanocryands**

## Vitricryands

### Key to Subgroups

DCEA. Vitricryands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer that has andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Vitricryands**

DCEB. Other Vitricryands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Vitricryands**

DCEC. Other Vitricryands that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Vitricryands**

DCED. Other Vitricryands that have an albic horizon overlying a cambic horizon in 50 percent or more in each pedon *or* have a spodic horizon in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

**Spodic Vitricryands**

DCEE. Other Vitricryands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Vitricryands**

DCEF. Other Vitricryands that have a xeric moisture regime and a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Xeric Vitricryands**

DCEG. Other Vitricryands that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Vitricryands**

DCEH. Other Vitricryands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout the upper 50 cm or throughout the entire argillic or kandic horizon if it is less than 50 cm thick.

**Ultic Vitricryands**

DCEI. Other Vitricryands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Vitricryands**

DCEJ. Other Vitricryands that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Vitricryands**

DCEK. Other Vitricryands.

**Typic Vitricryands**

# Gelands

## Key to Great Groups

DBA. All Gelands are considered Vitrigelands.

**Vitrigelands**, p. 84

## Vitrigelands

### Key to Subgroups

DBAA. Vitrigelands that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Vitrigelands**

DBAB. Other Vitrigelands.

**Typic Vitrigelands**

# Torrands

## Key to Great Groups

DDA. Torrands that have, in 75 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duritorrands**, p. 85

DDB. Other Torrands that have, on air-dried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent throughout 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Vitritorrands**, p. 85

DDC. Other Torrands.

**Haplotorrands**, p. 85

## Duritorrands

**Key to Subgroups**

DDAA. Duritorrands that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Duritorrands**

DDAB. Other Duritorrands that have, on air-dried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent throughout 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no paralithic contact or duripan within that depth, and a point 60 cm below that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a paralithic contact or a duripan.

**Vitric Duritorrands**

DDAC. Other Duritorrands.

**Typic Duritorrands**

## Haplotorrands

**Key to Subgroups**

DDCA. Haplotorrands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplotorrands**

DDCB. Other Haplotorrands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duric Haplotorrands**

DDCC. Other Haplotorrands that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haplotorrands**

DDCD. Other Haplotorrands.

**Typic Haplotorrands**

## Vitritorrands

**Key to Subgroups**

DDBA. Vitritorrands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Vitritorrands**

DDBB. Other Vitritorrands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duric Vitritorrands**

DDBC. Other Vitritorrands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Vitritorrands**

DDBD. Other Vitritorrands that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Vitritorrands**

DDBE. Other Vitritorrands.

**Typic Vitritorrands**

# Udands

## Key to Great Groups

DHA. Udands that have, in half or more of each pedon, a placic horizon within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Placudands**, p. 92

DHB. Other Udands that have, in 75 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Durudands**, p. 86

DHC. Other Udands that have a melanic epipedon.

**Melanudands**, p. 90

DHD. Other Udands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 100 percent or more, by weighted average, throughout *either*:

1. One or more layers with a total thickness of 35 cm between the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties,

whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. 60 percent or more of the horizon thickness between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Hydrudands**, p. 89

DHE. Other Udands that have a layer that meets the depth, thickness, and organic-carbon requirements for a melanic epipedon.

**Fulvudands**, p. 86

DHF. Other Udands.

**Hapludands**, p. 87

## Durudands

### Key to Subgroups

DHBA. Durudands that have, in one or more horizons above the cemented horizon, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Durudands**

DHBB. Other Durudands that have no horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic properties, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Durudands**

DHBC. Other Durudands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and the cemented horizon.

**Acrudoxic Durudands**

DHBD. Other Durudands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick above the cemented horizon.

**Hydric Durudands**

DHBE. Other Durudands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Durudands**

DHBF. Other Durudands.

**Typic Durudands**

## Fulvudands

### Key to Subgroups

DHEA. Fulvudands that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. No horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 cm from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and the lithic contact.

**Eutric Lithic Fulvudands**

DHEB. Other Fulvudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Fulvudands**

DHEC. Other Fulvudands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Fulvudands**

DHED. Other Fulvudands that are saturated with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days

**Oxyaquic Fulvudands**

DHEE. Other Fulvudands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Fulvudands**

DHEF. Other Fulvudands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Fulvudands**

DHEG. Other Fulvudands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

**Ultic Fulvudands**

DHEH. Other Fulvudands that have *both*:

1. No horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. Throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower:

   a. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon, by weighted average; *and*

   b. More than 4.0 percent organic carbon in all parts.

**Eutric Pachic Fulvudands**

DHEI. Other Fulvudands that have no horizons with more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction and with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Fulvudands**

DHEJ. Other Fulvudands that have, throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower:

1. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon, by weighted average; *and*

2. More than 4.0 percent organic carbon in all parts.

**Pachic Fulvudands**

DHEK. Other Fulvudands that have, at a depth between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Fulvudands**

DHEL. Other Fulvudands.

**Typic Fulvudands**

## Hapludands

### Key to Subgroups

DHFA. Hapludands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Hapludands**

DHFB. Other Hapludands that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Hapludands**

DHFC. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

   a. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Duric Hapludands**

DHFD. Other Hapludands that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duric Hapludands**

DHFE. Other Hapludands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Hapludands**

DHFF. Other Hapludands that are saturated with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days

**Oxyaquic Hapludands**

DHFG. Other Hapludands that have more than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg $Al^{3+}$ (by 1N KCl) in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alic Hapludands**

DHFH. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. On undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Hydric Hapludands**

DHFI. Other Hapludands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, *both*:

1. Extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more; *and*

2. A layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Acrudoxic Thaptic Hapludands**

DHFJ. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. An argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

   a. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

   b. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

**Acrudoxic Ultic Hapludands**

DHFK. Other Hapludands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Hapludands**

DHFL. Other Hapludands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil

surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Vitric Hapludands**

DHFM. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. On undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. At a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Hydric Thaptic Hapludands**

DHFN. Other Hapludands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Hapludands**

DHFO. Other Hapludands that have *both*:

1. A sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. At a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Eutric Thaptic Hapludands**

DHFP. Other Hapludands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Hapludands**

DHFQ. Other Hapludands that have a sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Hapludands**

DHFR. Other Hapludands that have an oxic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Oxic Hapludands**

DHFS. Other Hapludands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

**Ultic Hapludands**

DHFT. Other Hapludands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Hapludands**

DHFU. Other Hapludands.

**Typic Hapludands**

## Hydrudands

### Key to Subgroups

DHDA. Hydrudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Hydrudands**

DHDB. Other Hydrudands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Hydrudands**

DHDC. Other Hydrudands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, *both*:

1. Extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more; *and*

2. A layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Acrudoxic Thaptic Hydrudands**

DHDD. Other Hydrudands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Hydrudands**

DHDE. Other Hydrudands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Hydrudands**

DHDF. Other Hydrudands that have a sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Hydrudands**

DHDG. Other Hydrudands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

**Ultic Hydrudands**

DHDH. Other Hydrudands.

**Typic Hydrudands**

## Melanudands

### Key to Subgroups

DHCA. Melanudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer that has andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Melanudands**

DHCB. Other Melanudands that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Melanudands**

DHCC. Other Melanudands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Melanudands**

DHCD. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an

organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Vitric Melanudands**

DHCE. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. On undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Hydric Melanudands**

DHCF. Other Melanudands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Acrudoxic Melanudands**

DHCG. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Vitric Melanudands**

DGCH. Other Melanudands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Vitric Melanudands**

DHCI. Other Melanudands that have *both*:

1. On undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. More than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Pachic Melanudands**

DHCJ. Other Melanudands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Melanudands**

DHCK. Other Melanudands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Melanudands**

DHCL. Other Melanudands that have, at a depth between 40 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Melanudands**

DHCM. Other Melanudands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

**Ultic Melanudands**

DHCN. Other Melanudands that have a sum of extractable bases of more than 25.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more at a depth between 25 and 75 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Eutric Melanudands**

DHCO. Other Melanudands.

**Typic Melanudands**

## Placudands

**Key to Subgroups**

DHAA. Placudands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer that has andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Placudands**

DHAB. Other Placudands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and the placic horizon, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Placudands**

DHAC. Other Placudands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 2.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction of one or more horizons with a total thickness of 30 cm or more at a depth between 25 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and the placic horizon.

**Acrudoxic Placudands**

DHAD. Other Placudands that have, on undried samples, a 1500 kPa water retention of 70 percent or more throughout a layer 35 cm or more thick within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Hydric Placudands**

DHAE. Other Placudands.

**Typic Placudands**

# Ustands

## Key to Great Groups

DGA. Ustands that have, in 75 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Durustands**, p. 92

DGB. Other Ustands.

**Haplustands**, p. 92

## Durustands

**Key to Subgroups**

DGAA. Durustands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Durustands**

DGAB. Other Durustands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Durustands**

DGAC. Other Durustands that have a melanic, mollic, or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Durustands**

DGAD. Other Durustands.

**Typic Durustands**

## Haplustands

**Key to Subgroups**

DGBA. Haplustands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Haplustands**

DGBB. Other Haplustands that have, in one or more horizons

at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Haplustands**

DGBC. Other Haplustands that have *both*:

1. Extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 15.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 60 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Dystric Vitric Haplustands**

DGBD. Other Haplustands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout one or more layers that have andic soil properties and have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Vitric Haplustands**

DGBE. Other Haplustands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Haplustands**

DGBF. Other Haplustands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Haplustands**

DGBG. Other Haplustands that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Calcic Haplustands**

DGBH. Other Haplustands that have extractable bases (by $NH_4OAc$) plus 1N KCl-extractable $Al^{3+}$ totaling less than 15.0 cmol(+)/kg in the fine-earth fraction throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 60 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Dystric Haplustands**

DGBI. Other Haplustands that have an oxic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Oxic Haplustands**

DGBJ. Other Haplustands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout the upper 50 cm or throughout the entire argillic or kandic horizon if it is less than 50 cm thick.

**Ultic Haplustands**

DGBK. Other Haplustands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Haplustands**

DGBL. Other Haplustands that have a melanic, mollic, or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Haplustands**

DGBM. Other Haplustands.

**Typic Haplustands**

# Vitrands

## Key to Great Groups

DFA. Vitrands that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustivitrands**, p. 94

DFB. Other Vitrands.

**Udivitrands**, p. 94

## Udivitrands

**Key to Subgroups**

DFBA. Udivitrands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Udivitrands**

DFBB. Other Udivitrands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Udivitrands**

DFBC. Other Udivitrands that are saturated with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days

**Oxyaquic Udivitrands**

DFBD. Other Udivitrands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Udivitrands**

DFBE. Other Udivitrands that have *both*:

1. An argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*
2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout the upper 50 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon.

**Ultic Udivitrands**

DFBF. Other Udivitrands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Udivitrands**

DFBG. Other Udivitrands that have a melanic, mollic, or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Udivitrands**

DFBH. Other Udivitrands.

**Typic Udivitrands**

## Ustivitrands

**Key to Subgroups**

DFAA. Ustivitrands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Ustivitrands**

DFAB. Other Ustivitrands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*
2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*
3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Ustivitrands**

DFAC. Other Ustivitrands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Ustivitrands**

DFAD. Other Ustivitrands that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Calcic Ustivitrands**

DFAE. Other Ustivitrands that have a melanic, mollic, or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Ustivitrands**

DFAF. Other Ustivitrands.

**Typic Ustivitrands**

# Xerands

## Key to Great Groups

DEA. Xerands that have a 1500 kPa water retention of less than 15 percent on air-dried samples and less than 30 percent on undried samples throughout 60 percent or more of the thickness *either*:

1. Within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, if there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon within that depth; *or*

2. Between either the mineral soil surface or the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, a duripan, or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Vitrixerands**, p. 96

DEB. Other Xerands that have a melanic epipedon.

**Melanoxerands**, p. 96

DEC. Other Xerands.

**Haploxerands**, p. 95

## Haploxerands

### Key to Subgroups

DECA. Haploxerands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Haploxerands**

DECB. Other Haploxerands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Haploxerands**

DECC. Other Haploxerands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Haploxerands**

DECD. Other Haploxerands that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haploxerands**

DECE. Other Haploxerands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout its upper 50 cm.

**Ultic Haploxerands**

DECF. Other Haploxerands that have *both*:

1. A mollic or umbric epipedon; *and*

2. An argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Humic Haploxerands**

DECG. Other Haploxerands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Haploxerands**

DECH. Other Haploxerands that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Haploxerands**

DECI. Other Haploxerands.

**Typic Haploxerands**

## Melanoxerands

**Key to Subgroups**

DEBA. Melanoxerands that have more than 6.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick within 60 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Melanoxerands**

DEBB. Other Melanoxerands.

**Typic Melanoxerands**

## Vitrixerands

**Key to Subgroups**

DEAA. Vitrixerands that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Lithic Vitrixerands**

DEAB. Other Vitrixerands that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm either from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. 2 percent or more redox concentrations; *or*

2. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less either in redox depletions on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent; *or*

3. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Vitrixerands**

DEAC. Other Vitrixerands that have, at a depth between 25 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface or from the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, a layer 10 cm or more thick with more than 3.0 percent organic carbon and the colors of a mollic epipedon throughout, underlying one or more horizons with a total thickness of 10 cm or more that have a color value, moist, 1 unit or more higher and an organic-carbon content 1 percent or more (absolute) lower.

**Thaptic Vitrixerands**

DEAD. Other Vitrixerands that have *both*:

1. A melanic, mollic, or umbric epipedon; *and*

2. An argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Humic Vitrixerands**

DEAE. Other Vitrixerands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has *both*:

1. An upper boundary within 125 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 35 percent throughout the upper 50 cm or throughout the entire argillic or kandic horizon if it is less than 50 cm thick.

**Ultic Vitrixerands**

DEAF. Other Vitrixerands that have an argillic or kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Vitrixerands**

DEAG. Other Vitrixerands that have a melanic, mollic, or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Vitrixerands**

DEAH. Other Vitrixerands.

**Typic Vitrixerands**

# CHAPTER 7

# *Aridisols*



## Key to Suborders

GA. Aridisols that have a cryic soil temperature regime.
**Cryids**, p. 112

GB. Other Aridisols that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.
**Salids**, p. 122

GC. Other Aridisols that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.
**Durids**, p. 115

GD. Other Aridisols that have a gypsic or petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface and do not have a petrocalcic horizon overlying these horizons.
**Gypsids**, p. 118

GE. Other Aridisols that have an argillic or natric horizon and do not have a petrocalcic horizon that has an upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.
**Argids**, p. 97

GF. Other Aridisols that have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.
**Calcids**, p. 105

GG. Other Aridisols.
**Cambids**, p. 108

## Argids

### Key to Great Groups

GEA. Argids that have a duripan or a petrocalcic or petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface.
**Petroargids**, p. 105

GEB. Other Argids that have a natric horizon.
**Natrargids**, p. 102

GEC. Other Argids that do not have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface and have *either*:

1. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm either within the argillic horizon or at its upper boundary; *or*

2. An argillic horizon that extends to 150 cm or more from the soil surface, that does not have a clay decrease with increasing depth of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content, and that has, in 50 percent or more of the matrix in some part between 100 and 150 cm, *either*:

   a. Hue of 7.5YR or redder and chroma of 5 or more; *or*

   b. Hue of 7.5YR or redder and value, moist, of 3 or less and value, dry, of 4 or less.

**Paleargids**, p. 104

GED. Other Argids that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface.
**Gypsiargids**, p. 99

GEE. Other Argids that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface.
**Calciargids**, p. 97

GEF. Other Argids.
**Haplargids**, p. 100

### Calciargids

#### Key to Subgroups

GEEA. Calciargids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.
**Lithic Calciargids**

GEEB. Other Calciargids that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the

soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xerertic Calciargids**

GEEC. Other Calciargids that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustertic Calciargids**

GEED. Other Calciargids that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Vertic Calciargids**

GEEE. Other Calciargids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Calciargids**

GEEF. Other Calciargids that have:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Arenic Ustic Calciargids**

GEEG. Other Calciargids that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Calciargids**

GEEH. Other Calciargids that have the following combination of characteristics:

1. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Durinodic Xeric Calciargids**

GEEI. Other Calciargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Calciargids**

GEEJ. Other Calciargids that:

1. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Xeric Calciargids**

GEEK. Other Calciargids that:

1. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic; *and*

2. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil

surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Ustic Calciargids**

GEEL. Other Calciargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Calciargids**

GEEM. Other Calciargids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Calciargids**

GEEN. Other Calciargids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Calciargids**

GEEO. Other Calciargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Calciargids**

GEEP. Other Calciargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Calciargids**

GEEQ. Other Calciargids.

**Typic Calciargids**

## Gypsiargids

### Key to Subgroups

GEDA. Gypsiargids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Gypsiargids**

GEDB. Other Gypsiargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that either contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Gypsiargids**

GEDC. Other Gypsiargids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Gypsiargids**

GEDD. Other Gypsiargids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Gypsiargids**

GEDE. Other Gypsiargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Gypsiargids**

GEDF. Other Gypsiargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Gypsiargids**

GEDG. Other Gypsiargids.

**Typic Gypsiargids**

## Haplargids

### Key to Subgroups

GEFA. Haplargids that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. An argillic horizon that is discontinuous throughout each pedon.

**Lithic Ruptic-Entic Haplargids**

GEFB. Other Haplargids that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Lithic Xeric Haplargids**

GEFC. Other Haplargids that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Lithic Ustic Haplargids**

GEFD. Other Haplargids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Haplargids**

GEFE. Other Haplargids that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xerertic Haplargids**

GEFF. Other Haplargids that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustertic Haplargids**

GEFG. Other Haplargids that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil

surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Vertic Haplargids**

GEFH. Other Haplargids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Haplargids**

GEFI. Other Haplargids that have:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Arenic Ustic Haplargids**

GEFJ. Other Haplargids that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Haplargids**

GEFK. Other Haplargids that have:

1. One or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Durinodic Xeric Haplargids**

GEFL. Other Haplargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Haplargids**

GEFM. Other Haplargids that:

1. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Petronodic Ustic Haplargids**

GEFN. Other Haplargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Haplargids**

GEFO. Other Haplargids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Haplargids**

GEFP. Other Haplargids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplargids**

GEFQ. Other Haplargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Haplargids**

GEFR. Other Haplargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Haplargids**

GEFS. Other Haplargids.

**Typic Haplargids**

## Natrargids

### Key to Subgroups

GEBA. Natrargids that have *both* of the following:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Lithic Xeric Natrargids**

GEBB. Other Natrargids that have *both* of the following:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Lithic Ustic Natrargids**

GEBC. Other Natrargids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Natrargids**

GEBD. Other Natrargids that:

1. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and the moisture regime borders a xeric regime; *and*

2. Have *one or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, slickensides, or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Xerertic Natrargids**

GEBE. Other Natrargids that:

1. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and the moisture regime borders an ustic regime; *and*

2. Have *one or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most years, slickensides, or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Ustertic Natrargids**

GEBF. Other Natrargids that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrargids**

GEBG. Other Natrargids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Natrargids**

GEBH. Other Natrargids that meet *both* of the following:

1. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Durinodic Xeric Natrargids**

GEBI. Other Natrargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Natrargids**

GEBJ. Other Natrargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Natrargids**

GEBK. Other Natrargids that have:

1. Skeletans covering 10 percent or more of the surfaces of peds at a depth 2.5 cm or more below the upper boundary of the natric horizon; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Glossic Ustic Natrargids**

GEBL. Other Natrargids that have:

1. An exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 (or an SAR of less than 13) in 50 percent or more of the natric horizon; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Haplic Ustic Natrargids**

GEBM. Other Natrargids that have:

1. An exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 (or an SAR of less than 13) in 50 percent or more of the natric horizon; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Haploxeralfic Natrargids**

GEBN. Other Natrargids that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of less than 15 (or an SAR of less than 13) in 50 percent or more of the natric horizon.

**Haplic Natrargids**

GEBO. Other Natrargids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Natrargids**

GEBP. Other Natrargids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Natrargids**

GEBQ. Other Natrargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Natrargids**

GEBR. Other Natrargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Natrargids**

GEBS. Other Natrargids that have skeletans covering 10 percent or more of the surfaces of peds at a depth 2.5 cm or more below the upper boundary of the natric horizon.

**Glossic Natrargids**

GEBT. Other Natrargids.

**Typic Natrargids**

## Paleargids

### Key to Subgroups

GECA. Paleargids that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Paleargids**

GECB. Other Paleargids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Paleargids**

GECC. Other Paleargids that have:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Arenic Ustic Paleargids**

GECD. Other Paleargids that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Paleargids**

GECE. Other Paleargids that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface.

**Calcic Paleargids**

GECF. Other Paleargids that have:

1. One or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Durinodic Xeric Paleargids**

GECG. Other Paleargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Paleargids**

GECH. Other Paleargids that:

1. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Petronodic Ustic Paleargids**

GECI. Other Paleargids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Paleargids**

GECJ. Other Paleargids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Paleargids**

GECK. Other Paleargids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser

than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Paleargids**

GECL. Other Paleargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Paleargids**

GECM. Other Paleargids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Paleargids**

GECN. Other Paleargids.

**Typic Paleargids**

## Petroargids

### Key to Subgroups

GEAA. Petroargids that meet *both* of the following:

1. Have a petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Petrogypsic Ustic Petroargids**

GEAB. Other Petroargids that have a petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrogypsic Petroargids**

GEAC. Other Petroargids that have:

1. A duripan that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Duric Xeric Petroargids**

GEAD. Other Petroargids that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface.

**Duric Petroargids**

GEAE. Other Petroargids that have a natric horizon.

**Natric Petroargids**

GEAF. Other Petroargids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Petroargids**

GEAG. Other Petroargids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Petroargids**

GEAH. Other Petroargids.

**Typic Petroargids**

# Calcids

## Key to Great Groups

GFA. Calcids that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrocalcids**, p. 107

GFB. Other Calcids.

**Haplocalcids**, p. 105

## Haplocalcids

### Key to Subgroups

GFBA. Haplocalcids that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Lithic Xeric Haplocalcids**

GFBB. Other Haplocalcids that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil

temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Lithic Ustic Haplocalcids**

GFBC. Other Haplocalcids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Haplocalcids**

GFBD. Other Haplocalcids that have:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplocalcids**

GFBE. Other Haplocalcids that:

1. Are *either*:

   a. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years; *and*

2. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Aquic Durinodic Haplocalcids**

GFBF. Other Haplocalcids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Haplocalcids**

GFBG. Other Haplocalcids that have:

1. A duripan that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Duric Xeric Haplocalcids**

GFBH. Other Haplocalcids that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the surface.

**Duric Haplocalcids**

GFBI. Other Haplocalcids that have:

1. One or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Durinodic Xeric Haplocalcids**

GFBJ. Other Haplocalcids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Haplocalcids**

GFBK. Other Haplocalcids that have:

1. One or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Petronodic Xeric Haplocalcids**

GFBL. Other Haplocalids that:

1. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Petronodic Ustic Haplocalcids**

GFBM. Other Haplocalcids that have one or more horizons,

within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Haplocalcids**

GFBN. Other Haplocalcids that have *both*:

1. A horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the soil surface that has an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Sodic Xeric Haplocalcids**

GFBO. Other Haplocalcids that meet *both* of the following:

1. Have, in a horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Sodic Ustic Haplocalcids**

GFBP. Other Haplocalcids that have, in a horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years.

**Sodic Haplocalcids**

GFBQ. Other Haplocalcids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Haplocalcids**

GFBR. Other Haplocalcids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplocalcids**

GFBS. Other Haplocalcids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Haplocalcids**

GFBT. Other Haplocalcids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Haplocalcids**

GFBU. Other Haplocalcids.

**Typic Haplocalcids**

## Petrocalcids

### Key to Subgroups

GFAA. Petrocalcids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Petrocalcids**

GFAB. Other Petrocalcids that have a natric horizon.

**Natric Petrocalcids**

GFAC. Other Petrocalcids that have *both* of the following:

1. An argillic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil

temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeralfic Petrocalcids**

GFAD. Other Petrocalcids that have *both* of the following:

1. An argillic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustalfic Petrocalcids**

GFAE. Other Petrocalcids that have an argillic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Argic Petrocalcids**

GFAF. Other Petrocalcids that have:

1. A calcic horizon overlying the petrocalcic horizon; *and*

2. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Calcic Lithic Petrocalcids**

GFAG. Other Petrocalcids that have a calcic horizon overlying the petrocalcic horizon.

**Calcic Petrocalcids**

GFAH. Other Petrocalcids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Petrocalcids**

GFAI. Other Petrocalcids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Petrocalcids**

GFAJ. Other Petrocalcids.

**Typic Petrocalcids**

# Cambids

## Key to Great Groups

GGA. Cambids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquicambids**, p. 108

GGB. Other Cambids that have a duripan or a petrocalcic or petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrocambids**, p. 111

GGC. Other Cambids that have an anthropic epipedon.

**Anthracambids**, p. 108

GGD. Other Cambids.

**Haplocambids**, p. 109

## Anthracambids

**Key to Subgroups**

GGCA. All Anthracambids.

**Typic Anthracambids**

## Aquicambids

**Key to Subgroups**

GGAA. Aquicambids that have, in a horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years.

**Sodic Aquicambids**

GGAB. Other Aquicambids that:

1. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Durinodic Xeric Aquicambids**

GGAC. Other Aquicambids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Aquicambids**

GGAD. Other Aquicambids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined

thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Aquicambids**

GGAE. Other Aquicambids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Aquicambids**

GGAF. Other Aquicambids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Aquicambids**

GGAG. Other Aquicambids that have an irregular decrease in content of organic carbon from a depth of 25 cm either to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluventic Aquicambids**

GGAH. Other Aquicambids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Aquicambids**

GGAI. Other Aquicambids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Aquicambids**

GGAJ. Other Aquicambids.

**Typic Aquicambids**

## Haplocambids

### Key to Subgroups

GGDA. Haplocambids that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Lithic Xeric Haplocambids**

GGDB. Other Haplocambids that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Lithic Ustic Haplocambids**

GGDC. Other Haplocambids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Haplocambids**

GGDD. Other Haplocambids that have:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xerertic Haplocambids**

GGDE. Other Haplocambids that have:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5

mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustertic Haplocambids**

GGDF. Other Haplocambids that have *at least one* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplocambids**

GGDG. Other Haplocambids that have *both* of the following:

1. One or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Durinodic Xeric Haplocambids**

GGDH. Other Haplocambids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or are brittle and have at least a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Haplocambids**

GGDI. Other Haplocambids that have:

1. One or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Petronodic Xeric Haplocambids**

GGDJ. Other Haplocambids that:

1. Have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Petronodic Ustic Haplocambids**

GGDK. Other Haplocambids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) nodules or concretions.

**Petronodic Haplocambids**

GGDL. Other Haplocambids that have *both*:

1. A horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the soil surface that has an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Sodic Xeric Haplocambids**

GGDM. Other Haplocambids that meet *both* of the following:

1. Have, in a horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Sodic Ustic Haplocambids**

GGDN. Other Haplocambids that have, in a horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years.

**Sodic Haplocambids**

GGDO. Other Haplocambids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Haplocambids**

GGDP. Other Haplocambids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplocambids**

GGDQ. Other Haplocambids that:

1. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Have an irregular decrease in content of organic carbon from a depth of 25 cm either to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Xerofluventic Haplocambids**

GGDR. Other Haplocambids that:

1. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic; *and*

2. Have an irregular decrease in content of organic carbon from a depth of 25 cm either to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Ustifluventic Haplocambids**

GGDS. Other Haplocambids that have an irregular decrease in content of organic carbon from a depth of 25 cm either to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluventic Haplocambids**

GGDT. Other Haplocambids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Haplocambids**

GGDU. Other Haplocambids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Haplocambids**

GGDV. Other Haplocambids.

**Typic Haplocambids**

## Petrocambids

### Key to Subgroups

GGBA. Petrocambids that have, in a horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years.

**Sodic Petrocambids**

GGBB. Other Petrocambids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Petrocambids**

GGBC. Other Petrocambids that have, throughout one or

more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Petrocambids**

GGBD. Other Petrocambids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Petrocambids**

GGBE. Other Petrocambids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Petrocambids**

GGBF. Other Petrocambids.

**Typic Petrocambids**

# Cryids

## Key to Great Groups

GAA. Cryids that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Salicryids**, p. 115

GAB. Other Cryids that have a duripan or a petrocalcic or petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrocryids**, p. 114

GAC. Other Cryids that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Gypsicryids**, p. 113

GAD. Other Cryids that have an argillic or natric horizon.

**Argicryids,** p. 112

GAE. Other Cryids that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Calcicryids**, p. 113

GAF. Other Cryids.

**Haplocryids**, p. 114

## Argicryids

### Key to Subgroups

GADA. Argicryids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Argicryids**

GADB. Other Argicryids that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide throughout a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argicryids**

GADC. Other Argicryids that have a natric horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Natric Argicryids**

GADD. Other Argicryids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Argicryids**

GADE. Other Argicryids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Argicryids**

GADF. Other Argicryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Argicryids**

GADG. Other Argicryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Argicryids**

GADH. Other Argicryids.

**Typic Argicryids**

## Calcicryids

### Key to Subgroups

GAEA. Calcicryids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Calcicryids**

GAEB. Other Calcicryids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Calcicryids**

GAEC. Other Calcicryids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Calcicryids**

GAED. Other Calcicryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Calcicryids**

GAEE. Other Calcicryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Calcicryids**

GAEF. Other Calcicryids.

**Typic Calcicryids**

## Gypsicryids

### Key to Subgroups

GACA. Gypsicryids that have a calcic horizon.

**Calcic Gypsicryids**

GACB. Other Gypsicryids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Gypsicryids**

GACC. Other Gypsicryids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Gypsicryids**

GACD. Other Gypsicryids.

**Typic Gypsicryids**

## Haplocryids

### Key to Subgroups

GAFA. Haplocryids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Haplocryids**

GAFB. Other Haplocryids that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide throughout a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplocryids**

GAFC. Other Haplocryids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Haplocryids**

GAFD. Other Haplocryids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplocryids**

GAFE. Other Haplocryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Haplocryids**

GAFF. Other Haplocryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Haplocryids**

GAFG. Other Haplocryids.

**Typic Haplocryids**

## Petrocryids

### Key to Subgroups

GABA. Petrocryids that:

1. Have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xereptic Petrocryids**

GABB. Other Petrocryids that:

1. Have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. Are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for

less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Duric Xeric Petrocryids**

GABC. Other Petrocryids that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Duric Petrocryids**

GABD. Other Petrocryids that have a petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrogypsic Petrocryids**

GABE. Other Petrocryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Petrocryids**

GABF. Other Petrocryids that are dry in all parts of the moisture control section for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Petrocryids**

GABG. Other Petrocryids.

**Typic Petrocryids**

### Salicryids

**Key to Subgroups**

GAAA. Salicryids that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Salicryids**

GAAB. Other Salicryids.

**Typic Salicryids**

## Durids

### Key to Great Groups

GCA. Durids that have a natric horizon above the duripan.

**Natridurids**, p. 117

GCB. Other Durids that have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

**Argidurids**, p. 115

GCC. Other Durids.

**Haplodurids**, p. 116

### Argidurids

**Key to Subgroups**

GCBA. Argidurids that have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks between the soil surface and the top of the duripan that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary above the duripan; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and the top of the duripan.

**Vertic Argidurids**

GCBB. Other Argidurids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Argidurids**

GCBC. Other Argidurids that have the following combination of characteristics:

1. An argillic horizon that has 35 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of some part; *and either*

   a. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm either within the argillic horizon or at its upper boundary; *or*

   b. If there is an Ap horizon directly above the argillic horizon, a clay increase of 10 percent or more (absolute) at the upper boundary of the argillic horizon; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Abruptic Xeric Argidurids**

GCBD. Other Argidurids that have an argillic horizon that has 35 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction of some part; *and either*

1. A clay increase of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm within the argillic horizon or at its upper boundary; *or*

2. If there is an Ap horizon directly above the argillic

horizon, a clay increase of 10 percent or more (absolute) at the upper boundary of the argillic horizon.

**Abruptic Argidurids**

GCBE. Other Argidurids that have:

1. A duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Haploxeralfic Argidurids**

GCBF. Other Argidurids that have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons.

**Argidic Argidurids**

GCBG. Other Argidurids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Argidurids**

GCBH. Other Argidurids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Argidurids**

GCBI. Other Argidurids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Argidurids**

GCBJ. Other Argidurids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Argidurids**

GCBK. Other Argidurids.

**Typic Argidurids**

## Haplodurids

### Key to Subgroups

GCCA. Haplodurids that:

1. Have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons; *and*

2. Are *either*:

   a. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

   b. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquicambidic Haplodurids**

GCCB. Other Haplodurids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Haplodurids**

GCCC. Other Haplodurids that have:

1. A duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons; *and*

2. A mean annual soil temperature lower than 22 °C, a difference of 5 °C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm, and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xereptic Haplodurids**

GCCD. Other Haplodurids that have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons.

**Cambidic Haplodurids**

GCCE. Other Haplodurids that have:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for three-fourths of the time (cumulative) or less when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Haplodurids**

GCCF. Other Haplodurids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplodurids**

GCCG. Other Haplodurids that have a mean annual soil temperature lower than 22 °C, a difference of 5 °C or more between mean summer and mean winter soil temperatures at a depth of 50 cm, and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Haplodurids**

GCCH. Other Haplodurids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Haplodurids**

GCCI. Other Haplodurids.

**Typic Haplodurids**

## Natridurids

**Key to Subgroups**

GCAA. Natridurids that have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks between the soil surface and the top of the duripan that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary above the duripan; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and the top of the duripan.

**Vertic Natridurids**

GCAB. Other Natridurids that meet *both* of the following:

1. Have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons; *and*

2. Are *either*:

a. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Natrargidic Natridurids**

GCAC. Other Natridurids that are *either*:

1. Irrigated and have aquic conditions for some time in normal years in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. Saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquic Natridurids**

GCAD. Other Natridurids that have the following combination of characteristics:

1. A duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons; *and*

2. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Natrixeralfic Natridurids**

GCAE. Other Natridurids that have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons.

**Natrargidic Natridurids**

GCAF. Other Natridurids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Natridurids**

GCAG. Other Natridurids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Natridurids**

GCAH. Other Natridurids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Natridurids**

GCAI. Other Natridurids.

**Typic Natridurids**

# Gypsids

## Key to Great Groups

GDA. Gypsids that have a petrogypsic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrogypsids**, p. 121

GDB. Other Gypsids that have a natric horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Natrigypsids**, p. 120

GDC. Other Gypsids that have an argillic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Argigypsids**, p. 118

GDD. Other Gypsids that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Calcigypsids**, p. 119

GDE. Other Gypsids.

**Haplogypsids**, p. 120

## Argigypsids

### Key to Subgroups

GDCA. Argigypsids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Argigypsids**

GDCB. Other Argigypsids that have:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argigypsids**

GDCC. Other Argigypsids that have a calcic horizon overlying the gypsic horizon.

**Calcic Argigypsids**

GDCD. Other Argigypsids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes, nodules, or concretions.

**Petronodic Argigypsids**

GDCE. Other Argigypsids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser

than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Argigypsids**

GDCF. Other Argigypsids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 percent or more.

**Vitrandic Argigypsids**

GDCG. Other Argigypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Argigypsids**

GDCH. Other Argigypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Argigypsids**

GDCI. Other Argigypsids.

**Typic Argigypsids**

## Calcigypsids

### Key to Subgroups

GDDA. Calcigypsids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Calcigypsids**

GDDB. Other Calcigypsids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes, nodules, or concretions.

**Petronodic Calcigypsids**

GDDC. Other Calcigypsids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Calcigypsids**

GDDD. Other Calcigypsids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Calcigypsids**

GDDE. Other Calcigypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Calcigypsids**

GDDF. Other Calcigypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Calcigypsids**

GDDG. Other Calcigypsids.

**Typic Calcigypsids**

## Haplogypsids

### Key to Subgroups

GDEA. Haplogypsids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Haplogypsids**

GDEB. Other Haplogypsids that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 18 cm of the soil surface.

**Leptic Haplogypsids**

GDEC. Other Haplogypsids that have, in a horizon at least 25 cm thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or an SAR of 13 or more) during at least 1 month in normal years.

**Sodic Haplogypsids**

GDED. Other Haplogypsids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes, nodules, or concretions.

**Petronodic Haplogypsids**

GDEE. Other Haplogypsids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Haplogypsids**

GDEF. Other Haplogypsids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplogypsids**

GDEG. Other Haplogypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Haplogypsids**

GDEH. Other Haplogypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Haplogypsids**

GDEI. Other Haplogypsids.

**Typic Haplogypsids**

## Natrigypsids

### Key to Subgroups

GDBA. Natrigypsids that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Natrigypsids**

GDBB. Other Natrigypsids that have:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrigypsids**

GDBC. Other Natrigypsids that have one or more horizons, within 100 cm of the soil surface and with a combined thickness of 15 cm or more, that contain 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes, nodules, or concretions.

**Petronodic Natrigypsids**

GDBD. Other Natrigypsids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil

temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Natrigypsids**

GDBE. Other Natrigypsids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Natrigypsids**

GDBF. Other Natrigypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Natrigypsids**

GDBG. Other Natrigypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Natrigypsids**

GDBH. Other Natrigypsids.

**Typic Natrigypsids**

## Petrogypsids

### Key to Subgroups

GDAA. Petrogypsids that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Petrogypsids**

GDAB. Other Petrogypsids that have a calcic horizon overlying the petrogypsic horizon.

**Calcic Petrogypsids**

GDAC. Other Petrogypsids that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature is 5 °C or higher at a depth of 50 cm and a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Petrogypsids**

GDAD. Other Petrogypsids that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Petrogypsids**

GDAE. Other Petrogypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Petrogypsids**

GDAF. Other Petrogypsids that have a moisture control section that is dry in all parts for less than three-fourths of the time (cumulative) when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm is 5 °C or higher and have a soil moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Petrogypsids**

GDAG. Other Petrogypsids.

**Typic Petrogypsids**

# Salids

## Key to Great Groups

GBA. Salids that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for 1 month or more in normal years.

**Aquisalids**, p. 122

GBB. Other Salids.

**Haplosalids**, p. 122

## Aquisalids

### Key to Subgroups

GBAA. Aquisalids that have a gypsic or petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Gypsic Aquisalids**

GBAB. Other Aquisalids that have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has an upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Calcic Aquisalids**

GBAC. Other Aquisalids.

**Typic Aquisalids**

## Haplosalids

### Key to Subgroups

GBBA. Haplosalids that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Duric Haplosalids**

GBBB. Other Haplosalids that have a petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrogypsic Haplosalids**

GBBC. Other Haplosalids that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Gypsic Haplosalids**

GBBD. Other Haplosalids that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Calcic Haplosalids**

GBBE. Other Haplosalids.

**Typic Haplosalids**

# CHAPTER 8

# *Entisols*

## Key to Suborders

LA. Entisols that have *one or more* of the following:

1. Aquic conditions and sulfidic materials within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. Permanent saturation with water and a reduced matrix in all horizons below 25 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

3. In a layer above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or in a layer at a depth between 40 and 50 cm below the mineral soil surface, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

a. A texture finer than loamy fine sand and, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *one or more* of the following:

(1) Chroma of 0; *or*

(2) Chroma of 1 or less and a color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

(3) Chroma of 2 or less and redox concentrations; *or*

b. A texture of loamy fine sand or coarser and, in 50 percent or more of the matrix, *one or more* of the following:

(1) Chroma of 0; *or*

(2) Hue of 10YR or redder, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and chroma of 1; *or*

(3) Hue of 10YR or redder, chroma of 2 or less, and redox concentrations; *or*

(4) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower, chroma of 3 or less, and distinct or prominent redox concentrations; *or*

(5) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 1; *or*

(6) Hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B; *or*

(7) Any color if it results from uncoated sand grains; *or*

c. Enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquents**, p. 123

LB. Other Entisols that have, in one or more layers at a depth between 25 and 100 cm below the mineral soil surface, 3 percent or more (by volume) fragments of diagnostic horizons that are not arranged in any discernible order.

**Arents**, p. 127

LC. Other Entisols that have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments and a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser in all layers (sandy loam lamellae are permitted) within the particle-size control section.

**Psamments**, p. 139



LD. Other Entisols that do not have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 25 cm of the mineral soil surface and have:

1. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

2. *Either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon of Holocene age at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface *or* an irregular decrease in content of organic carbon from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A soil temperature regime:

a. That is warmer than cryic; *or*

b. That is cryic and the soil has:

(1) No gelic material; *and*

(2) Either a slope of less than 5 percent or less than 15 percent volcanic glass in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction in some part of the particle-size control section.

**Fluvents**, p. 128

LE. Other Entisols.

**Orthents**, p. 133

## Aquents

### Key to Great Groups

LAA. Aquents that have sulfidic materials within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sulfaquents**, p. 127

LAB. Other Aquents that have, in all horizons at a depth between 20 and 50 cm below the mineral soil surface, both an *n* value of more than 0.7 and 8 percent or more clay in the fine-earth fraction.

**Hydraquents**, p. 126

LAC. Other Aquents that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*
2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelaquents**, p. 126

LAD. Other Aquents that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryaquents**, p. 124

LAE. Other Aquents that have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments and a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser in all layers (sandy loam lamellae are permitted) within the particle-size control section.

**Psammaquents**, p. 126

LAF. Other Aquents that have *either* 0.2 percent or more organic carbon of Holocene age at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface *or* an irregular decrease in content of organic carbon from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquents**, p. 125

LAG. Other Aquents that have episaturation.

**Epiaquents**, p. 125

LAH. Other Aquents.

**Endoaquents**, p. 124

## Cryaquents

### Key to Subgroups

LADA. Cryaquents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*
2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*
3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*
   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*
   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Cryaquents**

LADB. Other Cryaquents.

**Typic Cryaquents**

## Endoaquents

### Key to Subgroups

LAHA. Endoaquents that have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. Sulfidic materials; *or*
2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all of the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0.

**Sulfic Endoaquents**

LAHB. Other Endoaquents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Endoaquents**

LAHC. Other Endoaquents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Endoaquents**

LAHD. Other Endoaquents that have, in one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, colors in 50 percent or more of the matrix as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
2. Hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and chroma of 2 or more; *or*
3. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*
4. Hue of 5Y or redder and chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Endoaquents**

LAHE. Other Endoaquents that have *both*:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent in some part within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humaqueptic Endoaquents**

LAHF. Other Endoaquents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Endoaquents**

LAHG. Other Endoaquents.

**Typic Endoaquents**

## Epiaquents

### Key to Subgroups

LAGA. Epiaquents that have, in one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, colors in 50 percent or more of the matrix as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

3. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

4. Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Epiaquents**

LAGB. Other Epiaquents that have *both*:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent in some part within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humaqueptic Epiaquents**

LAGC. Other Epiaquents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Epiaquents**

LAGD. Other Epiaquents.

**Typic Epiaquents**

## Fluvaquents

### Key to Subgroups

LAFA. Fluvaquents that have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. Sulfidic materials; *or*

2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all of the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0.

**Sulfic Fluvaquents**

LAFB. Other Fluvaquents that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Fluvaquents**

LAFC. Other Fluvaquents that have a buried layer of organic soil materials, 20 cm or more thick, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Thapto-Histic Fluvaquents**

LAFD. Other Fluvaquents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Fluvaquents**

LAFE. Other Fluvaquents that have, in one or more horizons between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, colors in 50 percent or more of the matrix as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 6 or more, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 2.5Y or redder, a color value, moist, of 5 or less, and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

3. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

4. Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Fluvaquents**

LAFF. Other Fluvaquents that have *both*:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent in some part within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humaqueptic Fluvaquents**

LAFG. Other Fluvaquents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Fluvaquents**

LAFH. Other Fluvaquents.

**Typic Fluvaquents**

## Gelaquents

**Key to Subgroups**

LACA. All Gelaquents.

**Typic Gelaquents**

## Hydraquents

**Key to Subgroups**

LABA. Hydraquents that have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. Sulfidic materials; *or*

2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all of the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH value between 3.5 and 4.0.

**Sulfic Hydraquents**

LABB. Other Hydraquents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Hydraquents**

LABC. Other Hydraquents that have a buried layer of organic soil materials, 20 cm or more thick, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Thapto-Histic Hydraquents**

LABD. Other Hydraquents.

**Typic Hydraquents**

## Psammaquents

**Key to Subgroups**

LAEA. Psammaquents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Psammaquents**

LAEB. Other Psammaquents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Psammaquents**

LAEC. Other Psammaquents that have a horizon, 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus 1/2 Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Psammaquents**

LAED. Other Psammaquents that have *both*:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent in some part within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humaqueptic Psammaquents**

LAEE. Other Psammaquents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Psammaquents**

LAEF. Other Psammaquents.

**Typic Psammaquents**

## Sulfaquents

### Key to Subgroups

LAAA. Sulfaquents that have, in some horizons at a depth between 20 and 50 cm below the mineral soil surface, *either or both*:

1. An *n* value of 0.7 or less; *or*
2. Less than 8 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction.

**Haplic Sulfaquents**

LAAB. Other Sulfaquents that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Sulfaquents**

LAAC. Other Sulfaquents that have a buried layer of organic soil materials, 20 cm or more thick, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Thapto-Histic Sulfaquents**

LAAD. Other Sulfaquents.

**Typic Sulfaquents**

# Arents

## Key to Great Groups

LBA. Arents that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustarents**, p. 127

LBB. Other Arents that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xerarents**, p. 128

LBC. Other Arents that have an aridic (or torric) moisture regime.

**Torriarents**, p. 127

LBD. Other Arents.

**Udarents**, p. 127

## Torriarents

### Key to Subgroups

LBCA. Torriarents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, 3 percent or more fragments of a natric horizon.

**Sodic Torriarents**

LBCB. Other Torriarents that have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, 3 percent or more fragments of a duripan or a petrocalcic horizon;

**Duric Torriarents**

LBCC. Other Torriarents.

**Haplic Torriarents**

## Udarents

### Key to Subgroups

LBDA. Udarents that have 3 percent or more fragments of an argillic horizon in some horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface and have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more in all parts within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Alfic Udarents**

LBDB. Other Udarents that have 3 percent or more fragments of an argillic horizon in some horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Ultic Udarents**

LBDC. Other Udarents that have 3 percent or more fragments of a mollic epipedon in some horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface and have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more in all parts within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Mollic Udarents**

LBDD. Other Udarents.

**Haplic Udarents**

## Ustarents

### Key to Subgroups

LBAA. All Ustarents.

**Haplic Ustarents**

## Xerarents

### Key to Subgroups

LBBA. Xerarents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, 3 percent or more fragments of a natric horizon.

**Sodic Xerarents**

LBBB. Other Xerarents that have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, 3 percent or more fragments of a duripan or a petrocalcic horizon.

**Duric Xerarents**

LBBC. Other Xerarents that have fragments of an argillic horizon with a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Alfic Xerarents**

LBBD. Other Xerarents.

**Haplic Xerarents**

# Fluvents

## Key to Great Groups

LDA. Fluvents that that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*
2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelifluvents**, p. 129

LDB. Other Fluvents that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryofluvents**, p. 128

LDC. Other Fluvents that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xerofluvents**, p. 132

LDD. Other Fluvents that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustifluvents**, p. 131

LDE. Other Fluvents that have an aridic (or torric) moisture regime.

**Torrifluvents**, p. 129

LDF. Other Fluvents.

**Udifluvents**, p. 130

## Cryofluvents

### Key to Subgroups

LDBA. Cryofluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and percent aluminum plus $^1/_2$ the iron percentage (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Cryofluvents**

LDDB. Other Cryofluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*
   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*
   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Cryofluvents**

LDBC. Other Cryofluvents that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Cryofluvents**

LDBD. Other Cryofluvents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Cryofluvents**

LDBE. Other Cryofluvents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Cryofluvents**

LDBF. Other Cryofluvents.

**Typic Cryofluvents**

## Gelifluvents

### Key to Subgroups

LDAA. Gelifluvents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, both redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Gelifluvents**

LDAB. Other Gelifluvents.

**Typic Gelifluvents**

## Torrifluvents

### Key to Subgroups

LDEA. Torrifluvents that have:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

3. An aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustertic Torrifluvents**

LDEB. Other Torrifluvents that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in most normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Torrifluvents**

LDEC. Other Torrifluvents that have:

1. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on xeric; *and*

3. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Torrifluvents**

LDED. Other Torrifluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Torrifluvents**

LDEE. Other Torrifluvents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, both redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Torrifluvents**

LDEF. Other Torrifluvents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Torrifluvents**

LDEG. Other Torrifluvents that have:

1. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist; *and*

2. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Duric Xeric Torrifluvents**

LDEH. Other Torrifluvents that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Torrifluvents**

LDEI. Other Torrifluvents that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

2. An aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Torrifluvents**

LDEJ. Other Torrifluvents that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Torrifluvents**

LDEK. Other Torrifluvents that have an anthropic epipedon.

**Anthropic Torrifluvents**

LDEL. Other Torrifluvents.

**Typic Torrifluvents**

## Udifluvents

### Key to Subgroups

LDFA. Udifluvents that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. *Either or both* of the following:

   a. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *or*

   b. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either chroma of 0 or hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquertic Udifluvents**

LDFB. Other Udifluvents that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Udifluvents**

LDFC. Other Udifluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Udifluvents**

LDFD. Other Udifluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Udifluvents**

LDFE. Other Udifluvents that have *either*:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *or*

2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either chroma of 0 or hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Udifluvents**

LDFF. Other Udifluvents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Udifluvents**

LDFG. Other Udifluvents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Udifluvents**

LDFH. Other Udifluvents.

**Typic Udifluvents**

## Ustifluvents

### Key to Subgroups

LDDA. Ustifluvents that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. *Either or both* of the following:

a. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *or*

b. In one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either chroma of 0 or hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquertic Ustifluvents**

LDDB. Other Ustifluvents that have *both* of the following:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrertic Ustifluvents**

LDDC. Other Ustifluvents that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Ustifluvents**

LDDD. Other Ustifluvents that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Ustifluvents**

LDDE. Other Ustifluvents that have *either*:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *or*

2. In one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either chroma of 0 or hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Ustifluvents**

LDDF. Other Ustifluvents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Ustifluvents**

LDDG. Other Ustifluvents that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Aridic Ustifluvents**

LDDH. Other Ustifluvents that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Ustifluvents**

LDDI. Other Ustifluvents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Ustifluvents**

LDDJ. Other Ustifluvents.

**Typic Ustifluvents**

## Xerofluvents

### Key to Subgroups

LDCA. Xerofluvents that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Xerofluvents**

LDCB. Other Xerofluvents that have:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *or*

2. In one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either chroma of 0 or hue bluer than 10Y and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

3. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Xerofluvents**

LDCC. Other Xerofluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Xerofluvents**

LDCD. Other Xerofluvents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Xerofluvents**

LDCE. Other Xerofluvents that have *either*:

1. In one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *or*

2. In one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and either chroma of 0 or hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B or aquic conditions for some time in normal years.

**Aquic Xerofluvents**

LDCF. Other Xerofluvents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Xerofluvents**

LDCG. Other Xerofluvents that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Xerofluvents**

LDCH. Other Xerofluvents that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Xerofluvents**

LDCI. Other Xerofluvents.

**Typic Xerofluvents**

# Orthents

## Key to Great Groups

LEA. Orthents that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*

2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelorthents**, p. 134

LEB. Other Orthents that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryorthents**, p. 134

LEC. Other Orthents that have an aridic (or torric) moisture regime.

**Torriorthents,** p. 134

LEC. Other Orthents that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xerorthents**, p. 138

LED. Other Orthents that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustorthents**, p. 136

LEF. Other Orthents.

**Udorthents,** p. 136

## Cryorthents

**Key to Subgroups**

LEBA. Cryorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Cryorthents**

LEBB. Other Cryorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Cryorthents**

LEBC. Other Cryorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Cryorthents**

LEDD. Other Cryorthents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Cryorthents**

LEBE. Other Cryorthents that have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Cryorthents**

LEBF. Other Cryorthents.

**Typic Cryorthents**

## Gelorthents

**Key to Subgroups**

LEAA. Gelorthents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Gelorthents**

LEAB. Other Gelorthents.

**Typic Gelorthents**

## Torriorthents

**Key to Subgroups**

LECA. Torriorthents that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

3. A hyperthermic, thermic, mesic, frigid, or *iso* soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Lithic Ustic Torriorthents**

LECB. Other Torriorthents that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Lithic Xeric Torriorthents**

LECC. Other Torriorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Torriorthents**

LECD. Other Torriorthents that have:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

3. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xerertic Torriorthents**

LECE. Other Torriorthents that have:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

3. An aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustertic Torriorthents**

LECF. Other Torriorthents that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Torriorthents**

LECG. Other Torriorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Torriorthents**

LECH. Other Torriorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Torriorthents**

LECI. Other Torriorthents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Torriorthents**

LECJ. Other Torriorthents that have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Torriorthents**

LEBC. Other Torriorthents that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

2. A hyperthermic, thermic, mesic, frigid, or *iso* soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Torriorthents**

LECL. Other Torriorthents that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Torriorthents**

LECM. Other Torriorthents.

**Typic Torriorthents**

## Udorthents

**Key to Subgroups**

LEFA. Udorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Udorthents**

LEFB. Other Udorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Udorthents**

LEFC. Other Udorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Udorthents**

LEFD. Other Udorthents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Udorthents**

LEFE. Other Udorthents that have 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, wormcasts, and filled animal burrows between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vermic Udorthents**

LEFF. Other Udorthents.

**Typic Udorthents**

## Ustorthents

**Key to Subgroups**

LEEA. Ustorthents that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Aridic Lithic Ustorthents**

LEEB. Other Ustorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Ustorthents**

LEEC. Other Ustorthents that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all parts for four-

tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Torrertic Ustorthents**

LEED. Other Ustorthents that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Ustorthents**

LEEE. Other Ustorthents that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Ustorthents**

LEEF. Other Ustorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Ustorthents**

LEEG. Other Ustorthents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Ustorthents**

LEEH. Other Ustorthents that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Ustorthents**

LEEI. Other Ustorthents that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, remains moist in some or all parts for less than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitritorrandic Ustorthents**

LEEJ. Other Ustorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Ustorthents**

LEEK. Other Ustorthents that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Aridic Ustorthents**

LEEL. Other Ustorthents that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 105 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some or all parts for less than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Ustorthents**

LEEM. Other Ustorthents that have 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, wormcasts, and filled animal burrows between either the Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vermic Ustorthents**

LEEN. Other Ustorthents.

**Typic Ustorthents**

## Xerorthents

### Key to Subgroups

LEDA. Xerorthents that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Xerorthents**

LEDB. Other Xerorthents that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Xerorthents**

LEDC. Other Xerorthents that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Xerorthents**

LEDD. Other Xerorthents that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Xerorthents**

LEDE. Other Xerorthents that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Xerorthents**

LEDF. Other Xerorthents that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 60 percent in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 75 cm below the mineral soil surface surface or in the horizon directly above a root-limiting layer that is at a shallower depth.

**Dystric Xerorthents**

LEDG. Other Xerorthents.

**Typic Xerorthents**

# Psamments

## Key to Great Groups

LCA. Psamments that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryopsamments**, p. 139

LCB. Other Psamments that have an aridic (or torric) moisture regime.

**Torripsamments**, p. 140

LCC. Other Psamments that have, in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction within the particle-size control section, a total of more than 90 percent (by weighted average) resistant minerals.

**Quartzipsamments**, p. 139

LCD. Other Psamments that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustipsamments**, p. 141

LCE. Other Psamments that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeropsamments**, p. 142

LCF. Other Psamments.

**Udipsamments**, p. 141

## Cryopsamments

### Key to Subgroups

LCAA. Cryopsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Cryopsamments**

LCAB. Other Cryopsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Cryopsamments**

LCAC. Other Cryopsamments that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Cryopsamments**

LCAD. Other Cryopsamments that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction containing 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Cryopsamments**

LCAE. Other Cryopsamments that have a horizon 5 cm or more thick that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
2. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Cryopsamments**

LCAF. Other Cryopsamments that have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Cryopsamments**

LCAG. Other Cryopsamments.

**Typic Cryopsamments**

## Quartzipsamments

### Key to Subgroups

LCCA. Quartzipsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Quartzipsamments**

LCCB. Other Quartzipsamments that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. A horizon, 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:
   a. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
   b. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
   c. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Aquodic Quartzipsamments**

LCCC. Other Quartzipsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface,

redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Quartzipsamments**

LCCD. Other Quartzipsamments that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Quartzipsamments**

LCCE. Other Quartzipsamments that meet *all* of the following:

1. Have an ustic moisture regime; *and*
2. Have a clay fraction with a CEC of 16 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (by $NH_4OAc$ pH 7); *and*
3. The sum of the weighted average silt plus 2 times the weighted average clay (both by weight) is more than 5.

**Ustoxic Quartzipsamments**

LCCF. Other Quartzipsamments that meet *all* of the following:

1. Have a udic moisture regime; *and*
2. Have a clay fraction with a CEC of 16 cmol(+) or less per kg clay (by $NH_4OAc$ pH 7); *and*
3. The sum of the weighted average silt plus 2 times the weighted average clay (both by weight) is more than 5.

**Udoxic Quartzipsamments**

LCCG. Other Quartzipsamments that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Quartzipsamments**

LCCH. Other Quartzipsamments that have *both*:

1. Lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. An ustic moisture regime.

**Lamellic Ustic Quartzipsamments**

LCCI. Other Quartzipsamments that have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Quartzipsamments**

LCCJ. Other Quartzipsamments that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Quartzipsamments**

LCCK. Other Quartzipsamments that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Quartzipsamments**

LCCL. Other Quartzipsamments that have a horizon, 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*
2. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*
3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Quartzipsamments**

LCCM. Other Quartzipsamments.

**Typic Quartzipsamments**

## Torripsamments

**Key to Subgroups**

LCBA. Torripsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Torripsamments**

LCBB. Other Torripsamments that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days

**Oxyaquic Torripsamments**

LCBC. Other Torripsamments that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction containing 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Torripsamments**

LCBD. Other Torripsamments that have a horizon within 100 cm of the soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Haploduridic Torripsamments**

LCBE. Other Torripsamments that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

2. An aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustic Torripsamments**

LCBF. Other Torripsamments that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in all its parts for less than three-fourths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is 5 °C or higher; *and*

2. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and an aridic (or torric) moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xeric Torripsamments**

LCBG. Other Torripsamments that have, in all horizons from a depth of 25 to 100 cm, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Torripsamments**

LCBH. Other Torripsamments.

**Typic Torripsamments**

## Udipsamments

**Key to Subgroups**

LCFA. Udipsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Udipsamments**

LCFB. Other Udipsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Udipsamments**

LCFC. Other Udipsamments that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Udipsamments**

LCFD. Other Udipsamments that have a horizon, 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Udipsamments**

LCFE. Other Udipsamments that have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Udipsamments**

LCFF. Other Udipsamments that have a surface horizon between 25 and 50 cm thick that meets all of the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

**Plagganthreptic Udipsamments**

LCFG. Other Udipsamments.

**Typic Udipsamments**

## Ustipsamments

**Key to Subgroups**

LCDA. Ustipsamments that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Ustipsamments**

LCDB. Other Ustipsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Ustipsamments**

LCDC. Other Ustipsamments that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Ustipsamments**

LCDD. Other Ustipsamments that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control

section that, in normal years, is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years, is moist in some or all parts for less than 180 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Aridic Ustipsamments**

LCDE. Other Ustipsamments that have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Ustipsamments**

LCDF. Other Ustipsamments that have, in all horizons from a depth of 25 to 100 cm, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A color value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Ustipsamments**

LCDG. Other Ustipsamments.

**Typic Ustipsamments**

## Xeropsamments

**Key to Subgroups**

LCEA. Xeropsamments have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Xeropsamments**

LCEB. Other Xeropsamments that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Aquic Durinodic Xeropsamments**

LCEC. Other Xeropsamments that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Xeropsamments**

LCED. Other Xeropsamments that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Xeropsamments**

LCEE. Other Xeropsamments that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction containing 5 percent or more volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Xeropsamments**

LCEF. Other Xeropsamments that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Durinodic Xeropsamments**

LCEG. Other Xeropsamments that have lamellae within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Xeropsamments**

LCEH. Other Xeropsamments that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 60 percent in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 75 cm below the mineral soil surface or in the horizon directly above a root-limiting layer that is at a shallower depth.

**Dystric Xeropsamments**

LCEI. Other Xeropsamments.

**Typic Xeropsamments**

# CHAPTER 9

# *Gelisols*

## Key to Suborders

AA. Gelisols that have organic soil materials that meet *one or more* of the following:

1. Overlie cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials and/or fill their interstices *and* directly below these materials have either a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact; *or*

2. When added with the underlying cindery, fragmental, or pumiceous materials, total 40 cm or more between the soil surface and a depth of 50 cm; *or*

3. Are saturated with water for 30 or more cumulative days during normal years (or are artificially drained) and have 80 percent or more, by volume, organic soil materials from the soil surface to a depth of 50 cm or to a glacic layer or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Histels**, p. 143

AB. Other Gelisols that have one or more horizons showing cryoturbation in the form of irregular, broken, or distorted horizon boundaries, involutions, the accumulation of organic matter on top of the permafrost, ice or sand wedges, and oriented rock fragments.

**Turbels**, p. 148

AC. Other Gelisols.

**Orthels**, p. 144

## Histels

### Key to Great Groups

AAA. Histels that are saturated with water for less than 30 cumulative days during normal years (and are not artificially drained).

**Folistels**, p. 144

AAB. Other Histels that are saturated with water for 30 or more cumulative days during normal years and that have *both*:

1. A glacic layer with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface; *and*

2. Less than three-fourths (by volume) *Sphagnum* fibers in the organic soil materials to a depth of 50 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Glacistels**, p. 144

AAC. Other Histels that have more thickness of fibric soil materials than any other kind of organic soil material to a depth of 50 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Fibristels**, p. 143

AAD. Other Histels that have more thickness of hemic soil materials than any other kind of organic soil material to a depth of 50 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Hemistels**, p. 144

AAE. Other Histels.

**Sapristels**, p. 144

### Fibristels

#### Key to Subgroups

AACA. Fibristels that have a lithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Fibristels**

AACB. Other Fibristels that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Terric Fibristels**

AACC. Other Fibristels that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more layers of any thickness within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Fluvaquentic Fibristels**

AACD. Other Fibristels in which three-fourths or more of the fibric material is derived from *Sphagnum* to a depth of 50 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Sphagnic Fibristels**

AACE. Other Fibristels.

**Typic Fibristels**

## Folistels

**Key to Subgroups**

AAAA. Folistels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Folistels**

AAAB. Other Folistels that have a glacic layer with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Glacic Folistels**

AAAC. Other Folistels.

**Typic Folistels**

## Glacistels

**Key to Subgroups**

AABA. Glacistels that have more thickness of hemic materials than any other kind of organic soil material in the upper 50 cm.

**Hemic Glacistels**

AABB. Other Glacistels that have more thickness of sapric materials than any other kind of organic soil material in the upper 50 cm.

**Sapric Glacistels**

AABC. Other Glacistels

**Typic Glacistels**

## Hemistels

**Key to Subgroups**

AADA. Hemistels that have a lithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Hemistels**

AADB. Other Hemistels that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Terric Hemistels**

AADC. Other Hemistels that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more layers of any thickness within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Fluvaquentic Hemistels**

AADD. Other Hemistels.

**Typic Hemistels**

## Sapristels

**Key to Subgroups**

AAEA. Sapristels that have a lithic contact within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Sapristels**

AAEB. Other Sapristels that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Terric Sapristels**

AAEC. Other Sapristels that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more layers of any thickness within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Fluvaquentic Sapristels**

AAED. Other Sapristels.

**Typic Sapristels**

# Orthels

## Key to Great Groups

ACA. Orthels that have in 30 percent or more of the pedon more than 40 percent, by volume, organic materials from the soil surface to a depth of 50 cm.

**Historthels**, p. 146

ACB. Other Orthels that have, within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquorthels**, p. 145

ACC. Other Orthels that have anhydrous conditions.

**Anhyorthels**, p. 145

ACD. Other Orthels that have a mollic epipedon.

**Mollorthels**, p. 147

ACE. Other Orthels that have an umbric epipedon.

**Umbrorthels**, p. 148

ACF. Other Orthels that have an argillic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Argiorthels**, p. 146

ACG. Other Orthels that have, below the Ap horizon or below a depth of 25 cm, whichever is deeper, less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments and have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser in the particle-size control section.

**Psammorthels**, p. 147

ACH. Other Orthels.

**Haplorthels**, p. 146

## Anhyorthels

**Key to Subgroups**

ACCA. Anhyorthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Anhyorthels**

ACCB. Other Anhyorthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Anhyorthels**

ACCC. Other Anhyorthels that have a petrogypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrogypsic Anhyorthels**

ACCD. Other Anhyorthels that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsic Anhyorthels**

ACCE. Other Anhyorthels that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that contains 12 cmol(-)/L in 1:5 soil:water nitrate and in which the product of its thickness (in cm) and its nitrate concentration is 3,500 or more.

**Nitric Anhyorthels**

ACCF. Other Anhyorthels that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salic Anhyorthels**

ACCG. Other Anhyorthels that have a calcic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Anhyorthels**

ACCH. Other Anhyorthels.

**Typic Anhyorthels**

## Aquorthels

**Key to Subgroups**

ACBA. Aquorthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Aquorthels**

ACBB. Other Aquorthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Aquorthels**

ACBC. Other Aquorthels that have a sulfuric horizon or sulfidic materials with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sulfuric Aquorthels**

ACBD. Other Aquorthels that have *either*:

1. Organic soil materials that are discontinuous at the surface; *or*

2. Organic soil materials at the surface that change in thickness fourfold or more within a pedon.

**Ruptic-Histic Aquorthels**

ACBE. Other Aquorthels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Aquorthels**

ACBF. Other Aquorthels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Aquorthels**

ACBG. Other Aquorthels that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salic Aquorthels**

ACBH. Other Aquorthels that have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments and a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser in all layers within the particle-size control section.

**Psammentic Aquorthels**

ACBI. Other Aquorthels that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Aquorthels**

ACBJ. Other Aquorthels.

**Typic Aquorthels**

## Argiorthels

**Key to Subgroups**

ACFA. Argiorthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Argiorthels**

ACFB. Other Argiorthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Argiorthels**

ACFC. Other Argiorthels that have a natric horizon.

**Natric Argiorthels**

ACFD. Other Argiorthels.

**Typic Argiorthels**

## Haplorthels

**Key to Subgroups**

ACHA. Haplorthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplorthels**

ACHB. Other Haplorthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Haplorthels**

ACHC. Other Haplorthels that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artifical drainage); *and*

2. *Either*:

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; or

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Haplorthels**

ACHD. Other Haplorthels that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplorthels**

ACHE. Other Haplorthels that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Haplorthels**

ACHF. Other Haplorthels.

**Typic Haplorthels**

## Historthels

**Key to Subgroups**

ACAA. Historthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Historthels**

ACAB. Other Historthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Glacic Historthels**

ACAC. Other Historthels that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artifical drainage); *and*

2. *Either*:

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a

depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic or paralithic contact, which ever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Historthels**

ACAD. Other Historthels that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic or paralithic contact, which ever is shallower.

**Fluventic Historthels**

ACAE. Other Historthels that have more than 40 percent, by volume, organic soil materials from the soil surface to a depth of 50 cm in 75 percent or less of the pedon.

**Ruptic Historthels**

ACAF. Other Historthels.

**Typic Historthels**

## Mollorthels

### Key to Subgroups

ACDA. Mollorthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Mollorthels**

ACDB. Other Mollorthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Mollorthels**

ACDC. Other Mollorthels that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time during normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Vertic Mollorthels**

ACDD. Other Mollorthels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Mollorthels**

ACDE. Other Mollorthels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Mollorthels**

ACDF. Other Mollorthels that have:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

**Cumulic Mollorthels**

ACDG. Other Mollorthels that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Mollorthels**

ACDH. Other Mollorthels.

**Typic Mollorthels**

## Psammorthels

### Key to Subgroups

ACGA. Psammorthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Psammorthels**

ACGB. Other Psammorthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Psammorthels**

ACGC. Other Psammorthels that have a horizon 5 cm or more thick that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Psammorthels**

ACGD. Other Psammorthels.

**Typic Psammorthels**

## Umbrorthels

### Key to Subgroups

ACEA. Umbrorthels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Umbrorthels**

ACEB. Other Umbrorthels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Umbrorthels**

ACEC. Other Umbrorthels that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time during normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Vertic Umbrorthels**

ACED. Other Umbrorthels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Umbrorthels**

ACEE. Other Umbrorthels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Umbrorthels**

ACEF. Other Umbrorthels that have:

1. An umbric epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

**Cumulic Umbrorthels**

ACEG. Other Umbrorthels that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Umbrorthels**

ACEH. Other Umbrorthels.

**Typic Umbrorthels**

# Turbels

## Key to Great Groups

ABA. Turbels that have in 30 percent or more of the pedon more than 40 percent, by volume, organic materials from the soil surface to a depth of 50 cm.

**Histoturbels**, p. 149

ABB. Other Turbels that have, within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquiturbels**, p. 149

ABC. Other Turbels that have anhydrous conditions.

**Anhyturbels**, p. 149

ABD. Other Turbels that have a mollic epipedon.

**Molliturbels**, p. 150

ABE. Other Turbels that have an umbric epipedon.

**Umbriturbels**, p. 150

ABF. Other Turbels that have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments and a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser in all layers within the particle-size control section.

**Psammoturbels**, p. 150

ABG. Other Turbels.

**Haploturbels**, p. 149

## Anhyturbels

**Key to Subgroups**

ABCA. Anhyturbels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Anhyturbels**

ABCB. Other Anhyturbels that have a glacic layer with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Anhyturbels**

ABCC. Other Anhyturbels that have a petrogypsic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrogypsic Anhyturbels**

ABCD. Other Anhyturbels that have a gypsic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsic Anhyturbels**

ABCE. Other Anhyturbels that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that contains 12 cmol(-)/L nitrate in 1:5 soil:water extract and in which the product of its thickness (in cm) and its nitrate concentration is 3,500 or more.

**Nitric Anhyturbels**

ABCF. Other Anhyturbels that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salic Anhyturbels**

ABCG. Other Anhyturbels that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Anhyturbels**

ABCH. Other Anhyturbels.

**Typic Anhyturbels**

## Aquiturbels

**Key to Subgroups**

ABBA. Aquiturbels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Aquiturbels**

ABBB. Other Aquiturbels that have a glacic layer with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Aquiturbels**

ABBC. Other Aquiturbels that have a sulfuric horizon or sulfidic materials with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sulfuric Aquiturbels**

ABBD. Other Aquiturbels that have *either*:

1. Organic soil materials that are discontinous at the surface; *or*

2. Organic soil materials at the surface that change in thickness fourfold or more within a pedon.

**Ruptic-Histic Aquiturbels**

ABBE. Other Aquiturbels that have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments and a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser in all layers within the particle-size control section.

**Psammentic Aquiturbels**

ABBF. Other Aquiturbels.

**Typic Aquiturbels**

## Haploturbels

**Key to Subgroups**

ABGA. Haploturbels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haploturbels**

ABGB. Other Haploturbels that have a glacic layer that has an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Haploturbels**

ABGC. Other Haploturbels that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haploturbels**

ABGD. Other Haploturbels.

**Typic Haploturbels**

## Histoturbels

**Key to Subgroups**

ABAA. Histoturbels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Histoturbels**

ABAB. Other Histoturbels that have a glacic layer with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Glacic Histoturbels**

ABAC. Other Histoturbels that have more than 40 percent, by

volume, organic soil materials from the soil surface to a depth of 50 cm in 75 percent or less of the pedon.

**Ruptic Histoturbels**

ABAD. Other Histoturbels.

**Typic Histoturbels**

## Molliturbels

### Key to Subgroups

ABDA. Molliturbels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Molliturbels**

ABDB. Other Molliturbels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Molliturbels**

ABDC. Other Molliturbels that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time during normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Vertic Molliturbels**

ABDD. Other Molliturbels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Molliturbels**

ABDE. Other Molliturbels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Molliturbels**

ABDF. Other Molliturbels that have:

1. A mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

**Cumulic Molliturbels**

ABDG. Other Molliturbels that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Molliturbels**

ABDH. Other Molliturbels.

**Typic Molliturbels**

## Psammoturbels

### Key to Subgroups

ABFA. Psammoturbels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Psammoturbels**

ABFB. Other Psammoturbels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Psammoturbels**

ABFC. Other Psammoturbels that have a horizon 5 cm or more thick that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Psammoturbels**

ABFD. Other Psammoturbels.

**Typic Psammoturbels**

## Umbriturbels

### Key to Subgroups

ABEA. Umbriturbels that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Umbriturbels**

ABEB. Other Umbriturbels that have a glacic layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Glacic Umbriturbels**

ABEC. Other Umbriturbels that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time during normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallowest.

**Vertic Umbriturbels**

ABED. Other Umbriturbels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Umbriturbels**

ABEE. Other Umbriturbels that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Umbriturbels**

ABEF. Other Umbriturbels that have:

1. An umbric epipedon 40 cm or more thick with a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent.

**Cumulic Umbriturbels**

ABEG. Other Umbriturbels that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time during normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Umbriturbels**

ABEH. Other Umbriturbels.

**Typic Umbriturbels**

# CHAPTER 10

# *Histosols*

## Key to Suborders

BA. Histosols that are saturated with water for less than 30 cumulative days during normal years (and are not artificially drained).

**Folists**, p. 154

BB. Other Histosols that:

1. Have more thickness of fibric soil materials than any other kind of organic soil material *either*:

   a. In the organic parts of the subsurface tier if there is no continuous mineral layer 40 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the subsurface tier; *or*

   b. In the *combined* thickness of the organic parts of the surface and subsurface tiers if there is a continuous mineral layer 40 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the subsurface tier; *and*

2. Do not have a sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the soil surface; *and*

3. Do not have sulfidic materials within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Fibrists**, p. 153

BC. Other Histosols that have more thickness of sapric soil materials than any other kind of organic soil materials *either*:

1. In the organic parts of the subsurface tier if there is no continuous mineral layer 40 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the subsurface tier; *or*

2. In the *combined* thickness of the organic parts of the surface and subsurface tiers if there is a continuous mineral layer 40 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the subsurface tier.

**Saprists**, p. 156

BD. Other Histosols.

**Hemists**, p. 155

## Fibrists

### Key to Great Groups

BBA. Fibrists that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryofibrists**, p. 153

BBB. Other Fibrists in which fibric *Sphagnum* constitutes three-fourths or more of the volume to *either* a depth of 90 cm from the soil surface *or* to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, fragmental materials, or other mineral soil materials if at a depth of less than 90 cm.

**Sphagnofibrists**, p. 154

BBC. Other Fibrists.

**Haplofibrists**, p. 154



### Cryofibrists

#### Key to Subgroups

BBAA. Cryofibrists that have a layer of water within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hydric Cryofibrists**

BBAB. Other Cryofibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

**Lithic Cryofibrists**

BBAC. Other Cryofibrists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Cryofibrists**

BBAD. Other Cryofibrists that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more mineral layers of any thickness in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fluvaquentic Cryofibrists**

BBAE. Other Cryofibrists in which three-fourths or more of the fiber volume in the surface tier is derived from *Sphagnum*.

**Sphagnic Cryofibrists**

BBAF. Other Cryofibrists.

**Typic Cryofibrists**

### Haplofibrists

**Key to Subgroups**

BBCA. Haplofibrists that have a layer of water within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hydric Haplofibrists**

BBCB. Other Haplofibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

**Lithic Haplofibrists**

BBCC. Other Haplofibrists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

**Limnic Haplofibrists**

BBCD. Other Haplofibrists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Haplofibrists**

BBCE. Other Haplofibrists that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more mineral layers of any thickness in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fluvaquentic Haplofibrists**

BBCF. Other Haplofibrists that have one or more layers of hemic and sapric materials with a total thickness of 25 cm or more in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hemic Haplofibrists**

BBCG. Other Haplofibrists.

**Typic Haplofibrists**

### Sphagnofibrists

**Key to Subgroups**

BBBA. Sphagnofibrists that have a layer of water within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hydric Sphagnofibrists**

BBBB. Other Sphagnofibrists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

**Lithic Sphagnofibrists**

BBBC. Other Sphagnofibrists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

**Limnic Sphagnofibrists**

BBBD. Other Sphagnofibrists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Sphagnofibrists**

BBBE. Other Sphagnofibrists that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more mineral layers of any thickness in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fluvaquentic Sphagnofibrists**

BBBF. Other Sphagnofibrists that have one or more layers of hemic and sapric materials with a total thickness of 25 cm or more in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hemic Sphagnofibrists**

BBBG. Other Sphagnofibrists.

**Typic Sphagnofibrists**

## Folists

### Key to Great Groups

BAA. Folists that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryofolists**, p. 154

BAB. Other Folists that have an aridic (or torric) soil moisture regime.

**Torrifolists**, p. 155

BAC. Other Folists that have an ustic or xeric soil moisture regime.

**Ustifolists**, p. 155

BAD. Other Folists.

**Udifolists**, p. 155

### Cryofolists

**Key to Subgroups**

BAAA. Cryofolists that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Cryofolists**

BAAB. Other Cryofolists.

**Typic Cryofolists**

## Torrifolists

**Key to Subgroups**

BABA. Torrifolists that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Torrifolists**

BABB. Other Torrifolists.

**Typic Torrifolists**

## Udifolists

**Key to Subgroups**

BADA. Udifolists that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Udifolists**

BADB. Other Udifolists.

**Typic Udifolists**

## Ustifolists

**Key to Subgroups**

BACA. Ustifolists that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Lithic Ustifolists**

BACB. Other Ustifolists.

**Typic Ustifolists**

# Hemists

## Key to Great Groups

BDA. Hemists that have a sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Sulfohemists**, p. 156

BDB. Other Hemists that have sulfidic materials within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Sulfihemists**, p. 156

BDC. Other Hemists that have a horizon 2 cm or more thick in which humilluvic materials constitute one-half or more of the volume.

**Luvihemists**, p. 156

BDD. Other Hemists that have a cryic temperature regime.

**Cryohemists**, p. 155

BDE. Other Hemists.

**Haplohemists**, p. 155

## Cryohemists

**Key to Subgroups**

BDDA. Cryohemists that have a layer of water within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hydric Cryohemists**

BDDB. Other Cryohemists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

**Lithic Cryohemists**

BDDC. Other Cryohemists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Cryohemists**

BDDD. Other Cryohemists that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more mineral layers of any thickness in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fluvaquentic Cryohemists**

BDDE. Other Cryohemists.

**Typic Cryohemists**



## Haplohemists

**Key to Subgroups**

BDEA. Haplohemists that have a layer of water within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hydric Haplohemists**

BDEB. Other Haplohemists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

**Lithic Haplohemists**

BDEC. Other Haplohemists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

**Limnic Haplohemists**

BDED. Other Haplohemists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Haplohemists**

BDEE. Other Haplohemists that have, within the organic

materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more mineral layers of any thickness in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fluvaquentic Haplohemists**

BDEF. Other Haplohemists that have one or more layers of fibric materials with a total thickness of 25 cm or more in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fibric Haplohemists**

BDEG. Other Haplohemists that have one or more layers of sapric materials with a total thickness of 25 cm or more below the surface tier.

**Sapric Haplohemists**

BDEH. Other Haplohemists.

**Typic Haplohemists**

### Luvihemists

**Key to Subgroups**

BDCA. All Luvihemists (provisionally).

**Typic Luvihemists**

### Sulfihemists

**Key to Subgroups**

BDBA. Sulfihemists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Sulfihemists**

BDBB. Other Sulfihemists.

**Typic Sulfihemists**

### Sulfohemists

**Key to Subgroups**

BDAA. All Sulfohemists (provisionally).

**Typic Sulfohemists**

## Saprists

### Key to Great Groups

BCA. Saprists that have a sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the soil surface.

**Sulfosaprists**, p. 157

BCB. Other Saprists that have sulfidic materials within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Sulfisaprists**, p. 157

BCC. Other Saprists that have a cryic temperature regime.

**Cryosaprists**, p. 156

BCD. Other Saprists.

**Haplosaprists**, p. 156

### Cryosaprists

**Key to Subgroups**

BCCA. Cryosaprists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

**Lithic Cryosaprists**

BCCB. Other Cryosaprists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the control section.

**Limnic Cryosaprist**s

BCCC. Other Cryosaprists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Cryosaprists**

BCCD. Other Cryosaprists that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more mineral layers of any thickness in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fluvaquentic Cryosaprists**

BCCE. Other Cryosaprists.

**Typic Cryosaprists**

### Haplosaprists

**Key to Subgroups**

BCDA. Haplosaprists that have a lithic contact within the control section.

**Lithic Haplosaprists**

BCDB. Other Haplosaprists that have one or more limnic layers with a total thickness of 5 cm or more within the controlsection.

**Limnic Haplosaprists**

BCDC. Other Haplosaprists that have *both*:

1. Throughout a layer 30 cm or thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, an electrical conductivity of 30 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 months or more during normal years; *and*

2. A mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Halic Terric Haplosaprists**

BCDD. Other Haplosaprists that have throughout a layer 30 cm or more thick within the control section, an electrical conductivity of 30 dS/m or more (1:1 soil:water) for 6 months or more during normal years.

**Halic Haplosaprists**

BCDE. Other Haplosaprists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Haplosaprists**

BCDF. Other Haplosaprists that have, within the organic materials, either one mineral layer 5 cm or more thick or two or more mineral layers of any thickness in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Fluvaquentic Haplosaprists**

BCDG. Other Haplosaprists that have one or more layers of fibric or hemic materials with a total thickness of 25 cm or more in the control section, below the surface tier.

**Hemic Haplosaprists**

BCDH. Other Haplosaprists.

**Typic Haplosaprists**

## Sulfisaprists

### Key to Subgroups

BCBA. Sulfisaprists that have a mineral layer 30 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within the control section, below the surface tier.

**Terric Sulfisaprists**

BCBB. Other Sulfisaprists.

**Typic Sulfisaprists**

## Sulfosaprists

### Key to Subgroups

BCAA. All Sulfosaprists (provisionally).

**Typic Sulfosaprists**

# CHAPTER 11

# *Inceptisols*

## Key to Suborders

KA. Inceptisols that have *one or more* of the following:

1. In a layer above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or in a layer at a depth between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

   a. A histic epipedon; *or*

   b. A sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   c. A layer directly under the epipedon, or within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, that has, on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent, 50 percent or more chroma of *either*:

      (1) 2 or less if there are redox concentrations; *or*

      (2) 1 or less; *or*

   d. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated; *or*

2. An exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio [SAR] of 13 or more) in half or more of the soil volume within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, a decrease in ESP (or SAR) values with increasing depth below 50 cm, and ground water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for some time during the year.

**Aquepts**, p. 159

KB. Other Inceptisols that have a plaggen or anthropic epipedon.

**Anthrepts**, p. 159

KC. Other Inceptisols that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*
2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelepts**, p. 171

KD. Other Inceptisols that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryepts**, p. 166

KE. Other Inceptisols that have an ustic soil moisture regime.

**Ustepts**, p. 177

KF. Other Inceptisols that have a xeric soil moisture regime.

**Xerepts**, p. 184

KG. Other Inceptisols.

**Udepts**, p. 172

## Anthrepts

### Key to Great Groups

KBA. Anthrepts that have a plaggen epipedon.

**Plagganthrepts**, p. 159

KBB. Other Anthrepts.

**Haplanthrepts**, p. 159

### Haplanthrepts

#### Key to Subgroups

KBBA. All Haplanthrepts (provisionally).

**Typic Haplanthrepts**

### Plagganthrepts

#### Key to Subgroups

KBAA. All Plagganthrepts (provisionally).

**Typic Plagganthrepts**

## Aquepts

### Key to Great Groups

KAA. Aquepts that have a sulfuric horizon that has its upper boundary within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sulfaquepts**, p. 165

KAB. Other Aquepts that have, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, one or more horizons in which plinthite or a cemented or indurated diagnostic horizon either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.
**Petraquepts**, p. 165

KAC. Other Aquepts that have *either*:

1. A salic horizon; *or*

2. In one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio [SAR] of 13 or more) and a decrease in ESP (or SAR) values with increasing depth below 50 cm.

**Halaquepts**, p. 164

KAD. Other Aquepts that have a fragipan with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Fragiaquepts**, p. 163

KAE. Other Aquepts that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*

2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelaquepts**, p. 163

KAF. Other Aquepts that have a cryic soil temperature regime.
**Cryaquepts**, p. 160

KAG. Other Aquepts that have, in one or more layers at least 25 cm thick (cumulative) within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, 25 percent or more (by volume) recognizable bioturbation, such as filled animal burrows, wormholes, or casts.
**Vermaquepts**, p. 165

KAH. Other Aquepts that have a histic, melanic, mollic, or umbric epipedon.
**Humaquepts**, p. 164

KAI. Other Aquepts that have episaturation.
**Epiaquepts**, p. 162

KAJ. Other Aquepts.
**Endoaquepts**, p. 161

## Cryaquepts

### Key to Subgroups

KAFA. Cryaquepts that have, within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A sulfuric horizon; *or*

2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all of the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH between 3.5 and 4.0; *or*

3. Sulfidic materials.

**Sulfic Cryaquepts**

KAFB. Other Cryaquepts that have both a histic epipedon and a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Histic Lithic Cryaquepts**

KAFC. Other Cryaquepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Lithic Cryaquepts**

KAFD. Other Cryaquepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Cryaquepts**

KAFE. Other Cryaquepts that have a histic epipedon.
**Histic Cryaquepts**

KAFF. Other Cryaquepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Cryaquepts**

KAFG. Other Cryaquepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Cryaquepts**

KAFH. Other Cryaquepts that have *both*:

1. Chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons at a depth between 15 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Aeric Humic Cryaquepts**

KAFI. Other Cryaquepts that have chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons at a depth between 15 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Aeric Cryaquepts**

KAFJ. Other Cryaquepts that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Cryaquepts**

KAFK. Other Cryaquepts.

**Typic Cryaquepts**

## Endoaquepts

**Key to Subgroups**

KAJA. Endoaquepts that have, within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A sulfuric horizon; *or*

2. A horizon 15 cm or more thick that has all of the characteristics of a sulfuric horizon, except that it has a pH between 3.5 and 4.0; *or*

3. Sulfidic materials.

**Sulfic Endoaquepts**

KAJB. Other Endoaquepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Endoaquepts**

KAJC. Other Endoaquepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Endoaquepts**

KAJD. Other Endoaquepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Endoaquepts**

KAJE. Other Endoaquepts that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. Hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*

   a. If peds are present, either chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

   b. If peds are absent, a chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, hue of 10YR or yellower; *and either*

   a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

   a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent

or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Endoaquepts**

KAJF. Other Endoaquepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Endoaquepts**

KAJG. Other Endoaquepts that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Endoaquepts**

KAJH. Other Endoaquepts that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. Hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*

   a. If peds are present, either chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

   b. If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, hue of 10YR or yellower and *either*:

   a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Endoaquepts**

KAJI. Other Endoaquepts that have:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent in some part within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Endoaquepts**

KAJJ. Other Endoaquepts that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Endoaquepts**

KAJK. Other Endoaquepts.

**Typic Endoaquepts**

## Epiaquepts

### Key to Subgroups

KAIA. Epiaquepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Epiaquepts**

KAIB. Other Epiaquepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium

oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Epiaquepts**

KAIC. Other Epiaquepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Epiaquepts**

KAID. Other Epiaquepts that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Epiaquepts**

KAIE. Other Epiaquepts that have, in one or more horizons between the A or Ap horizon and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface, *one* of the following colors:

1. Hue of 7.5YR or redder in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *and*

   a. If peds are present, either chroma of 2 or more on 50 percent or more of ped exteriors or no redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less in ped interiors; *or*

   b. If peds are absent, chroma of 2 or more in 50 percent or more of the matrix; *or*

2. In 50 percent or more of the matrix, hue of 10YR or yellower and *either*:

   a. Both a color value, moist, and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. Chroma of 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Epiaquepts**

KAIF. Other Epiaquepts that have *both*:

1. A color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil, or materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm have these color values after mixing; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent in some part within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Epiaquepts**

KAIG. Other Epiaquepts that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) throughout the upper 15 cm of the mineral soil or have materials between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 15 cm that have these color values after mixing.

**Mollic Epiaquepts**

KAIH. Other Epiaquepts.

**Typic Epiaquepts**

## Fragiaquepts

**Key to Subgroups**

KADA. Fragiaquepts that have, in 50 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons either between the plow layer and a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface or, if there is no plow layer, between depths of 15 and 75 cm, chroma of *either*:

1. 3 or more; *or*

2. 2 or more if there are no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Fragiaquepts**

KADB. Other Fragiaquepts that have a histic, mollic, or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Fragiaquepts**

KADC. Other Fragiaquepts.

**Typic Fragiaquepts**

## Gelaquepts

**Key to Subgroups**

KAEA. Gelaquepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Gelaquepts**

KAEB. Other Gelaquepts that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Gelaquepts**

KAEC. Other Gelaquepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Gelaquepts**

KAED. Other Gelaquepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Gelaquepts**

KAEE. Other Gelaquepts that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Gelaquepts**

KAEF. Other Gelaquepts.

**Typic Gelaquepts**

## Halaquepts

### Key to Subgroups

KACA. Halaquepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Halaquepts**

KACB. Other Halaquepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Halaquepts**

KACC. Other Halaquepts that have a horizon 15 cm or more thick that has 20 percent or more (by volume) cemented or indurated soil material and has its upper boundary within 100 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Duric Halaquepts**

KACD. Other Halaquepts that have chroma of 3 or more in 40 percent or more of the matrix of one or more horizons at a depth between 15 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Aeric Halaquepts**

KACE. Other Halaquepts.

**Typic Halaquepts**

## Humaquepts

### Key to Subgroups

KAHA. Humaquepts that have an *n* value of *either*:

1. More than 0.7 (and less than 8 percent clay) in one or more layers at a depth between 20 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. More than 0.9 in one or more layers at a depth between 50 and 100 cm.

**Hydraquentic Humaquepts**

KAHB. Other Humaquepts that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Humaquepts**

KAHC. Other Humaquepts that have, throughout one or more

horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Humaquepts**

KAHD. Other Humaquepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. An umbric or mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick; *and either*

2. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

3. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Cumulic Humaquepts**

KAHE. Other Humaquepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Humaquepts**

KAHF. Other Humaquepts that have hue of 5Y or redder and chroma of 3 or more in more than 40 percent of the matrix of one or more subhorizons at a depth between 15 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Aeric Humaquepts**

KAHG. Other Humaquepts.

**Typic Humaquepts**

## Petraquepts

### Key to Subgroups

KABA. Petraquepts that have *both*:

1. A histic epipedon; *and*

2. A placic horizon.

**Histic Placic Petraquepts**

KABB. Other Petraquepts that have a placic horizon.

**Placic Petraquepts**

KABC. Other Petraquepts that have one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthic Petraquepts**

KABD. Other Petraquepts.

**Typic Petraquepts**

## Sulfaquepts

### Key to Subgroups

KAAA. Sulfaquepts that have a salic horizon within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salidic Sulfaquepts**

KAAB. Other Sulfaquepts that have an *n* value of *either*:

1. More than 0.7 (and 8 or more percent clay) in one or more layers at a depth between 20 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. More than 0.9 in one or more layers at a depth between 50 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Hydraquentic Sulfaquepts**

KAAC. Other Sulfaquepts.

**Typic Sulfaquepts**

## Vermaquepts

### Key to Subgroups

KAGA. Vermaquepts that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 7 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio [SAR] of 6 or more) in one or more subhorizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sodic Vermaquepts**

KAGB. Other Vermaquepts.

**Typic Vermaquepts**

# Cryepts

## Key to Great Groups

KDA. Cryepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humicryepts**, p. 169

KDB. Other Cryepts that have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcicryepts**, p. 166

KDC. Other Cryepts that:

1. Do not have free carbonates within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Have base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 50 percent, *either:*

   a. In one-half or more of the thickness between 25 and 75 cm below the mineral soil surface and do not have a placic horizon, duripan, fragipan, or densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In a layer, 10 cm or more thick, directly above a placic horizon, duripan, fragipan, or densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Dystrocryepts**, p. 166

KDD. Other Cryepts.

**Haplocryepts**, p. 168

## Calcicryepts

### Key to Subgroups

KDBA. Calcicryepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calcicryepts**

KDBB. Other Calcicryepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Calcicryepts**

KDBC. Other Calcicryepts that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Calcicryepts**

KDBD. Other Calcicryepts that are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years.

**Ustic Calcicryepts**

KDBE. Other Calcicryepts.

**Typic Calcicryepts**

## Dystrocryepts

### Key to Subgroups

KDCA. Dystrocryepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Dystrocryepts**

KDCB. Other Dystrocryepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more; *or*

   b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Dystrocryepts**

KDCC. Other Dystrocryepts that have *both*:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more.

**Haploxerandic Dystrocryepts**

KDCD. Other Dystrocryepts that have *both*:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Dystrocryepts**

KDCE. Other Dystrocryepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more.

**Andic Dystrocryepts**

KDCF. Other Dystrocryepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Dystrocryepts**

KDCG. Other Dystrocryepts that have *both*:

1. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fluvaquentic Dystrocryepts**

KDCH. Other Dystrocryepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Dystrocryepts**

KDCI. Other Dystrocryepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Dystrocryepts**

KDCJ. Other Dystrocryepts that have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Dystrocryepts**

KDCK. Other Dystrocryepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Dystrocryepts**

KDCL. Other Dystrocryepts that have a horizon 5 cm or more thick that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 0.25 percent or more and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Dystrocryepts**

KDCM. Other Dystrocryepts that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Dystrocryepts**

KDCN. Other Dystrocryepts that are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years.

**Ustic Dystrocryepts**

KDCO. Other Dystrocryepts that have base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 50 percent or more in one or more horizons between 25 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Eutric Dystrocryepts**

KDCP. Other Dystrocryepts.

**Typic Dystrocryepts**

## Haplocryepts

### Key to Subgroups

KDDA. Haplocryepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplocryepts**

KDDB. Other Haplocryepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more; *or*

   b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Haplocryepts**

KDDC. Other Haplocryepts that have *both*:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more.

**Haploxerandic Haplocryepts**

KDDD. Other Haplocryepts that have *both*:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Haplocryepts**

KDDE. Other Haplocryepts that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in some part for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more.

**Haplustandic Haplocryepts**

KDDF. Other Haplocryepts that have *both*:

1. A moisture control section that is dry in some part for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium

oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Ustivitrandic Haplocryepts**

KDDG. Other Haplocryepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more.

**Andic Haplocryepts**

KDDH. Other Haplocryepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplocryepts**

KDDI. Other Haplocryepts that have *both*:

1. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

   a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

   b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fluvaquentic Haplocryepts**

KDDJ. Other Haplocryepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplocryepts**

KDDK. Other Haplocryepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplocryepts**

KDDL. Other Haplocryepts that have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Haplocryepts**

KDDM. Other Haplocryepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Haplocryepts**

KDDN. Other Haplocryepts that have identifiable secondary carbonates within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haplocryepts**

KDDO. Other Haplocryepts that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Haplocryepts**

KDDP. Other Haplocryepts that are dry in some part of the moisture control section for 45 or more days (cumulative) in normal years.

**Ustic Haplocryepts**

KDDQ. Other Haplocryepts.

**Typic Haplocryepts**

## Humicryepts

### Key to Subgroups

KDAA. Humicryepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Humicryepts**

KDAB. Other Humicryepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness

of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Humicryepts**

KDAC. Other Humicryepts that have *both*:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more.

**Haploxerandic Humicryepts**

KDAD. Other Humicryepts that have *both*:

1. A xeric moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrixerandic Humicryepts**

KDAE. Other Humicryepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 1.0 percent or more.

**Andic Humicryepts**

KDAF. Other Humicryepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times (60)] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Humicryepts**

KDAG. Other Humicryepts that have *both*:

1. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fluvaquentic Humicryepts**

KDAH. Other Humicryepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Humicryepts**

KDAI. Other Humicryepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Humicryepts**

KDAJ. Other Humicryepts that have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Humicryepts**

KDAK. Other Humicryepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Humicryepts**

KDAL. Other Humicryepts that have a horizon 5 cm or more thick that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus ½ Fe (by ammonium oxalate) of 0.25 percent or more and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Humicryepts**

KDAM. Other Humicryepts that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Humicryepts**

KDAN. Other Humicryepts that have base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 50 percent or more in one-half or more of the soil thickness between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface or in some part of the 10 cm directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact less than 50 cm below the mineral soil surface.

**Eutric Humicryepts**

KDAO. Other Humicryepts.

**Typic Humicryepts**

# Gelepts

## Key to Great Groups

KCA. Gelepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Free carbonates within the soils; *or*

2. A base saturation (by NH4OAc) of 60 percent or more in one or more horizons at a depth between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface or directly above a root-limiting layer if at a shallower depth.

**Eutrogelepts**, p. 171

KCB. Other Gelepts.

**Dystrogelepts**, p. 171

## Dystrogelepts

### Key to Subgroups

KCBA. Dystrogelepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Dystrogelepts**

KCBB. Other Dystrogelepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Dystrogelepts**

KCBC. Other Dystrogelepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Dystrogelepts**

KCBD. Other Dystrogelepts that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Dystrogelepts**

KCBE. Other Dystrogelepts.

**Typic Dystrogelepts**

## Eutrogelepts

### Key to Subgroups

KCAA. Eutrogelepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Eutrogelepts**

KCAB. Other Eutrogelepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Eutrogelepts**

KCAC. Other Eutrogelepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with

chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Eutrogelepts**

KCAD. Other Eutrogelepts that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Humic Eutrogelepts**

KCAE. Other Eutrogelepts.

**Typic Eutrogelepts**

# Udepts

## Key to Great Groups

KGA. Udepts that have a sulfuric horizon within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sulfudepts**, p. 177

KGB. Other Udepts that have a duripan or another cemented or indurated soil layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durudepts**, p. 172

KGC. Other Udepts that have a fragipan with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiudepts**, p. 177

KGD. Other Udepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Free carbonates within the soils; *or*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 60 percent or more in one or more horizons at a depth between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface or directly above a root-limiting layer if at a shallower depth.

**Eutrudepts**, p. 175

KGE. Other Udepts.

**Dystrudepts**, p. 173

## Durudepts

### Key to Subgroups

KGBA. Durudepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons above the duripan and within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more, above the duripan and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Durudepts**

KGBB. Other Durudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more, above the duripan and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Durudepts**

KGBC. Other Durudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more, above the duripan and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Durudepts**

KGBD. Other Durudepts that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan and within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Durudepts**

KGBE. Other Durudepts.

**Typic Durudepts**

## Dystrudepts

### Key to Subgroups

KGEA. Dystrudepts that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. An umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Lithic Dystrudepts**

KGEB. Other Dystrudepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Dystrudepts**

KGEC. Other Dystrudepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Dystrudepts**

KGED. Other Dystrudepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

   b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Dystrudepts**

KGEE. Other Dystrudepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*

2. Saturation with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Andic Oxyaquic Dystrudepts**

KGEF. Other Dystrudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Dystrudepts**

KGEG. Other Dystrudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Dystrudepts**

KGEH. Other Dystrudepts that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fragiaquic Dystrudepts**

KGEI. Other Dystrudepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. *Either*:

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Dystrudepts**

KGEJ. Other Dystrudepts that have *both*:

1. An umbric or mollic epipedon; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Humic Dystrudepts**

KGEK. Other Dystrudepts that have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Dystrudepts**

KGEL. Other Dystrudepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Dystrudepts**

KGEM. Other Dystrudepts that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Dystrudepts**

KGEN. Other Dystrudepts that have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Dystrudepts**

KGEO. Other Dystrudepts that have *both*:

1. An umbric or mollic epipedon; *and*

2. A sandy particle-size class throughout the particle-size control section.

**Humic Psammentic Dystrudepts**

KGEP. Other Dystrudepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. An umbric or mollic epipedon; *and*

2. *Either*:

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Humic Dystrudepts**

KGEQ. Other Dystrudepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Dystrudepts**

KGER. Other Dystrudepts that have a horizon 5 cm or more thick that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Dystrudepts**

KGES. Other Dystrudepts that have in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower:

1. A CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+) per kg clay; *or*

2. Both a ratio of measured clay in the fine-earth fraction to percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension of 0.6 or more and the following: the CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) divided by the product of three times [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon (but no more than 1.00)] is less than 24.

**Oxic Dystrudepts**

KGET. Other Dystrudepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick.

**Humic Pachic Dystrudepts**

KGEU. Other Dystrudepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Dystrudepts**

KGEV. Other Dystrudepts that have *both*:

1. In each pedon a cambic horizon that includes 10 to 50 percent (by volume) illuvial parts that otherwise meet the requirements for an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 35 percent or more either at a depth of 125 cm from the top of the cambic horizon or directly above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Ruptic-Alfic Dystrudepts**

KGEW. Other Dystrudepts that have in each pedon a cambic horizon that includes 10 to 50 percent (by volume) illuvial parts that otherwise meet the requirements for an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon.

**Ruptic-Ultic Dystrudepts**

KGEX. Other Dystrudepts.

**Typic Dystrudepts**

## Eutrudepts

### Key to Subgroups

KGDA. Eutrudepts that have *both*:

1. An umbric or mollic epipedon; *and*

2. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Lithic Eutrudepts**

KGDB. Other Eutrudepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Eutrudepts**

KGDC. Other Eutrudepts that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquertic Eutrudepts**

KGDD. Other Eutrudepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Eutrudepts**

KGDE. Other Eutrudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Eutrudepts**

KGDF. Other Eutrudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser

than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Eutrudepts**

KGDG. Other Eutrudepts that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Eutrudepts**

KGDH. Other Eutrudepts that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fragiaquic Eutrudepts**

KGDI. Other Eutrudepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. In one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. *Either*:

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Eutrudepts**

KGDJ. Other Eutrudepts that:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Do not have free carbonates throughout any horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Aquic Dystric Eutrudepts**

KGDK. Other Eutrudepts that have, in one or more horizons within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Eutrudepts**

KGDL. Other Eutrudepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Eutrudepts**

KGDM. Other Eutrudepts that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Eutrudepts**

KGDN. Other Eutrudepts that have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Eutrudepts**

KGDO. Other Eutrudepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. Do not have free carbonates throughout any horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and either*

2. Have, at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

3. Have an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Dystric Fluventic Eutrudepts**

KGDP. Other Eutrudepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or

more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene Age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Eutrudepts**

KGDQ. Other Eutrudepts that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class in all horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Eutrudepts**

KGDR. Other Eutrudepts that do not have free carbonates throughout any horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Dystric Eutrudepts**

KGDS. Other Eutrudepts that have 40 percent or more free carbonates, including coarse fragments as much as 75 mm in diameter, in all horizons between the top of the cambic horizon and either a depth of 100 cm from the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Rendollic Eutrudepts**

KGDT. Other Eutrudepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Eutrudepts**

KGDU. Other Eutrudepts that have a cambic horizon that includes 10 to 50 percent (by volume) illuvial parts that otherwise meet the requirements for an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon.

**Ruptic-Alfic Eutrudepts**

KGDV. Other Eutrudepts.

**Typic Eutrudepts**

## Fragiudepts

### Key to Subgroups

KGCA. Fragiudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Fragiudepts**

KGCB. Other Fragiudepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Fragiudepts**

KGCC. Other Fragiudepts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Fragiudepts**

KGCD. Other Fragiudepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Fragiudepts**

KGCE. Other Fragiudepts.

**Typic Fragiudepts**

## Sulfudepts

### Key to Subgroups

KGAA. All Sulfudepts (provisionally).

**Typic Sulfudepts**

# Ustepts

## Key to Great Groups

KEA. Ustepts that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durustepts**, p. 179

KEB. Other Ustepts that *both*:

1. Have a calcic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface or a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Are either calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser in all parts above the calcic or petrocalcic horizon, after the soil between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm has been mixed.

**Calciustepts**, p. 178

KEC. Other Ustepts that have *both* of the following:

1. No free carbonates within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 60 percent in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Dystrustepts**, p. 179

KED. Other Ustepts.

**Haplustepts**, p. 180

## Calciustepts

### Key to Subgroups

KEBA. Calciustepts that have a petrocalcic horizon and a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Petrocalcic Calciustepts**

KEBB. Other Calciustepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calciustepts**

KEBC. Other Calciustepts that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

   (1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

   (2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Torrertic Calciustepts**

KEBD. Other Calciustepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Calciustepts**

KEBE. Other Calciustepts that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calciustepts**

KEBF. Other Calciustepts that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsic Calciustepts**

KEBG. Other Calciustepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Calciustepts**

KEBH. Other Calciustepts that have, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil

temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Calciustepts**

KEBI. Other Calciustepts that have, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for four-tenths or less of the consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Calciustepts**

KEBJ. Other Calciustepts.

**Typic Calciustepts**

## Durustepts

### Key to Subgroups

KEAA. All Durustepts (provisionally).

**Typic Durustepts**

## Dystrustepts

### Key to Subgroups

KECA. Dystrustepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Dystrustepts**

KECB. Other Dystrustepts that have *both:*

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in 6 normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrertic Dystrustepts**

KECC. Other Dystrustepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Dystrustepts**

KECD. Other Dystrustepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk

density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Dystrustepts**

KECE. Other Dystrustepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Dystrustepts**

KECF. Other Dystrustepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Dystrustepts**

KECG. Other Dystrustepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Dystrustepts**

KECH. Other Dystrustepts that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following;:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; or

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

   a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

   b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Dystrustepts**

KECI. Other Dystrustepts that have in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower:

1. A CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+) per kg clay; *or*

2. Both a ratio of measured clay in the fine-earth fraction to percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension of 0.6 or more and the following: the CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) divided by the product of three times [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon (but no more than 1.00)] is less than 24.

**Oxic Dystrustepts**

KECJ. Other Dystrustepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Dystrustepts**

KECK. Other Dystrustepts.

**Typic Dystrustepts**

## Haplustepts

### Key to Subgroups

KEDA. Haplustepts that have:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

   a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days

per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Lithic Haplustepts**

KEDB. Other Haplustepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplustepts**

KEDC. Other Haplustepts that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 105 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Udertic Haplustepts**

KEDD. Other Haplustepts that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrertic Haplustepts**

KEDE. Other Haplustepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplustepts**

KEDF. Other Haplustepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haplustepts**

KEDG. Other Haplustepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplustepts**

KEDH. Other Haplustepts that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Haplustepts**

KEDI. Other Haplustepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplustepts**

KEDJ. Other Haplustepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplustepts**

KEDK. Other Haplustepts that have in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower:

1. A CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+) per kg clay; *or*

2. Both a ratio of measured clay in the fine-earth fraction to percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension of 0.6 or more and the following: the CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) divided by the product of three times [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon (but no more than 1.00)] is less than 24.

**Oxic Haplustepts**

KEDL. Other Haplustepts that have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Haplustepts**

KEDM. Other Haplustepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

      (1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

      (2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. *Either*:

   a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

   b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrifluventic Haplustepts**

KEDN. Other Haplustepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 105 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. *Either*:

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Udifluventic Haplustepts**

KEDO. Other Haplustepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Haplustepts**

KEDP. Other Haplustepts that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsic Haplustepts**

KEDQ. Other Haplustepts that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Haplocalcidic Haplustepts**

KEDR. Other Haplustepts that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 105 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Calcic Udic Haplustepts**

KEDS. Other Haplustepts that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haplustepts**

KEDT. Other Haplustepts that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

   a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

   b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Haplustepts**

KEDU. Other Haplustepts that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of less than 60 percent in some horizon between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Dystric Haplustepts**

KEDV. Other Haplustepts that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 105 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Haplustepts**

KEDW. Other Haplustepts.

**Typic Haplustepts**

# Xerepts

## Key to Great Groups

KFA. Xerepts that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durixerepts**, p. 185

KFB. Other Xerepts that *both*:

1. Have a calcic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface or a petrocalcic horizon with its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Are calcareous in all parts above the calcic or petrocalcic horizon, after the soil between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 18 cm has been mixed.

**Calcixerepts**, p. 184

KFC. Other Xerepts that have a fragipan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragixerepts**, p. 187

KFD. Other Xerepts that have *both* of the following:

1. No free carbonates within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of less than 60 percent in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 75 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Dystroxerepts**, p. 186

KFE. Other Xerepts.

**Haploxerepts**, p. 188

## Calcixerepts

### Key to Subgroups

KFBA. Calcixerepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calcixerepts**

KFBB. Other Calcixerepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Calcixerepts**

KFBC. Other Calcixerepts that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calcixerepts**

KFBD. Other Calcixerepts that have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio [SAR] of 13 or more) in one or more subhorizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sodic Calcixerepts**

KFBE. Other Calcixerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Calcixerepts**

KFBF. Other Calcixerepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Calcixerepts**

KFBG. Other Calcixerepts.

**Typic Calcixerepts**

## Durixerepts

### Key to Subgroups

KFAA. Durixerepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons above the duripan and within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more, above the duripan and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

   b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Durixerepts**

KFAB. Other Durixerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more, above the duripan and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Durixerepts**

KFAC. Other Durixerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more, above the duripan and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Durixerepts**

KFAD. Other Durixerepts that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan and within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic

conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Durixerepts**

KFAE. Other Durixerepts that have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons.

**Entic Durixerepts**

KFAF. Other Durixerepts.

**Typic Durixerepts**

## Dystroxerepts

### Key to Subgroups

KFDA. Dystroxerepts that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. An umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Lithic Dystroxerepts**

KFDB. Other Dystroxerepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Dystroxerepts**

KFDC. Other Dystroxerepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Dystroxerepts**

KFDD. Other Dystroxerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Dystroxerepts**

KFDE. Other Dystroxerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelik fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Dystroxerepts**

KFDF. Other Dystroxerepts that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fragiaquic Dystroxerepts**

KFDG. Other Dystroxerepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. *Either*:

a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a

densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Dystroxerepts**

KFDH. Other Dystroxerepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Dystroxerepts**

KFDI. Other Dystroxerepts that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Dystroxerepts**

KFDJ. Other Dystroxerepts that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*
2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Dystroxerepts**

KFDK. Other Dystroxerepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

1. An umbric or mollic epipedon; *and*
2. *Either*:
   a. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densc, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*
   b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Humic Dystroxerepts**

KFDL. Other Dystroxerepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*
2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Dystroxerepts**

KFDM. Other Dystroxerepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Dystroxerepts**

KFDN. Other Dystroxerepts.

**Typic Dystroxerepts**

## Fragixerepts

**Key to Subgroups**

KFCA. Fragixerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Fragixerepts**

KFCB. Other Fragixerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*
   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*
   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Fragixerepts**

KFCC. Other Fragixerepts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Fragixerepts**

KFCD. Other Fragixerepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Fragixerepts**

KFCE. Other Fragixerepts.

**Typic Fragixerepts**

## Haploxerepts

### Key to Subgroups

KFEA. Haploxerepts that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. An umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Lithic Haploxerepts**

KFEB. Other Haploxerepts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haploxerepts**

KFEC. Other Haploxerepts that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haploxerepts**

KFED. Other Haploxerepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

   b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Haploxerepts**

KFEE. Other Haploxerepts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

2. Saturation with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Andic Oxyaquic Haploxerepts**

KFEF. Other Haploxerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haploxerepts**

KFEG. Other Haploxerepts that have *both*:

1. Saturation with water within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both:*

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Oxyaquic Vitrandic Haploxerepts**

KFEH. Other Haploxerepts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haploxerepts**

KFEI. Other Haploxerepts that have a gypsic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsic Haploxerepts**

KFEJ. Other Haploxerepts that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haploxerepts**

KFEK. Other Haploxerepts that have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Haploxerepts**

KFEL. Other Haploxerepts that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Haploxerepts**

KFEM. Other Haploxerepts that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. At a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface, an organic-carbon content (Holocene age) of 0.2 percent or more and no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content (Holocene age) between a depth of 25 cm and either a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Fluventic Haploxerepts**

KFEN. Other Haploxerepts that have a calcic horizon or identifiable secondary carbonates within *one* of the following particle-size class and depth combinations:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class and within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine particle-size class and within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

3. Any other particle-size class and within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haploxerepts**

KFEO. Other Haploxerepts that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Humic Haploxerepts**

KFEP. Other Haploxerepts.

**Typic Haploxerepts**

# CHAPTER 12

# *Mollisols*

## Key to Suborders

IA. Mollisols that have:

1. An argillic or natric horizon; *and*

2. An albic horizon that has chroma of 2 or less and is 2.5 cm or more thick, has its lower boundary 18 cm or more below the mineral soil surface, and either lies directly below the mollic epipedon or separates horizons that together meet all of the requirements for a mollic epipedon; *and*

3. In one or more subhorizons of the albic horizon and/or of the argillic or natric horizon and within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations in the form of masses or concretions, or both, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Albolls**, p. 192

IB. Other Mollisols that have, in a layer above a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact or in a layer at a depth between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is shallower, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or more* of the following:

1. A histic epipedon overlying the mollic epipedon; *or*

2. An exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP) of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio [SAR] of 13 or more) in the upper part of the mollic epipedon and a decrease in ESP (or SAR) values with increasing depth below 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

3. A calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

4. A mollic epipedon, with chroma of 1 or less, that extends to a lithic contact within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

5. *One* of the following colors:

a. Chroma of 1 or less in the lower part of the mollic epipedon;[1] *and either*

(1) Distinct or prominent redox concentrations in the lower part of the mollic epipedon; *or*

(2) Either directly below the mollic epipedon or within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface if a calcic horizon intervenes, a color value, moist, of 4 or more and *one* of the following:

(a) 50 percent or more chroma of 1 on faces of peds or in the matrix, hue of 10YR or redder, and redox concentrations; *or*

(b) 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less on faces of peds or in the matrix, hue of 2.5Y, and redox concentrations; *or*

(c) 50 percent or more chroma of 1 on faces of peds or in the matrix and hue of 2.5Y or yellower; *or*

(d) 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or less on faces of peds or in the matrix, hue of 5Y, and redox concentrations; *or*

(e) 50 percent or more chroma of 0 on faces of peds or in the matrix; *or*

(f) Hue of 5GY, 5G, 5BG, or 5B; *or*

(g) Any color if it results from uncoated sand grains; *or*

b. Chroma of 2 in the lower part of the mollic epipedon; *and either*

(1) Distinct or prominent redox concentrations in the lower part of the mollic epipedon; *or*

(2) Directly below the mollic epipedon, *one* of the following matrix colors:

(a) A color value, moist, of 4, chroma of 2, and some redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 1 or less; *or*

(b) A color value, moist, of 5 or more, chroma of 2 or less, and redox concentrations; *or*

(c) A color value, moist, of 4 and chroma of 1 or less; *or*

6. At a depth between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquolls**, p. 193

[1] If the mollic epipedon extends to a lithic contact within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, the requirement for redoximorphic features is waived1

IC. Other Mollisols that:

1. Have a mollic epipedon less than 50 cm thick; *and*

2. Do not have an argillic or calcic horizon; *and*

3. Have, either within or directly below the mollic epipedon, mineral soil materials less than 7.5 cm in diameter that have a $CaCO_3$ equivalent of 40 percent or more; *and*

4. Have either or both a udic moisture regime or a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Rendolls**, p. 201

ID. Other Mollisols that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; *or*

2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelolls**, p. 200

IE. Other Mollisols that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryolls**, p. 197

IF. Other Mollisols that have either a xeric moisture regime or an aridic moisture regime that borders on xeric.

**Xerolls**, p. 224

IG. Other Mollisols that have either an ustic moisture regime or an aridic moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Ustolls**, p. 209

IH. Other Mollisols.

**Udolls**, p. 201

# Albolls

## Key to Great Groups

IAA. Albolls that have a natric horizon.

**Natralbolls**, p. 193

IAB. Other Albolls.

**Argialbolls**, p. 192

## Argialbolls

### Key to Subgroups

IABA. Argialbolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. If not irrigated, a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days during the 120 days following the summer solstice.

**Xerertic Argialbolls**

IABB. Other Argialbolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argialbolls**

IABC. Other Argialbolls that:

1. Do not have an abrupt textural change from the albic to the argillic horizon; *and*

2. If not irrigated, have a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days during the 120 days following the summer solstice.

**Argiaquic Xeric Argialbolls**

IABD. Other Argialbolls that do not have an abrupt textural change from the albic to the argillic horizon.

**Argiaquic Argialbolls**

IABE. Other Argialbolls that, if not irrigated, have a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for 45 or more consecutive days during the 120 days following the summer solstice.

**Xeric Argialbolls**

IABF. Other Argialbolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Argialbolls**

IABG. Other Argialbolls.

**Typic Argialbolls**

## Natralbolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IAAA. Natralbolls that have visible crystals of gypsum and/or more soluble salts within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Natralbolls**

IAAB. Other Natralbolls.

**Typic Natralbolls**

# Aquolls

## Key to Great Groups

IBA. Aquolls that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryaquolls**, p. 194

IBB. Other Aquolls that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duraquolls**, p. 194

IBC. Other Aquolls that have a natric horizon.

**Natraquolls**, p. 196

IBD. Other Aquolls that have a calcic or gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface but do not have an argillic horizon unless it is a buried horizon.

**Calciaquolls**, p. 193

IBE. Other Aquolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argiaquolls**, p. 193

IBF. Other Aquolls that have episaturation.

**Epiaquolls**, p. 195

IBG. Other Aquolls.

**Endoaquolls**, p. 194

## Argiaquolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IBEA. Argiaquolls that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Argiaquolls**

IBEB. Other Argiaquolls that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Argiaquolls**

IBEC. Other Argiaquolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argiaquolls**

IBED. Other Argiaquolls that have an argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

**Abruptic Argiaquolls**

IBEE. Other Argiaquolls.

**Typic Argiaquolls**

## Calciaquolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IBDA. Calciaquolls that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calciaquolls**

IBDB. Other Calciaquolls that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more on faces of peds or in the matrix of one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface or that have the following colors directly below the mollic epipedon:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

3. Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 2 or more if there are no distinct or prominent redox concentrations.

**Aeric Calciaquolls**

IBDC. Other Calciaquolls.

**Typic Calciaquolls**

## Cryaquolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IBAA. Cryaquolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Cryaquolls**

IBAB. Other Cryaquolls that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Cryaquolls**

IBAC. Other Cryaquolls that have a buried layer of organic soil materials, 20 cm or more thick, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Thapto-Histic Cryaquolls**

IBAD. Other Cryaquolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Cryaquolls**

IBAE. Other Cryaquolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argic Cryaquolls**

IBAF. Other Cryaquolls that have a calcic horizon either within or directly below the mollic epipedon.

**Calcic Cryaquolls**

IBAG. Other Cryaquolls that have a mollic epipedon 50 cm or more thick.

**Cumulic Cryaquolls**

IBAH. Other Cryaquolls.

**Typic Cryaquolls**

## Duraquolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IBBA. Duraquolls that have a natric horizon.

**Natric Duraquolls**

IBBB. Other Duraquolls that have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

**Vertic Duraquolls**

IBBC. Other Duraquolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argic Duraquolls**

IBBD. Other Duraquolls.

**Typic Duraquolls**

## Endoaquolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IBGA. Endoaquolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Endoaquolls**

IBGB. Other Endoaquolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the

mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a ddensic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick.

**Cumulic Vertic Endoaquolls**

IBGC. Other Endoaquolls that have *both* of the following:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Vertic Endoaquolls**

IBGD. Other Endoaquolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Endoaquolls**

IBGE. Other Endoaquolls that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Endoaquolls**

IBGF. Other Endoaquolls that have a buried layer of organic soil materials, 20 cm or more thick, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Thapto-Histic Endoaquolls**

IBGG. Other Endoaquolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Endoaquolls**

IBGH. Other Endoaquolls that have a horizon, 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Endoaquolls**

IBGI. Other Endoaquolls that have a mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick.

**Cumulic Endoaquolls**

IBGJ. Other Endoaquolls that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Endoaquolls**

IBGK. Other Endoaquolls.

**Typic Endoaquolls**

## Epiaquolls

### Key to Subgroups

IBFA. Epiaquolls that have *both* of the following:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick.

**Cumulic Vertic Epiaquolls**

IBFB. Other Epiaquolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Vertic Epiaquolls**

IBFC. Other Epiaquolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Epiaquolls**

IBFD. Other Epiaquolls that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Epiaquolls**

IBFE. Other Epiaquolls that have a buried layer of organic soil materials, 20 cm or more thick, that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Thapto-Histic Epiaquolls**

IBFF. Other Epiaquolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Epiaquolls**

IBFG. Other Epiaquolls that have a horizon, 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Epiaquolls**

IBFH. Other Epiaquolls that have a mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick.

**Cumulic Epiaquolls**

IBFI. Other Epiaquolls that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Epiaquolls**

IBFJ. Other Epiaquolls.

**Typic Epiaquolls**

## Natraquolls

### Key to Subgroups

IBCA. Natraquolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that

has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natraquolls**

IBCB. Other Natraqolls that have a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon.

**Glossic Natraquolls**

IBCC. Other Natraquolls.

**Typic Natraquolls**

# Cryolls

## Key to Great Groups

IEA. Cryolls that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duricryolls**, p. 198

IEB. Other Cryolls that have a natric horizon.

**Natricryolls**, p. 200

IEC. Other Cryolls that have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon that has its upper boundary 60 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A texture finer than loamy fine sand in all horizons above the argillic horizon.

**Palecryolls**, p. 200

IED. Other Cryolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argicryolls**, p. 197

IEE. Other Cryolls that:

1. Have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In all parts above the calcic or petrocalcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, either are calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

**Calcicryolls**, p. 198

IEF. Other Cryolls.

**Haplocryolls**, p. 199

## Argicryolls

### Key to Subgroups

IEDA. Argicryolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Argicryolls**

IEDB. Other Argicryolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argicryolls**

IEDC. Other Argicryolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Argicryolls**

IEDD. Other Argicryolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Argicryolls**

IEDE. Other Argicryolls that have an argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

**Abruptic Argicryolls**

IEDF. Other Argicryolls that have, in one or more horizons

within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Argicryolls**

IEDG. Other Argicryolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Argicryolls**

IEDH. Other Argicryolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*
2. A calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Pachic Argicryolls**

IEDI. Other Argicryolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Argicryolls**

IEDJ. Other Argicryolls that have a calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Argicryolls**

IEDK. Other Argicryolls that have *either*:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon or a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*
2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletans of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

**Alfic Argicryolls**

IEDL. Other Argicryolls that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Argicryolls**

IEDM. Other Argicryolls that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Argicryolls**

IEDN. Other Argicryolls.

**Typic Argicryolls**

## Calcicryolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IEEA. Calcicryolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calcicryolls**

IEEB. Other Calcicryolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumiceous, and pumicelike fragments; *or*
2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*
   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*
   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Calcicryolls**

IEEC. Other Calcicryolls that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calcicryolls**

IEED. Other Calcicryolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Calcicryolls**

IEEE. Other Calcicryolls that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Calcicryolls**

IEEF. Other Calcicryolls that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Calcicryolls**

IEEG. Other Calcicryolls.

**Typic Calcicryolls**

## Duricryolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IEAA. Duricryolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argic Duricryolls**

IEAB. Other Duricryolls that have a calcic horizon above the duripan.

**Calcic Duricryolls**

IEAC. Other Duricryolls.

**Typic Duricryolls**

## Haplocryolls

### Key to Subgroups

IEFA. Haplocryolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplocryolls**

IEFB. Other Haplocryolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplocryolls**

IEFC. Other Haplocryolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haplocryolls**

IEFD. Other Haplocryolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplocryolls**

IEFE. Other Haplocryolls that have:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

4. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Cumulic Haplocryolls**

IEFF. Other Haplocryolls that have:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

**Cumulic Haplocryolls**

IEFG. Other Haplocryolls that have *both*:

1. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

   a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fluvaquentic Haplocryolls**



IEFH. Other Haplocryolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplocryolls**

IEFI. Other Haplocryolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplocryolls**

IEFJ. Other Haplocryolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Pachic Haplocryolls**

IEFK. Other Haplocryolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Haplocryolls**

IEFL. Other Haplocryolls that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluventic Haplocryolls**

IEFM. Other Haplocryolls that have a calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haplocryolls**

IEFN. Other Haplocryolls that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Haplocryolls**

IEFO. Other Haplocryolls that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Haplocryolls**

IEFP. Other Haplocryolls.

**Typic Haplocryolls**

## Natricryolls

### Key to Subgroups

IEBA. All Natricryolls.

**Typic Natricryolls**

## Palecryolls

### Key to Subgroups

IECA. Palecryolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Palecryolls**

IECB. Other Palecryolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Palecryolls**

IECC. Other Palecryolls that have an argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

**Abruptic Palecryolls**

IECD. Other Palecryolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Palecryolls**

IECE. Other Palecryolls that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Palecryolls**

IECF. Other Palecryolls that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Palecryolls**

IECG. Other Palecryolls.

**Typic Palecryolls**

# Gelolls

## Key to Great Groups

IDA. All Gelolls.

**Haplogelolls**, p. 200

## Haplogelolls

### Key to Subgroups

IDAA. Haplogelolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplogelolls**

IDAB. Other Haplogelolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haplogelolls**

IDAC. Other Haplogelolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, distinct or prominent redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplogelolls**

IDAD. Other Haplogelolls that have:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 40 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a

depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Cumulic Haplogelolls**

IDAE. Other Haplogelolls.

**Typic Haplogelolls**

# Rendolls

## Key to Great Groups

ICA. Rendolls that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryrendolls**, p. 201

ICB. Other Rendolls.

**Haprendolls**, p. 201

## Cryrendolls

### Key to Subgroups

ICAA. Cryrendolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Cryrendolls**

ICAB. Other Cryrendolls.

**Typic Cryrendolls**

## Haprendolls

### Key to Subgroups

ICBA. Haprendolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haprendolls**

ICBB. Other Haprendolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haprendolls**

ICBC. Other Haprendolls that have a cambic horizon.

**Inceptic Haprendolls**

ICBD. Other Haprendolls that have a color value, dry, of 6 or more either in the upper 18 cm of the mollic epipedon, after mixing, or in an Ap horizon 18 cm or more thick.

**Entic Haprendolls**

ICBE. Other Haprendolls.

**Typic Haprendolls**

# Udolls

## Key to Great Groups

IHA. Udolls that have a natric horizon.

**Natrudolls**, p. 207

IHB. Other Udolls that:

1. Have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Do not have an argillic horizon above the calcic or petrocalcic horizon; *and*

3. In all parts above the calcic or petrocalcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, either are calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

**Calciudolls**, p. 204

IHC. Other Udolls that have *one or more* of the following:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. *All* of the following:

   a. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

   b. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, a clay decrease, with increasing depth, of less than 20 percent (relative) from the maximum clay content (noncarbonate clay); *and*

   c. An argillic horizon with *one or more* of the following:

      (1) In 50 percent or more of the matrix of one or more subhorizons in its lower half, hue of 7.5YR or redder and chroma of 5 or more; *or*

      (2) In 50 percent or more of the matrix of horizons that total more than one-half the total thickness, hue of 2.5YR or redder, a value, moist, of 3 or less, and a value, dry, of 4 or less; *or*

      (3) Many redox concentrations with hue of 5YR or redder or chroma of 6 or more, or both, in one or more subhorizons; *or*

3. A frigid temperature regime; *and both*

a. An argillic horizon that has its upper boundary 60 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*

b. A texture finer than loamy fine sand in all horizons above the argillic horizon.

**Paleudolls**, p. 208

IHD. Other Udolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argiudolls**, p. 202

IHE. Other Udolls that have a mollic epipedon that:

1. Either below an Ap horizon or below a depth of 18 cm from the mineral soil surface, contains 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, wormcasts, or filled animal burrows; *and*

2. Either rests on a lithic contact or has a transition zone to the underlying horizon in which 25 percent or more of the soil volume consists of discrete wormholes, wormcasts, or animal burrows filled with material from the mollic epipedon and from the underlying horizon.

**Vermudolls**, p. 208

IHF. Other Udolls.

**Hapludolls**, p. 205

## Argiudolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IHDA. Argiudolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Argiudolls**

IHDB. Other Argiudolls that have *both*:

1. Aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

(1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(2) Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(3) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquertic Argiudolls**

IHDC. Other Argiudolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. In normal years saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Vertic Argiudolls**

IHDD. Other Argiudolls that have:

1. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

b. 50 cm or more thick; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Vertic Argiudolls**

IHDE. Other Argiudolls that have:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon or a horizon

that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletans of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon; *and*

3. *Either*:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Alfic Vertic Argiudolls**

IHDF. Other Argiudolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argiudolls**

IHDG. Other Argiudolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Argiudolls**

IHDH. Other Argiudolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Argiudolls**

IHDI. Other Agriudolls that have *both:*

1. Aquic conditions for some time normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

(1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(2) Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(3) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

b. 50 cm or more thick.

**Aquic Pachic Agriudolls**

IHDJ. Other Argiudolls that have a mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

1. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*
2. 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Argiudolls**

IHDK. Other Argiudolls that have aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

1. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

2. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

b. Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

c. Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less.

**Aquic Argiudolls**

IHDL. Other Argiudolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Argiudolls**

IHDM. Other Argiudolls that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

   a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

   b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Argiudolls**

IHDN. Other Argiudolls that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Argiudolls**

IHDO. Other Argiudolls that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Argiudolls**

IHDP. Other Argiudolls that have an argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase of 20 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) within its upper 7.5 cm.

**Abruptic Argiudolls**

IHDQ. Other Argiudolls that have:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon or a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletans of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

**Alfic Argiudolls**

IHDR. Other Argiudolls that have an apparent CEC of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) in 50 percent or more either of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick or of its upper 100 cm.

**Oxic Argiudolls**

IHDS. Other Argiudolls that have a calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Argiudolls**

IHDT. Other Argiudolls.

**Typic Argiudolls**

## Calciudolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IHBA. Calciudolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calciudolls**

IHBB. Other Calciudolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Calciudolls**

IHBC. Other Calciudolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Calciudolls**

IHBD. Other Calciudolls that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*:

1. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a lithic or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluventic Calciudolls**

IHBE. Other Calciudolls.

**Typic Calciudolls**

## Hapludolls

### Key to Subgroups

IHFA. Hapludolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Hapludolls**

IHFB. Other Hapludolls that have *both*:

1. Aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

   a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

   b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

      (1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

      (2) Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

      (3) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquertic Hapludolls**

IHFC. Other Hapludolls that have *both:*

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

   a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

   b. 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Vertic Hapludolls**

IHFD. Other Hapludolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Hapludolls**

IHFE. Other Hapludolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and aluminum plus $^1/_2$ iron percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Hapludolls**

IHFF. Other Hapludolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Hapludolls**

IHFG. Other Hapludolls that have:

1. *Either*:

   a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class, and there is no densic or paralithic contact and no sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class at a depth between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick, of which 50

percent or more of the thickness has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of 25 percent or less; *and*

4. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Cumulic Hapludolls**

IHFH. Other Hapludolls that have:

1. *Either*:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class, and there is no densic or paralithic contact and no sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class at a depth between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick, of which 50 percent or more of the thickness has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. *Either* 0.3 percent or more organic carbon at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface *or* an irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of 25 percent or less.

**Cumulic Hapludolls**

IHFI. Other Hapludolls that have *both*:

1. Aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

(1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(2) Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(3) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Hapludolls**

IHFJ. Other Hapludolls that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluventic Hapludolls**

IHFK. Other Hapludolls that have *both:*

1. Aquic conditions for some time normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

(1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(2) Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

(3) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

b. 50 cm or more thick.

**Aquic Pachic Hapludolls**

IHFL. Other Hapludolls that have a mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

1. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

2. 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Hapludolls**

IHFM. Other Hapludolls that have aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

1. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

2. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

b. Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

c. Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less.

**Aquic Hapludolls**

IHFN. Other Hapludolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Hapludolls**

IHFO. Other Hapludolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon 60 cm or more thick that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and contains 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, wormcasts, or filled animal burrows either below an Ap horizon or below a depth of 18 cm from the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Either do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet all of the requirements for a cambic horizon, except for the color requirements, or have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

**Vermic Hapludolls**

IHFP. Other Hapludolls that have a calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Hapludolls**

IHFQ. Other Hapludolls that *either*:

1. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in any part of the mollic epipedon below 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, meet all of the requirements for a cambic horizon, except for the color requirements; *or*

2. Have free carbonates throughout the cambic horizon or in all parts of the mollic epipedon below a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Hapludolls**

IHFR. Other Hapludolls.

**Typic Hapludolls**

## Natrudolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IHAA. Natrudolls that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Natrudolls**

IHAB. Other Natrudolls that have *both*:

1. Visible crystals of gypsum and/or more soluble salts within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Leptic Vertic Natrudolls**

IHAC. Other Natrudolls that have:

1. A glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Glossic Vertic Natrudolls**

IHAD. Other Natrudolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm

or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrudolls**

IHAE. Other Natrudolls that have visible crystals of gypsum and/or more soluble salts within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Natrudolls**

IHAF. Other Natrudolls that have a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into the natric horizon.

**Glossic Natrudolls**

IHAG. Other Natrudolls that have a calcic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Natrudolls**

IHAH. Other Natrudolls.

**Typic Natrudolls**

## Paleudolls

### Key to Subgroups

IHCA. Paleudolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Paleudolls**

IHCB. Other Paleudolls that have a petrocalcic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Paleudolls**

IHCC. Other Paleudolls that have *both:*

1. Aquic conditions for some time normal years (or artificial drainage) *either*:

   a. Within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, in horizons that also have redoximorphic features; *or*

   b. Within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, in one or more horizons with a total thickness of 15 cm or more that have *one or more* of the following:

      (1) A color value, moist, of 4 or more and redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

      (2) Hue of 10YR or redder and chroma of 2 or less; *or*

      (3) Hue of 2.5Y or yellower and chroma of 3 or less; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

   a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

   b. 50 cm or more thick.

**Aquic Pachic Paleudolls**

IHCD. Other Paleudolls that have a mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Paleudolls**

IHCE. Other Paleudolls that have, in one or more subhorizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Paleudolls**

IHCF. Other Paleudolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Paleudolls**

IHCG. Other Paleudolls that:

1. Have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In all parts above the calcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, either are calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

**Calcic Paleudolls**

IHCH. Other Paleudolls.

**Typic Paleudolls**

## Vermudolls

### Key to Subgroups

IHEA. Vermudolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Vermudolls**

IHEB. Other Vermudolls that have a mollic epipedon less than 75 cm thick.

**Haplic Vermudolls**

IHEC. Other Vermudolls.

**Typic Vermudolls**

# Ustolls

## Key to Great Groups

IGA. Ustolls that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durustolls**, p. 214

IGB. Other Ustolls that have a natric horizon.

**Natrustolls**, p. 220

IGC. Other Ustolls that:

1. Have either a calcic or gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface or a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Do not have an argillic horizon above the calcic, gypsic, or petrocalcic horizon; *and*

3. In all parts above the calcic, gypsic, or petrocalcic horizon, after the materials between the soil surface and a depth of 18 cm have been mixed, either are calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

**Calciustolls**, p. 213

IGD. Other Ustolls that have *either*:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An argillic horizon that has *one or both* of the following:

a. With increasing depth, no clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content (noncarbonate clay) within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface (and there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth); *and either*

(1) Hue of 7.5YR or redder and chroma of 5 or more in the matrix; *or*

(2) Common redox concentrations with hue of 7.5YR or redder or chroma of 6 or more, or both; *or*

b. 35 percent or more clay in its upper part and a clay increase either of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction (and there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface).

**Paleustolls**, p. 222

IGE. Other Ustolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argiustolls**, p. 209

IGF. Other Ustolls that have a mollic epipedon that:

1. Either below an Ap horizon or below a depth of 18 cm from the mineral soil surface, contains 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, wormcasts, or filled animal burrows; *and*

2. Either rests on a lithic contact or has a transition zone to the underlying horizon in which 25 percent or more of the soil volume consists of discrete wormholes, wormcasts, or animal burrows filled with material from the mollic epipedon and from the underlying horizon.

**Vermustolls**, p. 224

IGG. Other Ustolls.

**Haplustolls**, p. 215

## Argiustolls

### Key to Subgroups

IGEA. Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Lithic Argiustolls**

IGEB. Other Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Above the argillic horizon, either an albic horizon or a

horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and chroma too high for an albic horizon.

**Alfic Lithic Argiustolls**

IGEC. Other Argiustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Argiustolls**

IGED. Other Argiustolls that have *both:*

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*:

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquertic Argiustolls**

IGEE. Other Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Torrertic Argiustolls**

IGEF. Other Argiustolls that have *all* of the following:

1. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

b. 50 cm or more thick; *and.*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

3. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either:*

a. A mesic or thermic temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Pachic Udertic Argiustolls**

IGEG. Other Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or

wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udertic Argiustolls**

IGEH. Other Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

b. 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Vertic Argiustolls**

IGEI. Other Argiustolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argiustolls**

IGEJ. Other Argiustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Argiustolls**

IGEK. Other Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium

oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitritorrandic Argiustolls**

IGEL. Other Argiustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Argiustolls**

IGEM. Other Argiustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Argiustolls**

IGEN. Other Argiustolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Argiustolls**

IGEO. Other Argiustolls that have a mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

1. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

2. 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Argiustolls**

IGEP. Other Argiustolls that have *either*:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon or a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletans of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

**Alfic Argiustolls**

IGEQ. Other Argiustolls that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

      (1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

      (2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Calcidic Argiustolls**

IGER. Other Argiustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

   a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Argiustolls**

IGES. Other Argiustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Argiustolls**

IGET. Other Argiustolls that have a brittle horizon that is within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, is 15 cm or more thick, and has either some opal coatings or 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes.

**Duric Argiustolls**

IGEU. Other Argiustolls.

**Typic Argiustolls**

## Calciustolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IGCA. Calciustolls that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salidic Calciustolls**

IGCB. Other Calciustolls that have a petrocalcic horizon and a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Petrocalcic Calciustolls**

IGCC. Other Calciustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calciustolls**

IGCD. Other Calciustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Torrertic Calciustolls**

IGCE. Other Calciustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in

some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udertic Calciustolls**

IGCF. Other Calciustolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Calciustolls**

IGCG. Other Calciustolls that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calciustolls**

IGCH. Other Calciustolls that have a gypsic horizon with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsic Calciustolls**

IGCI. Other Calciustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Calciustolls**

IGCJ. Other Calciustolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Calciustolls**

IGCK. Other Calciustolls that have a mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

1. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

2. 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Calciustolls**

IGCL. Other Calciustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

   a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

   b. Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Calciustolls**

IGCM. Other Calciustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for four-tenths or less of the consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Calciustolls**

IGCN. Other Calciustolls.

**Typic Calciustolls**

## Durustolls

### Key to Subgroups

IGAA. Durustolls that have a natric horizon above the duripan.

**Natric Durustolls**

IGAB. Other Durustolls that:

1. Do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan; *and*

2. Have an aridic moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Haploduridic Durustolls**

IGAC. Other Durustolls that have an aridic moisture regime that borders on ustic.

**Argiduridic Durustolls**

IGAD. Other Durustolls that do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

**Entic Durustolls**

IGAE. Other Durustolls that have a duripan that is strongly cemented or less cemented in all subhorizons.

**Haplic Durustolls**

IGAF. Other Durustolls.

**Typic Durustolls**

## Haplustolls

### Key to Subgroups

IGGA. Haplustolls that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salidic Haplustolls**

IGGB. Other Haplustolls that have, in part of each pedon, a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Ruptic-Lithic Haplustolls**

IGGC. Other Haplustolls that have *both:*

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in 6 normal years, is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that, in normal years:

      (1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

      (2) Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Aridic Lithic Haplustolls**

IGGD. Other Haplustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplustolls**

IGGE. Other Haplustolls that have *both:*

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*:

2. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquertic Haplustolls**

IGGF. Other Haplustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in

some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Torrertic Haplustolls**

IGGG. Other Haplustolls that have *all* of the following:

1. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

b. 50 cm or more thick.

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

3. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Pachic Udertic Haplustolls**

IGGH. Other Haplustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udertic Haplustolls**

IGGI. Other Haplustolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

a. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

b. 50 cm or more thick; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Vertic Haplustolls**

IGGJ. Other Haplustolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-

shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haplustolls**

IGGK. Other Haplustolls that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years remains moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. An apparent CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower. (If the ratio of [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon] to the percentage of measured clay is 0.6 or more, then the percentage of clay is considered to equal either the measured percentage of clay or three times [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon], whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.)

**Torroxic Haplustolls**

IGGL. Other Haplustolls that have an apparent CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay in 50 percent or more of the soil volume between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower. (If the ratio of [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon] to the percentage of measured clay is 0.6 or more, then the percentage of clay is considered to equal either the measured percentage of clay or three times [percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension minus percent organic carbon], whichever value is higher, but no more than 100.)

**Oxic Haplustolls**

IGGM. Other Haplustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haplustolls**

IGGN. Other Haplustolls that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitritorrandic Haplustolls**

IGGO. Other Haplustolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haplustolls**

IGGP. Other Haplustolls that have:

1. *Either*:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class, and there is no densic or paralithic contact and no sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class at a depth between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

4. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Cumulic Haplustolls**

IGGQ. Other Haplustolls that have:

1. *Either*:

a. A frigid soil temperature regime and a mollic epipedon 40 cm or more thick, of which less than 50 percent has a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class, and there is no densic or paralithic contact and no sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class at a depth between 40 and 50 cm from the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

**Cumulic Haplustolls**

IGGR. Other Haplustolls that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Haplustolls**

IGGS. Other Haplustolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Haplustolls**

IGGT. Other Haplustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in most years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplustolls**

IGGU. Other Haplustolls that have a mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is *either:*

1. 40 cm or more thick in a frigid temperature regime; *or*

2. 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Haplustolls**

IGGV. Other Haplustolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplustolls**

IGGW. Other Haplustolls that have *both*:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in

some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Torrifluventic Haplustolls**

IGGX. Other Haplustolls that:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *and*

2. *Either*:

a. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in any part of the mollic epipedon below 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, meet all of the requirements for a cambic horizon except color; *or*

b. Have free carbonates throughout the cambic horizon or in all parts of the mollic epipedon below a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Torriorthentic Haplustolls**

IGGY. Other Haplustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Haplustolls**

IGGZ. Other Haplustolls that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more at a depth of 125 cm below the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluventic Haplustolls**

IGGZa. Other Haplustolls that have a brittle horizon that is within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, is 15 cm or more thick, and has either some opal coatings or 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes.

**Duric Haplustolls**

IGGZb. Other Haplustolls that:

1. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

2. Either do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet the requirements for a cambic horizon, except for the color requirements, or have carbonates throughout either the cambic horizon or the lower part of the mollic epipedon.

**Udorthentic Haplustolls**

IGGZc. Other Haplustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Haplustolls**

IGGZd. Other Haplustolls that *either*:

1. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in any part of the mollic epipedon below 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, meet all of the requirements for a cambic horizon except color; *or*

2. Have free carbonates throughout the cambic horizon or in all parts of the mollic epipedon below a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Haplustolls**

IGGZe. Other Haplustolls.

**Typic Haplustolls**

## Natrustolls

### Key to Subgroups

IGBA. Natrustolls that have *all* of the following:

1. Visible crystals of gypsum and/or more soluble salts within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower;

3. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Leptic Torrertic Natrustolls**

IGBB. Other Natrustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Torrertic Natrustolls**

IGBC. Other Natrustolls that have *both* of the following:

1. Visible crystals of gypsum and/or more soluble salts within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Leptic Vertic Natrustolls**

IGBD. Other Natrustolls that have *both*:

1. A glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into a natric horizon; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Glossic Vertic Natrustolls**

IGBE. Other Natrustolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrustolls**

IGBF. Other Natrustolls that have *both*:

1. Visible crystals of gypsum or of more soluble salts, or both, within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at

a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Leptic Natrustolls**

IGBG. Other Natrustolls that have visible crystals of gypsum or of more soluble salts, or both, within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Natrustolls**

IGBH. Other Natrustolls that have, in one or more horizons at a depth between 50 and 100 cm from the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one* of the following:

1. 50 percent or more chroma of 1 or less and hue of 2.5Y or yellower; *or*

2. 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less and redox concentrations; *or*

3. 50 percent or more chroma of 2 or less and also a higher exchangeable sodium percentage (or sodium adsorption ratio) between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 25 cm than in the underlying horizon.

**Aquic Natrustolls**

IGBI. Other Natrustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for four-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Natrustolls**

IGBJ. Other Natrustolls that have a horizon, 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Natrustolls**

IGBK. Other Natrustolls that have a glossic horizon or interfingering of albic materials into a natric horizon.

**Glossic Natrustolls**

IGBL. Other Natrustolls.

**Typic Natrustolls**

## Paleustolls

### Key to Subgroups

IGDA. Paleustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *one* of the following:

a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

(1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

(2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil

temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Torrertic Paleustolls**

IGDB. Other Paleustolls that have *both*:

1. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

   a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udertic Paleustolls**

IGDC. Other Paleustolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Paleustolls**

IGDD. Other Paleustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Paleustolls**

IGDE. Other Paleustolls that have a mollic epipedon that has a texture finer than loamy fine sand and that is 50 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Paleustolls**

IGDF. Other Paleustolls that have a petrocalcic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Paleustolls**

IGDG. Other Paleustolls that:

1. Have a calcic horizon within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

   a. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   c. Any other class and within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

   a. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   c. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

      (1) Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

      (2) Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Calcidic Paleustolls**

IGDH. Other Paleustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *one* of the following:

1. A frigid temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in all parts for less than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the soil

temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

3. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some or all parts for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Paleustolls**

IGDI. Other Paleustolls that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for four-tenths or less of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Paleustolls**

IGDJ. Other Paleustolls have a calcic horizon within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

1. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

3. Any other class and within 60 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Paleustolls**

IGDK. Other Paleustolls that are calcareous throughout after the surface soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm.

**Entic Paleustolls**

IGDL. Other Paleustolls.

**Typic Paleustolls**

## Vermustolls

### Key to Subgroups

IGFA. Vermustolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Vermustolls**

IGFB. Other Vermustolls that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Vermustolls**

IGFC. Other Vermustolls that have a mollic epipedon 75 cm or more thick.

**Pachic Vermustolls**

IGFD. Other Vermustolls that have a mollic epipedon less than 50 cm thick.

**Entic Vermustolls**

IGFE. Other Vermustolls.

**Typic Vermustolls**

# Xerolls

## Key to Great Groups

IFA. Xerolls that have a duripan within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durixerolls**, p. 227

IFB. Other Xerolls that have a natric horizon.

**Natrixerolls**, p. 232

IFC. Other Xerolls that have *either*:

1. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An argillic horizon that has *one or both* of the following:

a. With increasing depth, no clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content (noncarbonate clay) within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface (and there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within that depth); *and either*

(1) Hue of 7.5YR or redder and chroma of 5 or more in the matrix; *or*

(2) Common redox concentrations with hue of 7.5YR or redder or chroma of 6 or more, or both; *or*

b. A clayey or clayey-skeletal particle-size class in its

upper part and, at its upper boundary, a clay increase either of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction (and there is no densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface).

**Palexerolls**, p. 232

IFD. Other Xerolls that:

1. Have a calcic or gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In all parts above the calcic or gypsic horizon, after the surface soil has been mixed to a depth of 18 cm, either are calcareous or have a texture of loamy fine sand or coarser.

**Calcixerolls**, p. 227

IFE. Other Xerolls that have an argillic horizon.

**Argixerolls**, p. 225

IFF. Other Xerolls.

**Haploxerolls**, p. 229

## Argixerolls

### Key to Subgroups

IFEA. Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either the mineral soil surface or an Ap horizon, whichever is deeper, and the lithic contact.

**Lithic Ultic Argixerolls**

IFEB. Other Argixerolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Argixerolls**

IFEC. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrertic Argixerolls**

IFED. Other Argixerolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Argixerolls**

IFEE. Other Argixerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Argixerolls**

IFEF. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitritorrandic Argixerolls**

IFEG. Other Argixerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus ½ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Argixerolls**

IFEH. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquultic Argixerolls**

IFEI. Other Argixerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Argixerolls**

IFEJ. Other Argixerolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Argixerolls**

IFEK. Other Argixerolls that have *either*:

1. Above the argillic horizon, an albic horizon or a horizon that has color values too high for a mollic epipedon and chroma too high for an albic horizon; *or*

2. A glossic horizon, *or* interfingering of albic materials into the upper part of the argillic horizon, *or* skeletans of clean silt and sand covering 50 percent or more of the faces of peds in the upper 5 cm of the argillic horizon.

**Alfic Argixerolls**

IFEL. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. A calcic horizon or identifiable secondary carbonates within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

a. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

c. Any other class and within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Calcic Pachic Argixerolls**

IFEM. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Ultic Argixerolls**

IFEN. Other Argixerolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Argixerolls**

IFEO. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Argiduridic Argixerolls**

IFEP. Other Argixerolls that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Argixerolls**

IFEQ. Other Argixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A calcic horizon or identifiable secondary carbonates within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

a. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

c. Any other class and within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calciargidic Argixerolls**

IFER. Other Argixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Aridic Argixerolls**

IFES. Other Argixerolls that have a calcic horizon or identifiable secondary carbonates within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

1. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

3. Any other class and within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Argixerolls**

IFET. Other Argixerolls that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Ultic Argixerolls**

IFEU. Other Argixerolls.

**Typic Argixerolls**

## Calcixerolls

### Key to Subgroups

IFDA. Calcixerolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calcixerolls**

IFDB. Other Calcixerolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Calcixerolls**

IFDC. Other Calcixerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Calcixerolls**

IFDD. Other Calcixerolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Calcixerolls**

IFDE. Other Calcixerolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Calcixerolls**

IFDF. Other Calcixerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter, of which 5 percent or more is volcanic glass, and [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Calcixerolls**

IFDG. Other Calcixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Aridic Calcixerolls**

IFDH. Other Calcixerolls that have a mollic epipedon that has, below any Ap horizon, 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, wormcasts, or filled animal burrows.

**Vermic Calcixerolls**

IFDI. Other Calcixerolls.

**Typic Calcixerolls**

## Durixerolls

### Key to Subgroups

IFAA. Durixerolls that have, above the duripan, *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more.

**Vertic Durixerolls**

IFAB. Other Durixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitritorrandic Durixerolls**

IFAC. Other Durixerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Durixerolls**

IFAD. Other Durixerolls that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Durixerolls**

IFAE. Other Durixerolls that have:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. An argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase either of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm; *and*

3. A duripan that is neither very strongly cemented nor indurated in any subhorizon.

**Paleargidic Durixerolls**

IFAF. Other Durixerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. An argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase either of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm.

**Abruptic Argiduridic Durixerolls**

IFAG. Other Durixerolls that:

1. Have an aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. Do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan; *and*

3. Have a duripan that is neither very strongly cemented nor indurated in any subhorizon.

**Cambidic Durixerolls**

IFAH. Other Durixerolls that:

1. Have an aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. Do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

**Haploduridic Durixerolls**

IFAI. Other Durixerolls that have:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A duripan that is neither very strongly cemented nor indurated in any subhorizon.

**Argidic Durixerolls**

IFAJ. Other Durixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Argiduridic Durixerolls**

IFAK. Other Durixerolls that have *both*:

1. An argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase either of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm; *and*

2. A duripan that is neither very strongly cemented nor indurated in any subhorizon.

**Haplic Palexerollic Durixerolls**

IFAL. Other Durixerolls that have an argillic horizon that, with increasing depth, has a clay increase either of 20 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm or of 15 percent or more (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm.

**Palexerollic Durixerolls**

IFAM. Other Durixerolls that:

1. Have a duripan that is neither very strongly cemented nor indurated in any subhorizon; *and*

2. Do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

**Haplic Haploxerollic Durixerolls**

IFAN. Other Durixerolls that do not have an argillic horizon above the duripan.

**Haploxerollic Durixerolls**

IFAO. Other Durixerolls that have a duripan that is neither very strongly cemented nor indurated in any subhorizon.

**Haplic Durixerolls**

IFAP. Other Durixerolls.

**Typic Durixerolls**

## Haploxerolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IFFA. Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either the mineral soil surface or an Ap horizon, whichever is deeper, and the lithic contact.

**Lithic Ultic Haploxerolls**

IFFB. Other Haploxerolls that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haploxerolls**

IFFC. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. *One or both* of the following:

   a. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Torrertic Haploxerolls**

IFFD. Other Haploxerolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Haploxerolls**

IFFE. Other Haploxerolls that have throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haploxerolls**

IFFF. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

   a. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

   b. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

      (1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

      (2) [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitritorrandic Haploxerolls**

IFFG. Other Haploxerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

   a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

   b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Haploxerolls**

IFFH. Other Haploxerolls that have:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a

depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

4. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Cumulic Haploxerolls**

IFFI. Other Haploxerolls that have:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and*

4. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Cumulic Ultic Haploxerolls**

IFFJ. Other Haploxerolls that have:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower; *and*

3. A slope of less than 25 percent.

**Cumulic Haploxerolls**

IFFK. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

   a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluvaquentic Haploxerolls**

IFFL. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A horizon, 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Aquic Duric Haploxerolls**

IFFM. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Aquultic Haploxerolls**

IFFN. Other Haploxerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haploxerolls**

IFFO. Other Haploxerolls that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haploxerolls**

IFFP. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A calcic horizon or identifiable secondary carbonates within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

a. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

c. Any other class and within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Pachic Haploxerolls**

IFFQ. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. A mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand; *and*

2. A base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Pachic Ultic Haploxerolls**

IFFR. Other Haploxerolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Haploxerolls**

IFFS. Other Haploxerolls that have:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

a. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Torrifluventic Haploxerolls**

IFFT. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duridic Haploxerolls**

IFFU. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A calcic horizon or identifiable secondary carbonates within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

a. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

c. Any other class and within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcidic Haploxerolls**

IFFV. Other Haploxerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A sandy particle-size class in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Torripsammentic Haploxerolls**

IFFW. Other Haploxerolls that:

1. Have an aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. *Either*:

a. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in any part of the mollic epipedon below 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, meet all of the requirements for a cambic horizon except color; *or*

b. Have free carbonates throughout the cambic horizon or in all parts of the mollic epipedon below a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Torriorthentic Haploxerolls**

IFFX. Other Haploxerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Aridic Haploxerolls**

IFFY. Other Haploxerolls that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Haploxerolls**

IFFZ. Other Haploxerolls that have a sandy particle-size class in all horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Psammentic Haploxerolls**

IFFZa. Other Haploxerolls that have a slope of less than 25 percent; *and either*

1. An organic-carbon content of 0.3 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. An irregular decrease in organic-carbon content from a depth of 25 cm to a depth of 125 cm or to a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact if shallower.

**Fluventic Haploxerolls**

IFFZb. Other Haploxerolls that have a mollic epipedon that

has granular structure and that has, below any Ap horizon, 50 percent or more (by volume) wormholes, wormcasts, or filled animal burrows.

**Vermic Haploxerolls**

IFFZc. Other Haploxerolls that have a calcic horizon or identifiable secondary carbonates within one of the following particle-size class (by weighted average in the particle-size control section) and depth combinations:

1. Sandy or sandy-skeletal and within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. Clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine, or very-fine and within 90 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

3. Any other class and within 110 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haploxerolls**

IFFZd. Other Haploxerolls that:

1. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in the lower part of the mollic epipedon, meet all of the requirements for a cambic horizon except color; *and*

2. Have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Entic Ultic Haploxerolls**

IFFZe. Other Haploxerolls that have a base saturation (by sum of cations) of 75 percent or less in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Ultic Haploxerolls**

IFFZf. Other Haploxerolls that *either*:

1. Do not have a cambic horizon and do not, in any part of the mollic epipedon below 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, meet all of the requirements for a cambic horizon except color; *or*

2. Have free carbonates throughout the cambic horizon or in all parts of the mollic epipedon below a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Haploxerolls**

IFFZg. Other Haploxerolls.

**Typic Haploxerolls**

## Natrixerolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IFBA. Natrixerolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Natrixerolls**

IFBB. Other Natrixerolls that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A horizon, 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Aquic Duric Natrixerolls**

IFBC. Other Natrixerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Natrixerolls**

IFBD. Other Natrixerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Aridic Natrixerolls**

IFBE. Other Natrixerolls that have a horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface that is 15 cm or more thick and either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Natrixerolls**

IFBF. Other Natrixerolls.

**Typic Natrixerolls**

## Palexerolls

**Key to Subgroups**

IFCA. Palexerolls that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are

5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Palexerolls**

IFCB. Other Palexerolls that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following:

1. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

2. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Vitrandic Palexerolls**

IFCC. Other Palexerolls that have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Palexerolls**

IFCD. Other Palexerolls that have a mollic epipedon that is 50 cm or more thick and has a texture finer than loamy fine sand.

**Pachic Palexerolls**

IFCE. Other Palexerolls that have *both*:

1. An aridic moisture regime; *and*

2. A petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcidic Palexerolls**

IFCF. Other Palexerolls that have a horizon, 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, that either has 20 percent or more (by volume) durinodes or is brittle and has a firm rupture-resistance class when moist.

**Duric Palexerolls**

IFCG. Other Palexerolls that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Aridic Palexerolls**

IFCH. Other Palexerolls that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Palexerolls**

IFCI. Other Palexerolls that have a base saturation of 75 percent or less in one or more subhorizons either within the argillic horizon if more than 50 cm thick or within its upper 50 cm.

**Ultic Palexerolls**

IFCJ. Other Palexerolls that have an argillic horizon that has *either*:

1. Less than 35 percent clay in the upper part; *or*

2. At its upper boundary, a clay increase that is both less than 20 percent (absolute) within a vertical distance of 7.5 cm and less than 15 percent (absolute) within a vertical distance of 2.5 cm, in the fine-earth fraction.

**Haplic Palexerolls**

IFCK. Other Palexerolls.

**Typic Palexerolls**

# CHAPTER 13

# *Oxisols*

## Key to Suborders

EA. Oxisols that have aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface and have *one or more* of the following:

1. A histic epipedon; *or*

2. An epipedon with a color value, moist, of 3 or less and, directly below it, a horizon with chroma of 2 or less; *or*

3. Distinct or prominent redox concentrations within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, an epipedon, and, directly below it, a horizon with *one or both* of the following:

   a. 50 percent or more hue of 2.5Y or yellower; *or*

   b. Chroma of 3 or less; *or*

4. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquox**, p. 235

EB. Other Oxisols that have an aridic moisture regime.

**Torrox**, p. 240

EC. Other Oxisols that have an ustic or xeric moisture regime.

**Ustox**, p. 245

ED. Other Oxisols that have a perudic moisture regime.

**Perox**, p. 236

EE. Other Oxisols.

**Udox**, p. 241

## Aquox

### Key to Great Groups

EAA. Aquox that have, in one or more subhorizons of an oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an apparent ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+) per kg clay and a pH value (in 1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

**Acraquox**, p. 235

EAB. Other Aquox that have plinthite forming a continuous phase within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthaquox**, p. 236

EAC. Other Aquox that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Eutraquox**, p. 235

EAD. Other Aquox.

**Haplaquox**, p. 236

### Acraquox

#### Key to Subgroups

EAAA. Acraquox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Acraquox**

EAAB. Other Acraquox that have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

**Aeric Acraquox**

EAAC. Other Acraquox.

**Typic Acraquox**

### Eutraquox

#### Key to Subgroups

EACA. Eutraquox that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Eutraquox**

EACB. Other Eutraquox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Eutraquox**

EACC. Other Eutraquox that have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

**Aeric Eutraquox**

EACD. Other Eutraquox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Eutraquox**

EACE. Other Eutraquox.

**Typic Eutraquox**

### Haplaquox

**Key to Subgroups**

EADA. Haplaquox that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Haplaquox**

EADB. Other Haplaquox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Haplaquox**

EADC. Other Haplaquox that have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

**Aeric Haplaquox**

EADD. Other Haplaquox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Haplaquox**

EADE. Other Haplaquox.

**Typic Haplaquox**

### Plinthaquox

**Key to Subgroups**

EABA. Plintaquox that have, directly below an epipedon, a horizon 10 cm or more thick that has 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more.

**Aeric Plinthaquox**

EABB. Other Plinthaquox.

**Typic Plinthaquox**

## Perox

### Key to Great Groups

EDA. Perox that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sombriperox**, p. 240

EDB. Other Perox that have, in one or more subhorizons of an oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an apparent ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+) per kg clay and a pH value (1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

**Acroperox**, p. 236

EDC. Other Perox that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Eutroperox**, p. 237

EDD. Other Perox that have a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Kandiperox**, p. 239

EDE. Other Perox.

**Haploperox**, p. 238

### Acroperox

**Key to Subgroups**

EDBA. Acroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Acroperox**

EDBB. Other Acroperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Acroperox**

EDBC. Other Acroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Acroperox**

EDBD. Other Acroperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Acroperox**

EDBE. Other Acroperox that have a delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Anionic Acroperox**

EDBF. Other Acroperox that have 5 percent or more (by

volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Acroperox**

EDBG. Other Acroperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Acroperox**

EDBH. Other Acroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Acroperox**

EDBI. Other Acroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Acroperox**

EDBJ. Other Acroperox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Acroperox**

EDBK. Other Acroperox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Acroperox**

EDBL. Other Acroperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Acroperox**

EDBM. Other Acroperox.

**Typic Acroperox**

## Eutroperox

**Key to Subgroups**

EDCA. Eutroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Eutroperox**

EDCB. Other Eutroperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Eutroperox**

EDCC. Other Eutroperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Eutroperox**

EDCD. Other Eutroperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Eutroperox**

EDCE. Other Eutroperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Eutroperox**

EDCF. Other Eutroperox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Eutroperox**

EDCG. Other Eutroperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Eutroperox**

EDCH. Other Eutroperox that have a kandic horizon that

has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Kandiudalfic Eutroperox**

EDCI. Other Eutroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. An oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Inceptic Eutroperox**

EDCJ. Other Eutroperox that have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Eutroperox**

EDCK. Other Eutroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Eutroperox**

EDCL. Other Eutroperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Eutroperox**

EDCM. Other Eutroperox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Eutroperox**

EDCN. Other Eutroperox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Eutroperox**

EDCO. Other Eutroperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Eutroperox**

EDCP. Other Eutroperox.

**Typic Eutroperox**

## Haploperox

**Key to Subgroups**

EDEA. Haploperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Haploperox**

EDEB. Other Haploperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Haploperox**

EDEC. Other Haploperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Haploperox**

EDED. Other Haploperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haploperox**

EDEE. Other Haploperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Haploperox**

EDEF. Other Haploperox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Haploperox**

EDEG. Other Haploperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haploperox**

EDEH. Other Haploperox that have, throughout one or more

horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haploperox**

EDEI. Other Haploperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Haploperox**

EDEJ. Other Haploperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Haploperox**

EDEK. Other Haploperox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Haploperox**

EDEL. Other Haploperox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Haploperox**

EDEM. Other Haploperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Haploperox**

EDEN. Other Haploperox.

**Typic Haploperox**

## Kandiperox

### Key to Subgroups

EDDA. Kandiperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Kandiperox**

EDDB. Other Kandiperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Kandiperox**

EDDC. Other Kandiperox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Kandiperox**

EDDD. Other Kandiperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kandiperox**

EDDE. Other Kandiperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Kandiperox**

EDDF. Other Kandiperox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiperox**

EDDG. Other Kandiperox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandiperox**

EDDH. Other Kandiperox that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kandiperox**

EDDI. Other Kandiperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Kandiperox**

EDDJ. Other Kandiperox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Kandiperox**

EDDK. Other Kandiperox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Kandiperox**

EDDL. Other Kandiperox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Kandiperox**

EDDM. Other Kandiperox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Kandiperox**

EDDN. Other Kandiperox.

**Typic Kandiperox**

## Sombriperox

### Key to Subgroups

EDAA. Sombriperox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Sombriperox**

EDAB. Other Sombriperox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Sombriperox**

EDAC. Other Sombriperox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Sombriperox**

EDAD. Other Sombriperox.

**Typic Sombriperox**

# Torrox

## Key to Great Groups

EBA. Torrox that have, in one or more subhorizons of an oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an apparent ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+) per kg clay and a pH value (1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

**Acrotorrox**, p. 240

EBB. Other Torrox that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Eutrotorrox**, p. 240

EBC. Other Torrox.

**Haplotorrox**, p. 241

## Acrotorrox

### Key to Subgroups

EBAA. Acrotorrox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Acrotorrox**

EBAB. Other Acrotorrox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Acrotorrox**

EBAC. Other Acrotorrox.

**Typic Acrotorrox**

## Eutrotorrox

### Key to Subgroups

EBBA. Eutrotorrox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Eutrotorrox**

EBBB. Other Eutrotorrox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Eutrotorrox**

EBBC. Other Eutrotorrox.

**Typic Eutrotorrox**

## Haplotorrox

**Key to Subgroups**

EBCA. Haplotorrox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Haplotorrox**

EBCB. Other Haplotorrox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplotorrox**

EBCC. Other Haplotorrox.

**Typic Haplotorrox**

# Udox

## Key to Great Groups

EEA. Udox that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sombriudox**, p. 245

EEB. Other Udox that have, in one or more subhorizons of an oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an apparent ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+) per kg clay and a pH value (1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

**Acrudox**, p. 241

EEC. Other Udox that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Eutrudox**, p. 242

EED. Other Udox that have a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Kandiudox**, p. 244

EEE. Other Udox.

**Hapludox**, p. 243

## Acrudox

**Key to Subgroups**

EEBA. Acrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Acrudox**

EEBB. Other Acrudox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Acrudox**

EEBC. Other Acrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Acrudox**

EEBD. Other Acrudox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Acrudox**

EEBE. Other Acrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Anionic Aquic Acrudox**

EEBF. Other Acrudox that have a delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Anionic Acrudox**

EEBG. Other Acrudox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Acrudox**

EEBH. Other Acrudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Acrudox**

EEBI. Other Acrudox that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Eutric Acrudox**

EEBJ. Other Acrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 $kg/m^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Acrudox**

EEBK. Other Acrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Acrudox**

EEBL. Other Acrudox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Acrudox**

EEBM. Other Acrudox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Acrudox**

EEBN. Other Acrudox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Acrudox**

EEBO. Other Acrudox.

**Typic Acrudox**

## Eutrudox

### Key to Subgroups

EECA. Eutrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Eutrudox**

EECB. Other Eutrudox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Eutrudox**

EECC. Other Eutrudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Eutrudox**

EECD. Other Eutrudox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Eutrudox**

EECE. Other Eutrudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Eutrudox**

EECF. Other Eutrudox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Eutrudox**

EECG. Other Eutrudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Eutrudox**

EECH. Other Eutrudox that have a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Kandiudalfic Eutrudox**

EECI. Other Eutrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. An oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Inceptic Eutrudox**

EECJ. Other Eutrudox that have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Eutrudox**

EECK. Other Eutrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Eutrudox**

EECL. Other Eutrudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Eutrudox**

EECM. Other Eutrudox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Eutrudox**

EECN. Other Eutrudox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Eutrudox**

EECO. Other Eutrudox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Eutrudox**

EECP. Other Eutrudox.

**Typic Eutrudox**

## Hapludox

### Key to Subgroups

EEEA. Hapludox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Hapludox**

EEEB. Other Hapludox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Hapludox**

EEEC. Other Hapludox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Hapludox**

EEED. Other Hapludox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Hapludox**

EEEE. Other Hapludox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Hapludox**

EEEF. Other Hapludox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Hapludox**

EEEG. Other Hapludox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Hapludox**

EEEH. Other Hapludox that have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Hapludox**

EEEI. Other Hapludox that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Hapludox**

EEEJ. Other Hapludox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Hapludox**

EEEK. Other Hapludox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Hapludox**

EEEL. Other Hapludox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Hapludox**

EEEM. Other Hapludox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Hapludox**

EEEN. Other Hapludox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Hapludox**

EEEO. Other Hapludox.

**Typic Hapludox**

## Kandiudox

### Key to Subgroups

EEDA. Kandiudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Kandiudox**

EEDB. Other Kandiudox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Kandiudox**

EEDC. Other Kandiudox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Kandiudox**

EEDD. Other Kandiudox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kandiudox**

EEDE. Other Kandiudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Kandiudox**

EEDF. Other Kandiudox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiudox**

EEDG. Other Kandiudox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandiudox**

EEDH. Other Kandiudox that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kandiudox**

EEDI. Other Kandiudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Kandiudox**

EEDJ. Other Kandiudox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Kandiudox**

EEDK. Other Kandiudox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Kandiudox**

EEDL. Other Kandiudox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*
2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Kandiudox**

EEDM. Other Kandiudox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Kandiudox**

EEDN. Other Kandiudox.

**Typic Kandiudox**

## Sombriudox

### Key to Subgroups

EEAA. Sombriudox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Sombriudox**

EEAB. Other Sombriudox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Sombriudox**

EEAC. Other Sombriudox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Sombriudox**

EEAD. Other Sombriudox.

**Typic Sombriudox**

# Ustox

## Key to Great Groups

ECA. Ustox that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sombriustox**, p. 249

ECB. Other Ustox that have, in one or more subhorizons of an oxic or kandic horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, an apparent ECEC of less than 1.50 cmol(+) per kg clay and a pH value (1N KCl) of 5.0 or more.

**Acrustox**, p. 245

ECC. Other Ustox that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Eutrustox**, p. 246

ECD. Other Ustox that have a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Kandiustox**, p. 248

ECE. Other Ustox.

**Haplustox**, p. 247

## Acrustox

### Key to Subgroups

ECBA. Acrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Acrustox**

ECBB. Other Acrustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Acrustox**

ECBC. Other Acrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Acrustox**

ECBD. Other Acrustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Acrustox**

ECBE. Other Acrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick; *and*
2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Anionic Aquic Acrustox**

ECBF. Other Acrustox that have a delta pH (KCl pH minus 1:1 water pH) with a 0 or net positive charge in a layer 18 cm or more thick within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Anionic Acrustox**

ECBG. Other Acrustox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Acrustox**

ECBH. Other Acrustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Acrustox**

ECBI. Other Acrustox that have a base saturation (by $NH_4OAc$) of 35 percent or more in all horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Eutric Acrustox**

ECBJ. Other Acrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Acrustox**

ECBK. Other Acrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Acrustox**

ECBL. Other Acrustox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Acrustox**

ECBM. Other Acrustox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Acrustox**

ECBN. Other Acrustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Acrustox**

ECBO. Other Acrustox.

**Typic Acrustox**

## Eutrustox

**Key to Subgroups**

ECCA. Eutrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Eutrustox**

ECCB. Other Eutrustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Eutrustox**

ECCC. Other Eutrustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Eutrustox**

ECCD. Other Eutrustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Eutrustox**

ECCE. Other Eutrustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Eutrustox**

ECCF. Other Eutrustox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Eutrustox**

ECCG. Other Eutrustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions

with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Eutrustox**

ECCH. Other Eutrustox that have a kandic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Kandiustalfic Eutrustox**

ECCI. Other Eutrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. An oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Inceptic Eutrustox**

ECCJ. Other Eutrustox that have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Eutrustox**

ECCK. Other Eutrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Eutrustox**

ECCL. Other Eutrustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Eutrustox**

ECCM. Other Eutrustox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Eutrustox**

ECCN. Other Eutrustox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Eutrustox**

ECCO. Other Eutrustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Eutrustox**

ECCP. Other Eutrustox.

**Typic Eutrustox**

## Haplustox

**Key to Subgroups**

ECEA. Haplustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Haplustox**

ECEB. Other Haplustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Haplustox**

ECEC. Other Haplustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Haplustox**

ECED. Other Haplustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplustox**

ECEE. Other Haplustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Haplustox**

ECEF. Other Haplustox that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Haplustox**

ECEG. Other Haplustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. The lower boundary of the oxic horizon; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aqueptic Haplustox**

ECEH. Other Haplustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplustox**

ECEI. Other Haplustox that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplustox**

ECEJ. Other Haplustox that have an oxic horizon that has its lower boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Inceptic Haplustox**

ECEK. Other Haplustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Haplustox**

ECEL. Other Haplustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Haplustox**

ECEM. Other Haplustox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Haplustox**

ECEN. Other Haplustox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Haplustox**

ECEO. Other Haplustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Haplustox**

ECEP. Other Haplustox.

**Typic Haplustox**

## Kandiustox

### Key to Subgroups

ECDA. Kandiustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A petroferric contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Petroferric Kandiustox**

ECDB. Other Kandiustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Kandiustox**

ECDC. Other Kandiustox that have, within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. A lithic contact; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Lithic Kandiustox**

ECDD. Other Kandiustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kandiustox**

ECDE. Other Kandiustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite; *and*

2. Redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Kandiustox**

ECDF. Other Kandiustox that have 5 percent or more (by

volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiustox**

ECDG. Other Kandiustox that have, in one or more horizons within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandiustox**

ECDH. Other Kandiustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. In all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Humic Rhodic Kandiustox**

ECDI. Other Kandiustox that have *both*:

1. 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm; *and*

2. 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Humic Xanthic Kandiustox**

ECDJ. Other Kandiustox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Kandiustox**

ECDK. Other Kandiustox that have, in all horizons at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface, more than 50 percent colors that have *both* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less.

**Rhodic Kandiustox**

ECDL. Other Kandiustox that have 50 percent or more hue of 7.5YR or yellower and a color value, moist, of 6 or more at a depth between 25 and 125 cm from the mineral soil surface.

**Xanthic Kandiustox**

ECDM. Other Kandiustox.

**Typic Kandiustox**

## Sombriustox

**Key to Subgroups**

ECAA. Sombriustox that have a petroferric contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Sombriustox**

ECAB. Other Sombriustox that have a lithic contact within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Sombriustox**

ECAC. Other Sombriustox that have 16 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humic Sombriustox**

ECAD. Other Sombriustox.

**Typic Sombriustox**

# CHAPTER 14

# *Spodosols*

## Key to Suborders

CA. Spodosols that have aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface and have *one or both* of the following:

1. A histic epipedon; *or*
2. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, redoximorphic features in an albic or a spodic horizon.

**Aquods**, p. 251

CB. Other Spodosols that have, in normal years, a mean annual soil temperature of 0 °C or colder and a mean summer soil temperature that:

1. Is 8 °C or colder if there is no O horizon; or
2. Is 5 °C or colder if there is an O horizon.

**Gelods**, p. 255

CC. Other Spodosols that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryods**, p. 253

CD. Other Spodosols that have 6.0 percent or more organic carbon in a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

**Humods**, p. 256

CE. Other Spodosols.

**Orthods**, p. 256

## Aquods

### Key to Great Groups

CAA. Aquods that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryaquods**, p. 252

CAB. Other Aquods that have less than 0.10 percent iron (by ammonium oxalate) in 75 percent or more of the spodic horizon.

**Alaquods,** p. 251

CAC. Other Aquods that have a fragipan with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaquods**, p. 253

CAD. Other Aquods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

**Placaquods**, p. 253

CAE. Other Aquods that have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duraquods**, p. 252

CAF. Other Aquods that have episaturation.

**Epiaquods**, p. 253

CAG. Other Aquods.

**Endoaquods**, p. 252

### Alaquods

#### Key to Subgroups

CABA. Alaquods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Alaquods**

CABB. Other Alaquods that have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duric Alaquods**

CABC. Other Alaquods that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Alaquods**

CABD. Other Alaquods that have *both*:

1. Within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part; *and*
2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout

a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

**Alfic Arenic Alaquods**

CABE. Other Alaquods that have *both*:

1. An argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

**Arenic Ultic Alaquods**

CABF. Other Alaquods that have *both*:

1. An umbric epipedon; *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 75 cm or more.

**Arenic Umbric Alaquods**

CABG. Other Alaquods that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

**Arenic Alaquods**

CABH. Other Alaquods that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 125 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Alaquods**

CABI. Other Alaquods that have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

**Alfic Alaquods**

CABJ. Other Alaquods that have an argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Ultic Alaquods**

CABK. Other Alaquods that have an ochric epipedon.

**Aeric Alaquods**

CABL. Other Alaquods.

**Typic Alaquods**

## Cryaquods

### Key to Subgroups

CAAA. Cryaquods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Cryaquods**

CAAB. Other Cryaquods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

**Placic Cryaquods**

CAAC. Other Cryaquods that have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duric Cryaquods**

CAAD. Other Cryaquods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Cryaquods**

CAAE. Other Cryaquods that have a spodic horizon less than 10 cm thick in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

**Entic Cryaquods**

CAAF. Other Cryaquods.

**Typic Cryaquods**

## Duraquods

### Key to Subgroups

CAEA. Duraquods that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Duraquods**

CAEB. Other Duraquods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Duraquods**

CAEC. Other Duraquods.

**Typic Duraquods**

## Endoaquods

### Key to Subgroups

CAGA. Endoaquods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Endoaquods**

CAGB. Other Endoaquods that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Endoaquods**

CAGC. Other Endoaquods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or

more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Endoaquods**

CAGD. Other Endoaquods that have an argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Argic Endoaquods**

CAGE. Other Endoaquods that have an umbric epipedon.

**Umbric Endoaquods**

CAGF. Other Endoaquods.

**Typic Endoaquods**

## Epiaquods

### Key to Subgroups

CAFA. Epiaquods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Epiaquods**

CAFB. Other Epiaquods that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Epiaquods**

CAFC. Other Epiaquods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Epiaquods**

CAFD. Other Epiaquods that have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

**Alfic Epiaquods**

CAFE. Other Epiaquods that have an argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Ultic Epiaquods**

CAFF. Other Epiaquods that have an umbric epipedon.

**Umbric Epiaquods**

CAFG. Other Epiaquods.

**Typic Epiaquods**

## Fragiaquods

### Key to Subgroups

CACA. Fragiaquods that have a histic epipedon.

**Histic Fragiaquods**

CACB. Other Fragiaquods that have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all of the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

**Plagganthreptic Fragiaquods**

CACC. Other Fragiaquods that have an argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Argic Fragiaquods**

CACD. Other Fragiaquods.

**Typic Fragiaquods**

## Placaquods

### Key to Subgroups

CADA. Placaquods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Placaquods**

CADB. Other Placaquods.

**Typic Placaquods**

# Cryods

## Key to Great Groups

CCA. Cryods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.

**Placocryods**, p. 255

CCB. Other Cryods that have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duricryods,** p. 253

CCC. Other Cryods that have 6.0 percent or more organic carbon throughout a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

**Humicryods**, p. 254

CCD. Other Cryods.

**Haplocryods**, p. 254

## Duricryods

### Key to Subgroups

CCBA. Duricryods that have *both*:

1. Redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic

conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Aquandic Duricryods**

CCBB. Other Duricryods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Duricryods**

CCBC. Other Duricryods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Duricryods**

CCBD. Other Duricryods that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Duricryods**

CCBE. Other Duricryods that have 6.0 percent or more organic carbon throughout a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

**Humic Duricryods**

CCBF. Other Duricryods.

**Typic Duricryods**

## Haplocryods

### Key to Subgroups

CCDA. Haplocryods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplocryods**

CCDB. Other Haplocryods that have *both*:

1. Redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Aquandic Haplocryods**

CCDC. Other Haplocryods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Haplocryods**

CCDD. Other Haplocryods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplocryods**

CCDE. Other Haplocryods that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplocryods**

CCDF. Other Haplocryods that have 1.1 percent or less organic carbon in the upper 10 cm of the spodic horizon.

**Entic Haplocryods**

CCDG. Other Haplocryods.

**Typic Haplocryods**

## Humicryods

### Key to Subgroups

CCCA. Humicryods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Humicryods**

CCCB. Other Humicryods that have *both*:

1. Redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Aquandic Humicryods**

CCCC. Other Humicryods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Humicryods**

CCCD. Other Humicryods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Humicryods**

CCCE. Other Humicryods that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Humicryods**

CCCF. Other Humicryods.

**Typic Humicryods**

### Placocryods

**Key to Subgroups**

CCAA. Placocryods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Placocryods**

CCAB. Other Placocryods that have 6.0 percent or more organic carbon in a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

**Humic Placocryods**

CCAC. Other Placocryods.

**Typic Placocryods**

## Gelods

### Key to Great Groups

CBA. Gelods that have 6.0 percent or more organic carbon throughout a layer 10 cm or more thick within the spodic horizon.

**Humigelods**, p. 255

CBB. Other Gelods.

**Haplogelods**, p. 255

### Haplogelods

**Key to Subgroups**

CBBA. Haplogelods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplogelods**

CBBB. Other Haplogelods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Haplogelods**

CBBC. Other Haplogelods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplogelods**

CBBD. Other Haplogelods.

**Typic Haplogelods**

### Humigelods

**Key to Subgroups**

CBAA. Humigelods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Humigelods**

CBAB. Other Humigelods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Humigelods**

CBAC. Other Humigelods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Humigelods**

CBAD. Other Humigelods.

**Typic Humigelods**

# Humods

## Key to Great Groups

CDA. Humods that have a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in 50 percent or more of each pedon.
**Placohumods**, p. 256

CDB. Other Humods that have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Durihumods**, p. 256

CDC. Other Humods that have a fragipan with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Fragihumods**, p. 256

CDD. Other Humods.
**Haplohumods**, p. 256

## Durihumods

### Key to Subgroups

CDBA. Durihumods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Andic Durihumods**

CDBB. Other Durihumods.
**Typic Durihumods**

## Fragihumods

### Key to Subgroups

CDCA. All Fragihumods (provisionally).
**Typic Fragihumods**

## Haplohumods

### Key to Subgroups

CDDA. Haplohumods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Lithic Haplohumods**

CDDB. Other Haplohumods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Andic Haplohumods**

CDDC. Other Haplohumods that have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all of the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.
**Plagganthreptic Haplohumods**

CDDD. Other Haplohumods.
**Typic Haplohumods**

## Placohumods

### Key to Subgroups

CDAA. Placohumods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.
**Andic Placohumods**

CDAB. Other Placohumods.
**Typic Placohumods**

# Orthods

## Key to Great Groups

CEA. Orthods that have, in 50 percent or more of each pedon, a placic horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Placorthods**, p. 259

CEB. Other Orthods that have, in 90 percent or more of each pedon, a cemented soil layer that does not slake in water after air drying and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Durorthods**, p. 257

CEC. Other Orthods that have a fragipan with its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.
**Fragiorthods**, p. 257

CED. Other Orthods that have less than 0.10 percent iron (by ammonium oxalate) in 75 percent or more of the spodic horizon.
**Alorthods**, p. 257

CEE. Other Orthods.
**Haplorthods**, p. 258

## Alorthods

**Key to Subgroups**

CEDA. Alorthods that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Alorthods**

CEDB. Other Alorthods that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm; *and*
2. An argillic or kandic horizon below the spodic horizon.

**Arenic Ultic Alorthods**

CEDC. Other Alorthods that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 75 to 125 cm.

**Arenic Alorthods**

CEDD. Other Alorthods that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 125 cm or more; *and*
2. In 10 percent or more of each pedon, less than 3.0 percent organic carbon in the upper 2 cm of the spodic horizon.

**Entic Grossarenic Alorthods**

CEDE. Other Alorthods that have, in 10 percent or more of each pedon, less than 3.0 percent organic carbon in the upper 2 cm of the spodic horizon.

**Entic Alorthods**

CEDF. Other Alorthods that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a spodic horizon at a depth of 125 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Alorthods**

CEDG. Other Alorthods that have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all of the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

**Plagganthreptic Alorthods**

CEDH. Other Alorthods that have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

**Alfic Alorthods**

CEDI. Other Alorthods that have an argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Ultic Alorthods**

CEDJ. Other Alorthods.

**Typic Alorthods**

## Durorthods

**Key to Subgroups**

CEBA. Durorthods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Durorthods**

CEBB. Other Durorthods.

**Typic Durorthods**

## Fragiorthods

**Key to Subgroups**

CECA. Fragiorthods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Fragiorthods**

CECB. Other Fragiorthods that:

1. Are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:
   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
   b. 30 or more cumulative days; *and*
2. Have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

**Alfic Oxyaquic Fragiorthods**

CECC. Other Fragiorthods that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Fragiorthods**

CECD. Other Fragiorthods that have a surface horizon 30 cm or more thick that meets all of the requirements for a plaggen epipedon except thickness.

**Plagganthreptic Fragiorthods**

CECE. Other Fragiorthods that have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

**Alfic Fragiorthods**

CECF. Other Fragiorthods that have an argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Ultic Fragiorthods**

CECG. Other Fragiorthods that have a spodic horizon that has *one* of the following:

1. A texture of very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, or finer; *and*

   a. A thickness of 10 cm or less; *and*

   b. A weighted average of less than 1.2 percent organic carbon; *and*

   c. Within the upper 7.5 cm, *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample); *or*

2. A texture of loamy fine sand, fine sand, or coarser and *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

**Entic Fragiorthods**

CECH. Other Fragiorthods.

**Typic Fragiorthods**

## Haplorthods

### Key to Subgroups

CEEA. Haplorthods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and either*

1. A spodic horizon with a texture of very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, or finer; *and*

   a. A thickness of 10 cm or less; *and*

   b. A weighted average of less than 1.2 percent organic carbon; *and*

   c. Within the upper 7.5 cm, *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample); *or*

2. A spodic horizon with a texture of loamy fine sand, fine sand, or coarser and *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

**Entic Lithic Haplorthods**

CEEB. Other Haplorthods that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplorthods**

CEEC. Other Haplorthods that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. Redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fragiaquic Haplorthods**

CEED. Other Haplorthods that have *both*:

1. Redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

**Aqualfic Haplorthods**

CEEE. Other Haplorthods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and either*

1. A spodic horizon with a texture of very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, or finer; *and*

   a. A thickness of 10 cm or less; *and*

   b. A weighted average of less than 1.2 percent organic carbon; *and*

   c. Within the upper 7.5 cm, *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample); *or*

2. A spodic horizon with a texture of loamy fine sand, fine sand, or coarser and *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

**Aquentic Haplorthods**

CEEF. Other Haplorthods that have redoximorphic features in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplorthods**

CEEG. Other Haplorthods that have:

1. Within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part; *and*

2. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Alfic Oxyaquic Haplorthods**

CEEH. Other Haplorthods that have:

1. Within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon; *and*

2. Saturation with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Ultic Haplorthods**

CEEI. Other Haplorthods that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Haplorthods**

CEEJ.Other Haplorthods that have *both:*

1. Saturation with water in 1 or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days; *and*

2. Below the spodic horizon but not below an argillic horizon, lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Oxyaquic Haplorthods**

CEEK. Other Haplorthods that, below the spodic horizon but not below an argillic horizon, have lamellae (two or more) within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lamellic Haplorthods**

CEEL. Other Haplorthods that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplorthods**

CEEM. Other Haplorthods that have andic soil properties throughout horizons that have a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 75 cm either of the mineral soil surface or of the top of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower.

**Andic Haplorthods**

CEEN. Other Haplorthods that have, within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface, an argillic or kandic horizon that has a base saturation of 35 percent or more (by sum of cations) in some part.

**Alfic Haplorthods**

CEEO. Other Haplorthods that have an argillic or kandic horizon within 200 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Ultic Haplorthods**

CEEP. Other Haplorthods that have a spodic horizon that has *one* of the following:

1. A texture of very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, or finer; *and*

   a. A thickness of 10 cm or less; *and*

   b. A weighted average of less than 1.2 percent organic carbon; *and*

   c. Within the upper 7.5 cm, *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample); *or*

2. A texture of loamy fine sand, fine sand, or coarser and *either or both* a moist color value or chroma of 4 or more (crushed and smoothed sample) in the upper 2.5 cm.

**Entic Haplorthods**

CEEQ. Other Haplorthods.

**Typic Haplorthods**

## Placorthods

### Key to Subgroups

CEAA. All Placorthods (provisionally).

**Typic Placorthods**

# CHAPTER 15

# *Ultisols*

## Key to Suborders

HA. Ultisols that have aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface and *one or both* of the following:

1. Redoximorphic features in all layers between either the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 40 cm and *one* of the following within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon:

   a. Redox concentrations and 50 percent or more redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less either on faces of peds or in the matrix; *or*

   b. 50 percent or more redox depletions with chroma of 1 or less either on faces of peds or in the matrix; *or*

   c. Distinct or prominent redox concentrations and 50 percent or more hue of 2.5Y or 5Y in the matrix and also a thermic, isothermic, or warmer soil temperature regime; *or*

2. Within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, enough active ferrous iron to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquults**, p. 261

HB. Other Ultisols that have *one or both* of the following:

1. 0.9 percent (by weighted average) or more organic carbon in the upper 15 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon; *or*

2. 12 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 100 cm.

**Humults**, p. 265

HC. Other Ultisols that have a udic moisture regime.

**Udults**, p. 268

HD. Other Ultisols that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustults**, p. 276

HE. Other Ultisols.

**Xerults**, p. 279

## Aquults

### Key to Great Groups

HAA. Aquults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthaquults**, p. 265

HAB. Other Aquults that have a fragipan with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiaquults**, p. 263

HAC. Other Aquults that have an abrupt textural change between the ochric epipedon or albic horizon and the argillic or kandic horizon *and* have 0.4 cm/hr or slower (moderately low or lower) saturated hydraulic conductivity in the argillic or kandic horizon.

**Albaquults**, p. 262

HAD. Other Aquults that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Have a kandic horizon; *and*

3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

   a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

   b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) clay depletions on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Kandiaquults**, p. 263

HAE. Other Aquults that have a kandic horizon.

**Kanhaplaquults**, p. 263

HAF. Other Aquults that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) clay depletions on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Paleaquults**, p. 264

HAG. Other Aquults that have an umbric or mollic epipedon.

**Umbraquults**, p. 265

HAH. Other Aquults that have episaturation.

**Epiaquults**, p. 262

HAI. Other Aquults.

**Endoaquults**, p. 262

## Albaquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HACA. Albaquults that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Albaquults**

HACB. Other Albaquults that have a kandic horizon.

**Kandic Albaquults**

HACC. Other Albaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Albaquults**

HACD. Other Albaquults.

**Typic Albaquults**

## Endoaquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HAIA. Endoaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Endoaquults**

HAIB. Other Endoaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Endoaquults**

HAIC. Other Endoaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Endoaquults**

HAID. Other Endoaquults.

**Typic Endoaquults**

## Epiaquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HAHA. Epiaquults that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Epiaquults**

HAHB. Other Epiaquults that have:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Fragic Epiaquults**

HAHC. Other Epiaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Epiaquults**

HAHD. Other Epiaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the

mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Epiaquults**

HAHE. Other Epiaquults that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Epiaquults**

HAHF. Other Epiaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Epiaquults**

HAHG. Other Epiaquults.

**Typic Epiaquults**

## Fragiaquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HABA. Fragiaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and the fragipan.

**Aeric Fragiaquults**

HABB. Other Fragiaquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Fragiaquults**

HABC. Other Fragiaquults that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Umbric Fragiaquults**

HABD. Other Fragiaquults.

**Typic Fragiaquults**

## Kandiaquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HADA. Kandiaquults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7, plus 1N KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Acraquoxic Kandiaquults**

HADB. Other Kandiaquults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Kandiaquults**

HADC. Other Kandiaquults that:

1. Have a mollic or umbric epipedon; *and*

2. Have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Umbric Kandiaquults**

HADD. Other Kandiaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Kandiaquults**

HADE. Other Kandiaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Kandiaquults**

HADF. Other Kandiaquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiaquults**

HADG. Other Kandiaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Kandiaquults**

HADH. Other Kandiaquults that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Umbric Kandiaquults**

HADI. Other Kandiaquults.

**Typic Kandiaquults**

## Kanhaplaquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HAEA. Kanhaplaquults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

1. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0

g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

2. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

3. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

a. In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

b. [(Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Kanhaplaquults**

HAEB. Other Kanhaplaquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kanhaplaquults**

HAEC. Other Kanhaplaquults that:

1. Have a mollic or umbric epipedon; *and*

2. Have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Umbric Kanhaplaquults**

HAED. Other Kanhaplaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Kanhaplaquults**

HAEE. Other Kanhaplaquults that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Umbric Kanhaplaquults**

HAEF. Other Kanhaplaquults.

**Typic Kanhaplaquults**

## Paleaquults

### Key to Subgroups

HAFA. Paleaquults that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Paleaquults**

HAFB. Other Paleaquults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Paleaquults**

HAFC. Other Paleaquults that:

1. Have a mollic or umbric epipedon; *and*

2. Have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Umbric Paleaquults**

HAFD. Other Paleaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Paleaquults**

HAFE. Other Paleaquults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Paleaquults**

HAFF. Other Paleaquults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Paleaquults**

HAFG. Other Paleaquults that have 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or more in one or more horizons between either the A or Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm.

**Aeric Paleaquults**

HAFH. Other Paleaquults that have a mollic or umbric epipedon.

**Umbric Paleaquults**

HAFI. Other Paleaquults.

**Typic Paleaquults**

## Plinthaquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HAAA. Plinthaquults that have a kandic horizon or a CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay in 50 percent or more (by volume) of the argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick or of its upper 100 cm.

**Kandic Plinthaquults**

HAAB. Other Plinthaquults.

**Typic Plinthaquults**

## Umbraquults

**Key to Subgroups**

HAGA. Umbraquults that have 5 to 50 percent (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Umbraquults**

HAGB. Other Umbraquults.

**Typic Umbraquults**

# Humults

## Key to Great Groups

HBA. Humults that have a sombric horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sombrihumults**, p. 268

HBB. Other Humults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthohumults**, p. 268

HBC. Other Humults that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Have a kandic horizon; *and*
3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

   a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

   b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Kandihumults**, p. 266

HBD. Other Humults that have a kandic horizon.

**Kanhaplohumults**, p. 267

HBE. Other Humults that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

   a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

   b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Palehumults**, p. 267

HBF. Other Humults.

**Haplohumults**, p. 265

## Haplohumults

**Key to Subgroups**

HBFA. Haplohumults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplohumults**

HBFB. Other Haplohumults that have *both*:

1. In one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*
2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Aquandic Haplohumults**

HBFC. Other Haplohumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplohumults**

HBFD. Other Haplohumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within

75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haplohumults**

HBFE. Other Haplohumults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Haplohumults**

HBFF. Other Haplohumults that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Haplohumults**

HBFG. Other Haplohumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Haplohumults**

HBFH. Other Haplohumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Haplohumults**

HBFI. Other Haplohumults.

**Typic Haplohumults**

## Kandihumults

### Key to Subgroups

HBCA. Kandihumults that meet *all* of the following:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, have a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*
2. In one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, have redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and hue that is 10YR or yellower and becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
3. In normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:
   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Andic Ombroaquic Kandihumults**

HBCB. Other Kandihumults that have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*
2. An ustic moisture regime.

**Ustandic Kandihumults**

HBCC. Other Kandihumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kandihumults**

HBCD. Other Kandihumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandihumults**

HBCE. Other Kandihumults that:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and hue that is 10YR or yellower and becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. In normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:
   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Ombroaquic Kandihumults**

HBCF. Other Kandihumults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandihumults**

HBCG. Other Kandihumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Kandihumults**

HBCH. Other Kandihumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Kandihumults**

HBCI. Other Kandihumults that have an anthropic epipedon.

**Anthropic Kandihumults**

HBCJ. Other Kandihumults.

**Typic Kandihumults**

## Kanhaplohumults

### Key to Subgroups

HBDA. Kanhaplohumults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kanhaplohumults**

HBDB. Other Kanhaplohumults that have *both*:

1. An ustic moisture regime; *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Ustandic Kanhaplohumults**

HBDC. Other Kanhaplohumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kanhaplohumults**

HBDD. Other Kanhaplohumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kanhaplohumults**

HBDE. Other Kanhaplohumults that:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and hue that is 10YR or yellower and becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Ombroaquic Kanhaplohumults**

HBDF. Other Kanhaplohumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Kanhaplohumults**

HBDG. Other Kanhaplohumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Kanhaplohumults**

HBDH. Other Kanhaplohumults that have an anthropic epipedon.

**Anthropic Kanhaplohumults**

HBDI. Other Kanhaplohumults.

**Typic Kanhaplohumults**

## Palehumults

### Key to Subgroups

HBEA. Palehumults that have *both*:

1. In one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Aquandic Palehumults**

HBEB. Other Palehumults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Palehumults**

HBEC. Other Palehumults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Palehumults**

HBED. Other Palehumults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Palehumults**

HBEE. Other Palehumults that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*
2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Palehumults**

HBEF. Other Palehumults that have an ustic moisture regime.

**Ustic Palehumults**

HBEG. Other Palehumults that have a xeric moisture regime.

**Xeric Palehumults**

HBEH. Other Palehumults.

**Typic Palehumults**

### Plinthohumults

**Key to Subgroups**

HBBA. All Plinthohumults.

**Typic Plinthohumults**

### Sombrihumults

**Key to Subgroups**

HBAA. All Sombrihumults.

**Typic Sombrihumults**

## Udults

### Key to Great Groups

HCA. Udults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthudults**, p. 275

HCB. Other Udults that have a fragipan with an upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Fragiudults**, p. 268

HCC. Other Udults that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Have a kandic horizon; *and*
3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

   a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

   b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Kandiudults**, p. 270

HCD. Other Udults that have a kandic horizon.

**Kanhapludults**, p. 272

HCE. Other Udults that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*
2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

   a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

   b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Paleudults**, p. 273

HCF. Other Udults that have *both*:

1. An epipedon that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less throughout; *and*
2. In all subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

   c. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodudults**, p. 275

HCG. Other Udults.

**Hapludults**, p. 269

### Fragiudults

**Key to Subgroups**

HCBA. Fragiudults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Fragiudults**

HCBB. Other Fragiudults that have *both* of the following:

1. In one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also

aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthaquic Fragiudults**

HCBC. Other Fragiudults that meet *both* of the following:

1. Meet *one or more* of the following:

a. Have a glossic horizon above the fragipan; *or*

b. Do not have, above the fragipan, an argillic or kandic horizon that has clay films on both vertical and horizontal surfaces of any structural aggregates; *or*

c. Between the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan, have one or more horizons with 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or less and with a clay content 3 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) lower than that in both the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan; *and*

2. In one or more horizons within 40 cm of the mineral soil surface, have redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Glossaquic Fragiudults**

HCBD. Other Fragiudults that have, in one or more subhorizons above the fragipan and within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with chroma of 2 or less and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Fragiudults**

HCBE. Other Fragiudults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Fragiudults**

HCBF. Other Fragiudults that meet *one or more* of the following:

1. Have a glossic horizon above the fragipan; *or*

2. Do not have, above the fragipan, an argillic or kandic horizon that has clay films on both vertical and horizontal surfaces of any structural aggregates; *or*

3. Between the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan, have one or more horizons with 50 percent or more chroma of 3 or less and with a clay content 3 percent or more (absolute, in the fine-earth fraction) lower than that in both the argillic or kandic horizon and the fragipan.

**Glossic Fragiudults**

HCBG. Other Fragiudults that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in *either*:

1. An Ap horizon that is 18 cm or more thick; *or*

2. The surface layer after mixing of the upper 18 cm.

**Humic Fragiudults**

HCBH. Other Fragiudults.

**Typic Fragiudults**

## Hapludults

### Key to Subgroups

HCGA. Hapludults that have *either or both*:

1. In each pedon, a discontinuous lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In each pedon, a discontinuous argillic horizon that is interrupted by ledges of bedrock.

**Lithic-Ruptic-Entic Hapludults**

HCGB. Other Hapludults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Hapludults**

HCGC. Other Hapludults that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Hapludults**

HCGD. Other Hapludults that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fragiaquic Hapludults**

HCGE. Other Hapludults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. In one or more subhorizons within the upper 60 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Arenic Hapludults**

HCGF. Other Hapludults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 60 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Hapludults**

HCGG. Other Hapludults that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Hapludults**

HCGH. Other Hapludults that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Hapludults**

HCGI. Other Hapludults that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

   a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

   b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Hapludults**

HCGJ. Other Hapludults that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Hapludults**

HCGK. Other Hapludults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Hapludults**

HCGL. Other Hapludults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Hapludults**

HCGM. Other Hapludults that have:

1. No densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. An argillic horizon 25 cm or less thick.

**Inceptic Hapludults**

HCGN. Other Hapludults that have a color value, moist, of 3 or less and a color value, dry, of 5 or less (crushed and smoothed sample) in *either*:

1. An Ap horizon that is 18 cm or more thick; *or*

2. The surface layer after mixing of the upper 18 cm.

**Humic Hapludults**

HCGO. Other Hapludults.

**Typic Hapludults**

## Kandiudults

### Key to Subgroups

HCCA. Kandiudults that have:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

3. In one or more layers either within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface or, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm

results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Arenic Plinthaquic Kandiudults**

HCCB. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. In one or more layers either within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface or, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Arenic Kandiudults**

HCCC. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Kandiudults**

HCCD. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. In all subhorizons in the upper 75 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

   a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

   b. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

   c. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Arenic Rhodic Kandiudults**

HCCE. Other Kandiudults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Kandiudults**

HCCF. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Grossarenic Plinthic Kandiudults**

HCCG. Other Kandiudults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Kandiudults**

HCCH. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. An ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7, plus 1N KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Acrudoxic Plinthic Kandiudults**

HCCI. Other Kandiudults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7, plus 1N KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Acrudoxic Kandiudults**

HCCJ. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Kandiudults**

HCCK. Other Kandiudults that have *both*:

1. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or more* of the following:

   a. A fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al

plus 1/2 Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *or*

b. More than 35 percent (by volume) fragments coarser than 2.0 mm, of which more than 66 percent is cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments; *or*

c. A fine-earth fraction containing 30 percent or more particles 0.02 to 2.0 mm in diameter; *and*

(1) In the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, 5 percent or more volcanic glass; *and*

(2) [(Al plus 1/2 Fe, percent extracted by ammonium oxalate) times 60] plus the volcanic glass (percent) is equal to 30 or more.

**Aquandic Kandiudults**

HCCL. Other Kandiudults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus 1/2 Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kandiudults**

HCCM. Other Kandiudults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandiudults**

HCCN. Other Kandiudults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiudults**

HCCO. Other Kandiudults that:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and hue that is 10YR or yellower and becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Ombroaquic Kandiudults**

HCCP. Other Kandiudults that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Kandiudults**

HCCQ. Other Kandiudults that have a sombric horizon within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sombric Kandiudults**

HCCR. Other Kandiudults that have, in all subhorizons in the upper 75 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kandiudults**

HCCS. Other Kandiudults.

**Typic Kandiudults**

## Kanhapludults

### Key to Subgroups

HCDA. Kanhapludults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kanhapludults**

HCDB. Other Kanhapludults that have *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Kanhapludults**

HCDC. Other Kanhapludults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Kanhapludults**

HCDD. Other Kanhapludults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Kanhapludults**

HCDE. Other Kanhapludults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7, plus 1N KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Acrudoxic Kanhapludults**

HCDF. Other Kanhapludults that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fragiaquic Kanhapludults**

HCDG. Other Kanhapludults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 $g/cm^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kanhapludults**

HCDH. Other Kanhapludults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kanhapludults**

HCDI. Other Kanhapludults that:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and hue that is 10YR or yellower and becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Ombroaquic Kanhapludults**

HCDJ. Other Kanhapludults that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Kanhapludults**

HCDK. Other Kanhapludults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kanhapludults**

HCDL. Other Kanhapludults that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Kanhapludults**

HCDM. Other Kanhapludults that have, in all subhorizons in the upper 50 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if it is less than 50 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kanhapludults**

HCDN. Other Kanhapludults.

**Typic Kanhapludults**

## Paleudults

### Key to Subgroups

HCEA. Paleudults that have *one or both* of the following:

1. Cracks within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface that are 5 mm or more wide through a thickness of 30 cm or more for some time in normal years and slickensides or wedge-shaped aggregates in a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 125 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. A linear extensibility of 6.0 cm or more between the mineral soil surface and either a depth of 100 cm or a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, whichever is shallower.

**Vertic Paleudults**

HCEB. Other Paleudults that have a horizon 5 cm or more thick, either below an Ap horizon or at a depth of 18 cm or more from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, that has *one or more* of the following:

1. In 25 percent or more of each pedon, cementation by organic matter and aluminum, with or without iron; *or*

2. Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling 0.25 or more, and half that amount or less in an overlying horizon; *or*

3. An ODOE value of 0.12 or more, and a value half as high or lower in an overlying horizon.

**Spodic Paleudults**

HCEC. Other Paleudults that have:

1. In one or more layers either within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface or, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more; *and*

3. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthaquic Paleudults**

HCED. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon that is 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In one or more layers either within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface or, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Arenic Paleudults**

HCEE. Other Paleudults that have anthraquic conditions.

**Anthraquic Paleudults**

HCEF. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In one or more layers either within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface or, if the chroma throughout the upper 75 cm results from uncoated sand grains, within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Plinthaquic Paleudults**

HCEG. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. Fragic soil properties:

   a. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

   b. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick; *and*

2. In one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Fragiaquic Paleudults**

HCEH. Other Paleudults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Paleudults**

HCEI. Other Paleludults that in normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Paleudults**

HCEJ. Other Paleudults that have an argillic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, and above these horizons there are *either*:

a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon); *or*

b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Paleudults**

HCEK. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Paleudults**

HCEL. Other Paleudults that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Paleudults**

HCEM. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Grossarenic Plinthic Paleudults**

HCEN. Other Paleudults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Paleudults**

HCEO. Other Paleudults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm; *and*

2. In all subhorizons in the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

b. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

c. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Arenic Rhodic Paleudults**

HCEP. Other Paleudults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Paleudults**

HCEQ. Other Paleudults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Paleudults**

HCER. Other Paleudults that have fragic soil properties:

1. In 30 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. In 60 percent or more of the volume of a layer 15 cm or more thick.

**Fragic Paleudults**

HCES. Other Paleudults that have, in all subhorizons in the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Paleudults**

HCET. Other Paleudults.

**Typic Paleudults**

## Plinthudults

**Key to Subgroups**

HCAA. All Plinthudults.

**Typic Plinthudults**

## Rhodudults

**Key to Subgroups**

HCFA. Rhodudults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Rhodudults**

HCFB. Other Rhodudults that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Rhodudults**

HCFC. Other Rhodudults.

**Typic Rhodudults**

# Ustults

## Key to Great Groups

HDA. Ustults that have one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface in which plinthite either forms a continuous phase or constitutes one-half or more of the volume.

**Plinthustults**, p. 279

HDB. Other Ustults that:

1. Do not have a dense, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Have a kandic horizon; *and*

3. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Kandiustults**, p. 277

HDC. Other Ustults that have a kandic horizon.

**Kanhaplustults**, p. 278

HDD. Other Ustults that:

1. Do not have a dense, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Paleustults**, p. 279

HDE. Other Ustults that have *both*:

1. An epipedon that has a color value, moist, of 3 or less throughout; *and*

2. In all subhorizons in the upper 100 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 100 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

a. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

b. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

c. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodustults**, p. 279

HDF. Other Ustults.

**Haplustults**, p. 276

## Haplustults

### Key to Subgroups

HDFA. Haplustults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplustults**

HDFB. Other Haplustults that have a petroferric contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petroferric Haplustults**

HDFC. Other Haplustults that have, in one or more layers both within the upper 12.5 cm of the argillic horizon and within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haplustults**

HDFD. Other Haplustults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more below the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Haplustults**

HDFE. Other Haplustults that:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and hue that is 10YR or yellower and becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Ombroaquic Haplustults**

HDFF. Other Haplustults that have 5 percent or more (by

volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Haplustults**

HDFG. Other Haplustults that have a CEC (by 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7) of less than 24 cmol(+)/kg clay in 50 percent or more of the entire argillic horizon if less than 100 cm thick or of its upper 100 cm.

**Kanhaplic Haplustults**

HDFH. Other Haplustults.

**Typic Haplustults**

## Kandiustults

### Key to Subgroups

HDBA. Kandiustults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7, plus 1N KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Acrustoxic Kandiustults**

HDBB. Other Kandiustults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kandiustults**

HDBC. Other Kandiustults that have *both*:

1. A sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more; *and*

2. 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Arenic Plinthic Kandiustults**

HDBD. Other Kandiustults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 cm or more.

**Arenic Kandiustults**

HDBE. Other Kandiustults that have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

   a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that is dry in some part for 135 or fewer of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udandic Kandiustults**

HDBF. Other Kandiustults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kandiustults**

HDBG. Other Kandiustults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kandiustults**

HDBH. Other Kandiustults that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A thermic, mesic, or colder soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for more than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

   a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

   b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Kandiustults**

HDBI. Other Kandiustults that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for 135 or fewer of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil

temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Kandiustults**

HDBJ. Other Kandiustults that have, in all subhorizons in the upper 50 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kandiustults**

HDBK. Other Kandiustults.

**Typic Kandiustults**

## Kanhaplustults

### Key to Subgroups

HDCA. Kanhaplustults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Kanhaplustults**

HDCB. Other Kanhaplustults that have an ECEC of 1.5 cmol(+)/kg clay or less (sum of bases extracted with 1N $NH_4OAc$ pH 7, plus 1N KCl-extractable Al) in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Acrustoxic Kanhaplustults**

HDCC. Other Kanhaplustults that have, in one or more layers within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Kanhaplustults**

HDCD. Other Kanhaplustults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of a kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Kanhaplustults**

HDCE. Other Kanhaplustults that have *both*:

1. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0; *and*

2. When neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, *either*:

   a. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for 135 or fewer of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

   b. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udandic Kanhaplustults**

HDCF. Other Kanhaplustults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Kanhaplustults**

HDCG. Other Kanhaplustults that have 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite in one or more horizons within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Plinthic Kanhaplustults**

HDCH. Other Kanhaplustults that:

1. Have, in one or more horizons within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, redox concentrations, a color value, moist, of 4 or more, and hue that is 10YR or yellower and becomes redder with increasing depth within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In normal years are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface for *either or both*:

   a. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

   b. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Ombroaquic Kanhaplustults**

HDCI. Other Kanhaplustults that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A thermic, mesic, or colder soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for more than four-tenths of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years:

a. Is moist in some or all parts for fewer than 90 consecutive days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C; *and*

b. Is dry in some part for six-tenths or more of the cumulative days per year when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C.

**Aridic Kanhaplustults**

HDCJ. Other Kanhaplustults that, when neither irrigated nor fallowed to store moisture, have *either*:

1. A mesic or thermic soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some part for 135 or fewer of the cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 5 °C; *or*

2. A hyperthermic, isomesic, or warmer *iso* soil temperature regime and a moisture control section that in normal years is dry in some or all parts for fewer than 120 cumulative days per year when the temperature at a depth of 50 cm below the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Udic Kanhaplustults**

HDCK. Other Kanhaplustults that have, in all subhorizons in the upper 50 cm of the kandic horizon or throughout the entire kandic horizon if it is less than 50 cm thick, more than 50 percent colors that have *all* of the following:

1. Hue of 2.5YR or redder; *and*

2. A value, moist, of 3 or less; *and*

3. A dry value no more than 1 unit higher than the moist value.

**Rhodic Kanhaplustults**

HDCL. Other Kanhaplustults.

**Typic Kanhaplustults**

## Paleustults

**Key to Subgroups**

HDDA. All Paleustults.

**Typic Paleustults**

## Plinthustults

**Key to Subgroups**

HDAA. Plinthustults that have:

1. A densic, lithic, paralithic, or petroferric contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *or*

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

a. With increasing depth, a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *and*

b. Less than 5 percent (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *or*, below that layer, a clay increase of less than 3 percent (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Haplic Plinthustults**

HDAB. Other Plinthustults.

**Typic Plinthustults**

## Rhodustults

**Key to Subgroups**

HDEA. Rhodustults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Rhodustults**

HDEB. Other Rhodustults that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic horizon or throughout the entire argillic horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Rhodustults**

HDEC. Other Rhodustults.

**Typic Rhodustults**

# Xerults

## Key to Great Groups

HEA. Xerults that:

1. Do not have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. Within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface, *either*:

a. With increasing depth, do not have a clay decrease of 20 percent or more (relative) from the maximum clay content; *or*

b. Have 5 percent or more (by volume) skeletans on faces of peds or 5 percent or more (by volume) plinthite, or both, in the layer that has a 20 percent lower clay content *and*, below that layer, a clay increase of 3 percent or more (absolute) in the fine-earth fraction.

**Palexerults**, p. 280

HEB. Other Xerults.

**Haploxerults**, p. 280

## Haploxerults

### Key to Subgroups

HEBA. Haploxerults that have *both*:

1. A lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. In each pedon, a discontinuous argillic or kandic horizon that is interrupted by ledges of bedrock.

**Lithic Ruptic-Inceptic Haploxerults**

HEBB. Other Haploxerults that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haploxerults**

HEBC. Other Haploxerults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Haploxerults**

HEBD. Other Haploxerults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Haploxerults**

HEBE. Other Haploxerults that have an argillic or kandic horizon that:

1. Consists entirely of lamellae; *or*

2. Is a combination of two or more lamellae and one or more subhorizons with a thickness of 7.5 to 20 cm, each layer with an overlying eluvial horizon; *or*

3. Consists of one or more subhorizons that are more than 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon, andabove these horizons there are *either*:

   a. Two or more lamellae with a combined thickness of 5 cm or more (that may or may not be part of the argillic or kandic horizon); *or*

   b. A combination of lamellae (that may or may not be part of the argillic or kandic horizon) and one or more parts of the argillic or kandic horizon 7.5 to 20 cm thick, each with an overlying eluvial horizon.

**Lamellic Haploxerults**

HEBF. Other Haploxerults that have a sandy particle-size class throughout the upper 75 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon or throughout the entire horizon if it is less than 75 cm thick.

**Psammentic Haploxerults**

HEBG. Other Haploxerults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or kandic horizon at a depth of 50 to 100 cm.

**Arenic Haploxerults**

HEBH. Other Haploxerults that have a sandy or sandy-skeletal particle-size class throughout a layer extending from the mineral soil surface to the top of an argillic or kandic horizon at a depth of 100 cm or more.

**Grossarenic Haploxerults**

HEBI. Other Haploxerults.

**Typic Haploxerults**

## Palexerults

### Key to Subgroups

HEAA. Palexerults that have *both*:

1. In one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations, and also aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage); *and*

2. Throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Aquandic Palexerults**

HEAB. Other Palexerults that have, in one or more subhorizons within the upper 25 cm of the argillic or kandic horizon, redox depletions with a color value, moist, of 4 or more and chroma of 2 or less, accompanied by redox concentrations and by aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage).

**Aquic Palexerults**

HEAC. Other Palexerults that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 18 cm or more within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface, a fine-earth fraction with both a bulk

density of 1.0 g/cm$^3$ or less, measured at 33 kPa water retention, and Al plus $^1/_2$ Fe percentages (by ammonium oxalate) totaling more than 1.0.

**Andic Palexerults**

HEAD. Other Palexerults.

**Typic Palexerults**

# CHAPTER 16

# *Vertisols*

## Key to Suborders

FA. Vertisols that have, in one or more horizons within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *one or both* of the following:

1. In more than half of each pedon, either on faces of peds or in the matrix if peds are absent, 50 percent or more chroma of *either*:

   a. 2 or less if redox concentrations are present; *or*

   b. 1 or less; *or*

2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquerts**, p. 283

FB. Other Vertisols that have a cryic soil temperature regime.

**Cryerts**, p. 287

FC. Other Vertisols that in normal years have *both*:

1. A thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime; *and*

2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks that remain *both*:

   a. 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the summer solstice; *and*

   b. Closed for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the winter solstice.

**Xererts**, p. 293

FD. Other Vertisols that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain closed for less than 60 consecutive days during a period when the soil temperature at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface is higher than 8 °C.

**Torrerts**, p. 287

FE. Other Vertisols that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

**Usterts**, p. 290

FF. Other Vertisols.

**Uderts**, p. 289

## Aquerts

### Key to Great Groups

FAA. Aquerts that have within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface *either*:

1. A sulfuric horizon; *or*

2. Sulfidic materials.

**Sulfaquerts**, p. 287

FAB. Aquerts that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salaquerts**, p. 286

FAC. Other Aquerts that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Duraquerts**, p. 284

FAD. Other Aquerts that have a natric horizon or have an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 percent or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Natraquerts**, p. 286

FAE. Other Aquerts that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calciaquerts**, p. 284

FAF. Other Aquerts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. An electrical conductivity in the saturation extract of less than 4.0 dS/m at 25 °C; *and*

2. A pH value of 4.5 or less in 0.01 M $CaCl_2$ (5.0 or less in 1:1 water).

**Dystraquerts**, p. 284

FAG. Other Aquerts that have episaturation.

**Epiaquerts**, p. 286

FAH. Other Aquerts.

**Endoaquerts**, p. 285

## Calciaquerts

### Key to Subgroups

FAEA. Calciaquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or the upper boundary of a duripan if shallower, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:

   a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 2 or more and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Calciaquerts**

FAEB. Other Calciaquerts.

**Typic Calciaquerts**

## Duraquerts

### Key to Subgroups

FACA. Duraquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Duraquerts**

FACB. Other Duraquerts that have a thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain *both*:

1. 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the summer solstice; *and*

2. Closed for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the winter solstice.

**Xeric Duraquerts**

FACC. Other Duraquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

**Ustic Duraquerts**

FACD. Other Duraquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and either a depth of 75 cm or the upper boundary of the duripan if shallower, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:

   a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 2 or more and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Duraquerts**

FACE. Other Duraquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

**Chromic Duraquerts**

FACF. Other Duraquerts.

**Typic Duraquerts**

## Dystraquerts

### Key to Subgroups

FAFA. Dystraquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, jarosite concentrations and a pH value of 4.0 or less (1:1 water, air-dried slowly in shade).

**Sulfaqueptic Dystraquerts**

FAFB. Other Dystraquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Dystraquerts**

FAFC. Other Dystraquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

**Ustic Dystraquerts**

FAFD. Other Dystraquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:

   a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 2 or more and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Dystraquerts**

FAFE. Other Dystraquerts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Dystraquerts**

FAFF. Other Dystraquerts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Dystraquerts**

FAFG. Other Dystraquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

**Chromic Dystraquerts**

FAFH. Other Dystraquerts.

**Typic Dystraquerts**

## Endoaquerts

### Key to Subgroups

FAHA. Endoaquerts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Endoaquerts**

FAHB. Other Endoaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Endoaquerts**

FAHC. Other Endoaquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Endoaquerts**

FAHD. Other Endoaquerts that have a thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain *both*:

1. 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the summer solstice; *and*

2. Closed for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the winter solstice.

**Xeric Endoaquerts**

FAHE. Other Endoaquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

**Ustic Endoaquerts**

FAHF. Other Endoaquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:

   a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 2 or more and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Endoaquerts**

FAHG. Other Endoaquerts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Endoaquerts**

FAHH. Other Endoaquerts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Endoaquerts**

FAHI. Other Endoaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

**Chromic Endoaquerts**

FAGJ. Other Endoaquerts.

**Typic Endoaquerts**

## Epiaquerts

**Key to Subgroups**

FAGA. Epiaquerts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Epiaquerts**

FAGB. Other Epiaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Epiaquerts**

FAGC. Other Epiaquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Epiaquerts**

FAGD. Other Epiaquerts that have a thermic, mesic, or frigid soil temperature regime and that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain *both*:

1. 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the summer solstice; *and*

2. Closed for 60 or more consecutive days during the 90 days following the winter solstice.

**Xeric Epiaquerts**

FAGE. Other Epiaquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

**Ustic Epiaquerts**

FAGF. Other Epiaquerts that have, in one or more horizons between either an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and a depth of 75 cm, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. Hue of 2.5Y or redder and *either*:

   a. A color value, moist, of 6 or more and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, moist, of 5 or less and chroma of 2 or more; *or*

2. Hue of 5Y and chroma of 3 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 2 or more and no redox concentrations.

**Aeric Epiaquerts**

FAGG. Other Epiaquerts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Epiaquerts**

FAGH. Other Epiaquerts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Epiaquerts**

FAGI. Other Epiaquerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, *one or both* of the following in more than half of each pedon:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more.

**Chromic Epiaquerts**

FAGJ. Other Epiaquerts.

**Typic Epiaquerts**

## Natraquerts

**Key to Subgroups**

FADA. All Natraquerts.

**Typic Natraquerts**

## Salaquerts

**Key to Subgroups**

FABA. Salaquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Salaquerts**

FABB. Other Salaquerts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 90 or more cumulative days per year.

**Ustic Salaquerts**

FABC. Other Salaquerts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Salaquerts**

FABD. Other Salaquerts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Salaquerts**

FABE. Other Salaquerts that have, in one or more horizons

within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Salaquerts**

FABF. Other Salaquerts.

**Typic Salaquerts**

### Sulfaquerts

**Key to Subgroups**

FAAA. Sulfaquerts that have a salic horizon within 75 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salic Sulfaquerts**

FAAB. Other Sulfaquerts that do not have a sulfuric horizon within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Sulfic Sulfaquerts**

FAAC. Other Sulfaquerts.

**Typic Sulfaquerts**

## Cryerts

### Key to Great Groups

FBA. Cryerts that have 10 kg/m$^2$ or more organic carbon between the mineral soil surface and a depth of 50 cm.

**Humicryerts**, p. 287

FBB. Other Cryerts.

**Haplocryerts**, p. 287

### Haplocryerts

**Key to Subgroups**

FBBA. Haplocryerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Haplocryerts**

FBBB. Other Haplocryerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Haplocryerts**

FBBC. Other Haplocryerts.

**Typic Haplocryerts**

### Humicryerts

**Key to Subgroups**

FBAA. Humicryerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Humicryerts**

FBAB. Other Humicryerts.

**Typic Humicryerts**

## Torrerts

### Key to Great Groups

FDA. Torrerts that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Salitorrerts**, p. 288

FDB. Other Torrerts that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Gypsitorrerts**, p. 288

FDC. Other Torrerts that have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Calcitorrerts**, p. 287

FDD. Other Torrerts.

**Haplotorrerts**, p. 288

### Calcitorrerts

**Key to Subgroups**

FDCA. Calcitorrerts that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calcitorrerts**

FDCB. Other Calcitorrerts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Leptic Calcitorrerts**

FDCC. Other Calcitorrerts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth

fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Entic Calcitorrerts**

FDCD. Other Calcitorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Calcitorrerts**

FDCE. Other Calcitorrerts.

**Typic Calcitorrerts**

## Gypsitorrerts

### Key to Subgroups

FDBA. Gypsitorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Gypsitorrerts**

FDBB. Other Gypsitorrerts.

**Typic Gypsitorrerts**

## Haplotorrerts

### Key to Subgroups

FDDA. Haplotorrerts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Haplotorrerts**

FDDB. Other Haplotorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Haplotorrerts**

FDDC. Other Haplotorrerts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Leptic Haplotorrerts**

FDDD. Other Haplotorrerts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Entic Haplotorrerts**

FDDE. Other Haplotorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Haplotorrerts**

FDDF. Other Haplotorrerts.

**Typic Haplotorrerts**

## Salitorrerts

### Key to Subgroups

FDAA. Salitorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Salitorrerts**

FDAB. Other Salitorrerts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan or petrocalcic horizon, within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Leptic Salitorrerts**

FDAC. Other Salitorrerts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the soil surface.

**Entic Salitorrerts**

FDAD. Other Salitorrerts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Salitorrerts**

FDAE. Other Salitorrerts.

**Typic Salitorrerts**

# Uderts

## Key to Great Groups

FFA. Uderts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. An electrical conductivity in the saturation extract of less than 4.0 dS/m at 25 °C; *and*

2. A pH value of 4.5 or less in 0.01 M $CaCl_2$ (5.0 or less in saturated paste).

**Dystruderts**, p. 289

FFB. Other Uderts.

**Hapluderts**, p. 289

## Dystruderts

### Key to Subgroups

FFAA. Dystruderts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*

2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Dystruderts**

FFAB. Other Dystruderts that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for *either or both*:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Dystruderts**

FFAC. Other Dystruderts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Dystruderts**

FFAD. Other Dystruderts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Dystruderts**

FFAE. Other Dystruderts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Dystruderts**

FFAF. Other Dystruderts.

**Typic Dystruderts**

## Hapluderts

### Key to Subgroups

FFBA. Hapluderts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Hapluderts**

FFBB. Other Hapluderts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*

2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Hapluderts**

FFBC. Other Hapluderts that are saturated with water in one or more layers within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface in normal years for:

1. 20 or more consecutive days; *or*

2. 30 or more cumulative days.

**Oxyaquic Hapluderts**

FFBD. Other Hapluderts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Hapluderts**

FFBE. Other Hapluderts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Hapluderts**

FFBF. Other Hapluderts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Hapluderts**

FFBG. Other Hapluderts.

**Typic Hapluderts**

# Usterts

## Key to Great Groups

FEA. Usterts that have, throughout one or more horizons with a total thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, *both*:

1. An electrical conductivity in the saturation extract of less than 4.0 dS/m at 25 °C; *and*

2. A pH value of 4.5 or less in 0.01 M $CaCl_2$ (5.0 or less in saturated paste).

**Dystrusterts**, p. 290

FEB. Other Usterts that have a salic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Salusterts**, p. 292

FEC. Other Usterts that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsiusterts**, p. 291

FED. Other Usterts that have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calciusterts**, p. 290

FEE. Other Usterts.

**Haplusterts**, p. 291

## Calciusterts

### Key to Subgroups

FEDA. Calciusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calciusterts**

FEDB. Other Calciusterts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Calciusterts**

FEDC. Other Calciusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Calciusterts**

FEDD. Other Calciusterts that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calciusterts**

FEDE. Other Calciusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Calciusterts**

FEDF. Other Calciusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

**Udic Calciusterts**

FEDG. Other Calciusterts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Calciusterts**

FEDH. Other Calciusterts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Calciusterts**

FEDI. Other Calciusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Calciusterts**

FEDJ. Other Calciusterts.

**Typic Calciusterts**

## Dystrusterts

### Key to Subgroups

FEAA. Dystrusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Dystrusterts**

FEAB. Other Dystrusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*

2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Dystrusterts**

FEAC. Other Dystrusterts that, if not irrigated during the year,

have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Dystrusterts**

FEAD. Other Dystrusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days.

**Udic Dystrusterts**

FEAE. Other Dystrusterts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Dystrusterts**

FEAF. Other Dystrusterts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Dystrusterts**

FEAG. Other Dystrusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Dystrusterts**

FEAH. Other Dystrusterts.

**Typic Dystrusterts**

## Gypsiusterts

### Key to Subgroups

FECA. Gypsiusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Gypsiusterts**

FECB. Other Gypsiusterts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Gypsiusterts**

FECC. Other Gypsiusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Gypsiusterts**

FECD. Other Gypsiusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Gypsiusterts**

FECE. Other Gypsiusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

**Udic Gypsiusterts**

FECF. Other Gypsiusterts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan or petrocalcic horizon, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Gypsiusterts**

FECG. Other Gypsiusterts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Gypsiusterts**

FECH. Other Gypsiusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Gypsiusterts**

FECI. Other Gypsiusterts.

**Typic Gypsiusterts**

## Haplusterts

### Key to Subgroups

FEEA. Haplusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haplusterts**

FEEB. Other Haplusterts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Haplusterts**

FEEC. Other Haplusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Haplusterts**

FEED. Other Haplusterts that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Haplusterts**

FEEE. Other Haplusterts that have a gypsic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Gypsic Haplusterts**

FEEF. Other Haplusterts that have a calcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 150 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcic Haplusterts**

FEEG. Other Haplusterts that have *both*:

1. A densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Leptic Haplusterts**

FEEH. Other Haplusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Haplusterts**

FEEI. Other Haplusterts that have *both*:

1. A densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks in 6 or more out of 10 years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

**Leptic Udic Haplusterts**

FEEJ. Other Haplusterts that have *both*:

1. A layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface; *and*

2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

**Entic Udic Haplusterts**

FEEK. Other Haplusterts that have *both*:

1. In one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

   a. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

   b. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

   c. Chroma of 3 or more; *and*

2. If not irrigated during the year, cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

**Chromic Udic Haplusterts**

FEEL. Other Haplusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 150 cumulative days per year.

**Udic Haplusterts**

FEEM. Other Haplusterts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Haplusterts**

FEEN. Other Haplusterts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Haplusterts**

FEEO. Other Haplusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*

2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*

3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Haplusterts**

FEEP. Other Haplusterts.

**Typic Haplusterts**

## Salusterts

### Key to Subgroups

FEBA. Salusterts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Salusterts**

FEBB. Other Salusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Salusterts**

FEBC. Other Salusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Salusterts**

FEBD. Other Salusterts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that are 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 210 or more cumulative days per year.

**Aridic Salusterts**

FEBE. Other Salusterts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact, or the upper boundary of a duripan or petrocalcic horizon, within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Salusterts**

FEBF. Other Salusterts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Salusterts**

FEBG. Other Salusterts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Salusterts**

FEBH. Other Salusterts.

**Typic Salusterts**

# Xererts

## Key to Great Groups

FCA. Xererts that have a duripan that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Durixererts**, p. 293

FCB. Other Xererts that have a calcic or petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Calcixererts**, p. 293

FCC. Other Xererts.

**Haploxererts**, p. 294

## Calcixererts

### Key to Subgroups

FCBA. Calcixererts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Calcixererts**

FCBB. Other Calcixererts that have a petrocalcic horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Petrocalcic Calcixererts**

FCBC. Other Calcixererts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 180 or more consecutive days.

**Aridic Calcixererts**

FCBD. Other Calcixererts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Calcixererts**

FCBE. Other Calcixererts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Calcixererts**

FCBF. Other Calcixererts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Calcixererts**

FCBG. Other Calcixererts.

**Typic Calcixererts**

## Durixererts

### Key to Subgroups

FCAA. Durixererts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick above the duripan, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Durixererts**

FCAB. Other Durixererts that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Durixererts**

FCAC. Other Durixererts that have, in one or more horizons above the duripan, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Durixererts**

FCAD. Other Durixererts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more above the duripan, for 180 or more consecutive days.

**Aridic Durixererts**

FCAE. Other Durixererts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more above the duripan, for less than 90 consecutive days.

**Udic Durixererts**

FCAF. Other Durixererts that have a duripan that is not indurated in any subhorizon.

**Haplic Durixererts**

FCAG. Other Durixererts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Durixererts**

FCAH. Other Durixererts.

**Typic Durixererts**

## Haploxererts

### Key to Subgroups

FCCA. Haploxererts that have a lithic contact within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Lithic Haploxererts**

FCCB. Other Haploxererts that have, throughout a layer 15 cm or more thick within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an electrical conductivity of 15 dS/m or more (saturated paste) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Halic Haploxererts**

FCCC. Other Haploxererts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, an exchangeable sodium percentage of 15 or more (or a sodium adsorption ratio of 13 or more) for 6 or more months in normal years.

**Sodic Haploxererts**

FCCD. Other Haploxererts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for 180 or more consecutive days.

**Aridic Haploxererts**

FCCE. Other Haploxererts that have, in one or more horizons within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface, aquic conditions for some time in normal years (or artificial drainage) and *either*:

1. Redoximorphic features; *or*
2. Enough active ferrous iron ($Fe^{2+}$) to give a positive reaction to alpha,alpha-dipyridyl at a time when the soil is not being irrigated.

**Aquic Haploxererts**

FCCF. Other Haploxererts that, if not irrigated during the year, have cracks in normal years that remain 5 mm or more wide, through a thickness of 25 cm or more within 50 cm of the mineral soil surface, for less than 90 consecutive days.

**Udic Haploxererts**

FCCG. Other Haploxererts that have a densic, lithic, or paralithic contact within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Leptic Haploxererts**

FCCH. Other Haploxererts that have a layer 25 cm or more thick that contains less than 27 percent clay in its fine-earth fraction and has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface.

**Entic Haploxererts**

FCCI. Other Haploxererts that have, in one or more horizons within 30 cm of the mineral soil surface, 50 percent or more colors as follows:

1. A color value, moist, of 4 or more; *or*
2. A color value, dry, of 6 or more; *or*
3. Chroma of 3 or more.

**Chromic Haploxererts**

FCCJ. Other Haploxererts.

**Typic Haploxererts**

# CHAPTER 17

## *Family and Series Differentiae and Names*

Families and series serve purposes that are largely pragmatic, the series name is abstract, and the technical family name is descriptive. In this chapter the descriptive terms used in the names of families are defined, the control sections to which the terms apply are given, and the criteria, including the taxa in which they are used, are indicated.

## Family Differentiae for Mineral Soils and Mineral Layers of Some Organic Soils

The following differentiae are used to distinguish families of mineral soils and the mineral layers of some organic soils within a subgroup. The class names of these components are used to form the family name. The components are listed and defined in the same sequence in which the components appear in the family names.

Particle-size classes
Mineralogy classes
Cation-exchange activity classes
Calcareous and reaction classes
Soil temperature classes
Soil depth classes
Rupture-resistance classes
Classes of coatings
Classes of cracks

### Particle-Size Classes and Their Substitutes

#### Definition of Particle-Size Classes and Their Substitutes for Mineral Soils

The first part of the family name is the name of either a particle-size class or a substitute for a particle-size class. The term particle-size class is used to characterize the grain-size composition of the whole soil, including both the fine earth and the rock and pararock fragments up to the size of a pedon, but it excludes organic matter and salts more soluble than gypsum. Substitutes for particle-size classes are used for soils that have andic soil properties or a high content of volcanic glass, pumice, or cinders.

The particle-size classes of this taxonomy represent a compromise between conventional divisions in pedologic and engineering classifications. Engineering classifications have set the limit between sand and silt at a diameter of 74 microns, while pedologic classifications have set it at either 50 or 20 microns. Engineering classifications have been based on grain-size percentages, by weight, in the soil fraction less than 74 mm in diameter, while textural classes in pedologic classifications have been based on percentages, by weight, in the fraction less than 2.0 mm in diameter. In engineering classifications, the separate very fine sand (diameter between 50 and 100 microns or 0.05 and 0.1 mm) has been subdivided at 74 microns. In defining the particle-size classes for this taxonomy, a similar division has been made, but in a different way. Soil materials that have a texture of fine sand or loamy fine sand normally have an appreciable amount of very fine sand, most of which is coarser than 74 microns. A silty sediment, such as loess, may also contain an appreciable amount of very fine sand, most of which is finer than 74 microns. Thus, in the design of particle-size classes for this taxonomy, the very fine sand has been allowed to "float." It is included with the sand if the texture (fine-earth fraction) of a soil is sand, loamy fine sand, or coarser. It is treated as silt, however, if the texture is very fine sand, loamy very fine sand, sandy loam, silt loam, or finer.

No single set of particle-size classes seems adequate to serve as family differentiae for all of the different kinds of soil. Thus, this taxonomy provides 2 generalized and 11 more narrowly defined classes, which permit relatively fine distinctions between families of soils for which particle size is important, while providing broader groupings for soils in which narrowly defined particle-size classes would produce undesirable separations. Thus, the term "clayey" is used for some soil families to indicate a clay content of 35 percent (30 percent in Vertisols) or more in specific horizons, while in other families the more narrowly defined terms "fine" and "very-fine" indicate that these horizons have a clay content either of 35 (30 percent in Vertisols) to 60 percent or of 60 percent or more in their fine-earth fraction. Fine earth refers to particles smaller than 2.0 mm in diameter. Rock fragments are particles 2.0 mm or more in diameter that are strongly cemented or more resistant to rupture and include all particles with horizontal dimensions smaller than the size of a pedon. Cemented fragments 2.0 mm or more in diameter that are in a rupture-resistance class that is less cemented than the strongly cemented class are referred to as pararock fragments. Pararock fragments, like rock fragments, include all particles between 2.0 mm and a horizontal dimension smaller than the size of a pedon. Most pararock fragments are broken into fragments 2.0 mm or less in diameter during the preparation of samples for particle-size analysis in

the laboratory. Therefore, pararock fragments are generally included with the fine earth in the particle-size classes, although cinders, pumice, and pumicelike fragments are treated as fragments in the substitutes for classes, regardless of their rupture-resistance class.

Substitutes for particle-size classes are used for soils that have andic soil properties or a high content of volcanic glass, pumice, or cinders. These materials cannot be readily dispersed, and the results of dispersion vary. Consequently, normal particle-size classes do not adequately characterize these components. Substitutes for particle-size class names are used for those parts of soils that have andic soil properties or a high amount of volcanic glass, pumice, or cinders, as is the case with Andisols and many Andic and Vitrandic subgroups of other soil orders. Some Spodosols, whether identified in Andic subgroups or not, have andic soil properties in some horizons within the particle-size control section, and particle-size substitute class names are used for these horizons.

Neither a particle-size class name nor a substitute for a particle-size class name is used for Psamments, Psammaquents, and Psammentic subgroups that are in a sandy particle-size class. These taxa have, by definition, either a sandy particle-size class or an ashy substitute class. The sandy particle-size class is considered redundant in the family name. The ashy substitute class, however, is named, if appropriate in these taxa.

Particle-size class names are applied, although with reservations, to spodic horizons and other horizons that do not have andic soil properties but contain significant amounts of allophane, imogolite, ferrihydrite, or aluminum-humus complexes. The isotic mineralogy class (defined below) is helpful in identifying these particle-size classes.

In general, the weighted average particle-size class of the whole particle-size control section (defined below) determines what particle-size class name is used as a component of the family name.

### Strongly Contrasting Particle-Size Classes

If the particle-size control section consists of two parts with strongly contrasting particle-size or substitute classes (listed below), if both parts are 12.5 cm or more thick (including parts not in the control section), and if the transition zone between them is less than 12.5 cm thick, both class names are used. For example, the family particle-size class is sandy over clayey if all of the following criteria are met: the soil meets criterion D (listed below) under the control section for particle-size classes or their substitutes; any Ap horizon is less than 30 cm thick; the weighted average particle-size class of the upper 30 cm of the soil is sandy; the weighted average of the lower part is clayey; and the transition zone is less than 12.5 cm thick. If a substitute name applies to one or more parts of the particle-size control section and the parts are not strongly contrasting classes, the name of the thickest part (cumulative) is used as the soil family name.

### Aniso Class

If the particle-size control section includes more than one pair of the strongly contrasting classes, listed below, then the soil is assigned to an aniso class named for the pair of adjacent classes that contrast most strongly. The aniso class is considered part of the particle-size class name and is set off by commas after the particle-size name. An example is a sandy over clayey, aniso, mixed, active, mesic Aridic Haplustoll.

### Generalized Particle-Size Classes

Two generalized particle-size classes, loamy and clayey, are used for shallow classes (defined below) and for soils in Arenic, Grossarenic, and Lithic subgroups. The clayey class is used for all strongly contrasting particle-size classes with more than 35 percent clay (30 percent in Vertisols). The loamy particle-size class is used for contrasting classes, where appropriate, to characterize the lower part of the particle-size control section. The generalized classes, where appropriate, are also used for all strongly contrasting particle-size classes that include a substitute class. For example, loamy over pumiceous or cindery (not fine-loamy over pumiceous or cindery) is used.

Six generalized classes, defined later in this chapter, are used for Terric subgroups of Histosols and Histels.

### Control Section for Particle-Size Classes or Their Substitutes in Mineral Soils

The particle-size and substitute class names listed below are applied to certain horizons, or to the soil materials within specific depth limits, that have been designated as the particle-size control section. The lower boundary of the control section may be at a specified depth (in centimeters) below the mineral soil surface or below the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties, or it may be at the upper boundary of a root-limiting layer. Unless otherwise indicated, the following are considered root-limiting layers in this chapter: a duripan; a fragipan; petrocalcic, petrogypsic, and placic horizons; continuous ortstein; and densic, lithic, paralithic, and petroferric contacts. The following list of particle-size control sections for particular kinds of mineral soils is arranged as a key. This key, like other keys in this taxonomy, is designed in such a way that the reader makes the correct classification by going through the key systematically, starting at the beginning and eliminating one by one all classes that include criteria that do not fit the soil in question. The soil belongs to the first class for which it meets all of the criteria listed. The upper boundary of an argillic, natric, or kandic horizon is used in the following key. This boundary is not always obvious. If one of these horizons is present but the upper boundary is irregular or broken, as in an A/B or B/A horizon, the depth at which half or more of the volume has the fabric of an argillic, natric, or kandic horizon should be considered the upper boundary.

**Key to the Control Section for Particle-Size Classes or Their Substitutes in Mineral Soils**

A. For mineral soils that have a root-limiting layer (listed above) within 36 cm of the mineral soil surface or below the upper boundary of organic soil materials with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower: From the mineral soil surface or the upper boundary of the organic soil materials with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, to the root-limiting layer; *or*

B. For Andisols: Between either the mineral soil surface or the upper boundary of an organic layer with andic soil properties, whichever is shallower, and the shallower of the following: (a) a depth 100 cm below the starting point or (b) a root-limiting layer; *or*

C. For those Alfisols, Ultisols, and great groups of Aridisols and Mollisols, excluding soils in Lamellic subgroups, that have an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon that has its upper boundary within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface and its lower boundary at a depth of 25 cm or more below the mineral soil surface or that are in a Grossarenic or Arenic subgroup, use 1 through 4 below. For other soils, go to D below.

1. Strongly contrasting particle-size classes (defined and listed later) within or below the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon and within 100 cm of the mineral soil surface: The upper 50 cm of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon or to a depth of 100 cm, whichever is deeper, but not below the upper boundary of a root-limiting layer; *or*

2. All parts of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon in or below a fragipan: Between a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface and the top of the fragipan; *or*

3. A fragipan at a depth of less than 50 cm below the top of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon: Between the upper boundary of the argillic, kandic, or natric horizon and the top the fragipan; *or*

4. Other soils that meet C above: Either the whole argillic, kandic, or natric horizon if 50 cm or less thick or the upper 50 cm of the horizon if more than 50 cm thick.

D. For those Alfisols, Ultisols, and great groups of Aridisols and Mollisols that are in a Lamellic subgroup or have an argillic, kandic, or natric horizon that has its upper boundary at a depth of 100 cm or more from the mineral surface and that are not in a Grossarenic or Arenic subgroup: Between the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm from the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and 100 cm below the mineral soil surface or a root-limiting layer, whichever is shallower; *or*

E. For other soils that have an argillic or natric horizon that has its lower boundary at a depth of less than 25 cm from the mineral surface: Between the upper boundary of the argillic or natric horizon and a depth of 100 cm below the mineral soil surface or a root-limiting layer, whichever is shallower; *or*

F. All other mineral soils: Between the lower boundary of an Ap horizon or a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface, whichever is deeper, and the shallower of the following: (a) a depth of 100 cm below the mineral soil surface or (b) a root-limiting layer.

**Key to the Particle-Size and Substitute Classes of Mineral Soils**

This key, like other keys in this taxonomy, is designed in such a way that the reader makes the correct classification by going through the key systematically, starting at the beginning and eliminating one by one all classes that include criteria that do not fit the soil or layer in question. The class or substitute name for each layer within the control section must be determined from the key. If any two layers meet the criteria for strongly contrasting particle-size classes (listed below), the soil is named for that strongly contrasting class. If more than one pair meets the criteria for strongly contrasting classes, the soil is also in an aniso class named for the pair of adjacent classes that contrast most strongly. If the soil has none of the strongly contrasting classes, the weighted average soil materials within the particle-size control section generally determine the class. Exceptions are soils that are not strongly contrasting and that have a substitute class name for one or more parts of the control section. In these soils the class or substitute name of the thickest (cumulative) part within the control section is used to determine the family name.

A. Mineral soils that have, in the thickest part of the control section (if the control section is not in one of the strongly contrasting particle-size classes listed below), *or* in a part of the control section that qualifies as an element in one of the strongly contrasting particle-size classes listed below, *or* throughout the control section, a fine-earth component (including associated medium and finer pores) of less than 10 percent of the total volume *and* that meet one of the following sets of substitute class criteria:

1. Have, in the whole soil, more than 60 percent (by weight) volcanic ash, cinders, lapilli, pumice, and pumicelike[1] fragments *and*, in the fraction coarser than 2.0 mm, two-thirds or more (by volume) pumice and/or pumicelike fragments.

**Pumiceous**

*or*

2. Have, in the whole soil, more than 60 percent (by weight) volcanic ash, cinders, lapilli, pumice, and pumicelike fragments *and*, in the fraction coarser than 2.0

[1] Pumicelike—vesicular pyroclastic materials other than pumice that have an apparent specific gravity (including vesicles) of less than 1.0 g/cm$^3$.

mm, less than two-thirds (by volume) pumice and pumicelike fragments.

**Cindery**

*or*

3. Other mineral soils that have a fine-earth component of less than 10 percent (including associated medium and finer pores) of the total volume.

**Fragmental**

*or*

B. Other mineral soils that have a fine-earth component of 10 percent or more (including associated medium and finer pores) of the total volume and meet, in the thickest part of the control section (if the control section is not in one of the strongly contrasting particle-size classes listed below), *or* in a part of the control section that qualifies as an element in one of the strongly contrasting particle-size classes listed below, *or* throughout the control section, one of the following sets of substitute class criteria:

1. They:

a. Have andic soil properties and have a water content at 1500 kPa tension of less than 30 percent on undried samples and less than 12 percent on dried samples; *or*

b. Do not have andic soil properties, have 30 percent or more of the fine-earth fraction in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction, and have a volcanic class content (by grain count) of 30 percent or more in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction; *and*

c. Have one of the following;

(1) A total of 35 percent or more (by volume) rock and pararock fragments, of which two-thirds or more (by volume) is pumice or pumicelike fragments.

**Ashy-pumiceous**

*or*

(2) 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments.

**Ashy-skeletal**

*or*

(3) Less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

**Ashy**

*or*

2. Have a fine-earth fraction that has andic soil properties *and* that has a water content at 1500 kPa tension of less than 100 percent on undried samples; *and*

a. Have a total of 35 percent or more (by volume) rock and pararock fragments, of which two-thirds or more (by volume) is pumice or pumicelike fragments.

**Medial-pumiceous**

*or*

b. Have 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments.

**Medial-skeletal**

*or*

c. Have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

**Medial**

*or*

3. Have a fine-earth fraction that has andic soil properties and that has a water content at 1500 kPa tension of 100 percent or more on undried samples; *and*

a. Have a total of 35 percent or more (by volume) rock and pararock fragments, of which two-thirds or more (by volume) is pumice or pumicelike fragments.

**Hydrous-pumiceous**

*or*

b. Have 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments.

**Hydrous-skeletal**

*or*

c. Have less than 35 percent (by volume) rock fragments.

**Hydrous**

*or*

*Note*: In the following classes, “clay” excludes clay-size carbonates. Carbonates of clay size are treated as silt. If the ratio of percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension to the percentage of measured clay is 0.25 or less or 0.6 or more in half or more of the particle-size control section or part of the particle-size control section in strongly contrasting classes, then the percentage of clay is estimated by the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon).

C. Other mineral soils that, in the thickest part of the control section (if part of the control section has a substitute for particle-size class and is not in one of the strongly contrasting particle-size classes listed below), *or* in a part of the control section that qualifies as an element in one of the strongly contrasting particle-size classes listed below, *or* throughout the control section, meet one of the following sets of particle-size class criteria:

1. Have 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments *and* a fine-earth fraction with a texture of sand or loamy

sand, including less than 50 percent (by weight) very fine sand.

**Sandy-skeletal**

*or*

2. Have 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments *and* less than 35 percent (by weight) clay.

**Loamy-skeletal**

*or*

3. Have 35 percent or more (by volume) rock fragments.

**Clayey-skeletal**

*or*

4. Have a texture of sand or loamy sand, including less than 50 percent (by weight) very fine sand in the fine-earth fraction.

**Sandy**

*or*

5. Have a texture of loamy very fine sand, very fine sand, or finer, including less than 35 percent (by weight) clay in the fine-earth fraction (excluding Vertisols), and are in a shallow family (defined below) or in a Lithic, Arenic, or Grossarenic subgroup, or the layer is an element in a strongly contrasting particle-size class (listed below) and the layer is the lower element or the other element is a substitute for particle-size class.

**Loamy**

*or*

6. Have, in the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, 15 percent or more (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter) *and*, in the fine-earth fraction, less than 18 percent (by weight) clay.

**Coarse-loamy**

*or*

7. Have, in the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, 15 percent or more (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter) *and* 18 to 35 percent (by weight) clay (Vertisols are excluded).

**Fine-loamy**

*or*

8. Have, in the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, less than 15 percent (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter) *and*, in the fine-earth fraction, less than 18 percent (by weight) clay.

**Coarse-silty**

*or*

9. Have, in the fraction less than 75 mm in diameter, less than 15 percent (by weight) particles with diameters of 0.1 to 75 mm (fine sand or coarser, including rock fragments up to 7.5 cm in diameter) *and*, in the fine-earth fraction, 18 to 35 percent (by weight) clay (Vertisols are excluded).

**Fine-silty**

*or*

10. Have 35 percent or more (by weight) clay (more than 30 percent in Vertisols) and are in a shallow family (defined below) or in a Lithic, Arenic, or Grossarenic subgroup, or the layer is an element in a strongly contrasting particle-size class (listed below).

**Clayey**

*or*

11. Have (by weighted average) less than 60 percent (by weight) clay in the fine-earth fraction.

**Fine**

*or*

12. Have 60 percent or more clay.

**Very-fine**

**Strongly Contrasting Particle-Size Classes**

The purpose of strongly contrasting particle-size classes is to identify changes in pore-size distribution or composition that are not identified in higher soil categories and that seriously affect the movement and retention of water and/or nutrients.

The following particle-size or substitute classes are considered strongly contrasting if both parts are 12.5 cm or more thick (including parts not in the particle-size control section; however, substitute class names are used only if the soil materials to which they apply extend 10 cm or more into the upper part of the particle-size control section) and if the transition zone between the two parts of the particle-size control section is less than 12.5 cm thick.

Some classes, such as sandy and sandy-skeletal, have been combined in the following list. In those cases the combined name is used as the family class if part of the control section meets the criteria for either class.

1. Ashy over clayey
2. Ashy over clayey-skeletal
3. Ashy over loamy-skeletal
4. Ashy over loamy
5. Ashy over medial-skeletal
6. Ashy over medial (if the water content at 1500 kPa tension in dried samples of the fine-earth fraction is 10 percent or less for the ashy materials and 15 percent or more for the medial materials)

7. Ashy over pumiceous or cindery
8. Ashy over sandy or sandy-skeletal
9. Ashy-skeletal over fragmental or cindery (if the volume of the fine-earth fraction is 35 percent or more [absolute] greater in the ashy-skeletal part than in the fragmental or cindery part)
10. Ashy-skeletal over loamy-skeletal
11. Ashy-skeletal over sandy or sandy-skeletal
12. Cindery over loamy
13. Cindery over medial-skeletal
14. Cindery over medial
15. Clayey over fragmental
16. Clayey over loamy (if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section)
17. Clayey over loamy-skeletal (if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section)
18. Clayey over sandy or sandy-skeletal
19. Clayey-skeletal over sandy or sandy-skeletal
20. Coarse-loamy over clayey
21. Coarse-loamy over fragmental
22. Coarse-loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal (if the coarse-loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine sand or coarser sand)
23. Coarse-silty over clayey
24. Coarse-silty over sandy or sandy-skeletal
25. Fine-loamy over clayey (if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section)
26. Fine-loamy over fragmental
27. Fine-loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal
28. Fine-silty over clayey (if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section)
29. Fine-silty over fragmental
30. Fine-silty over sandy or sandy-skeletal
31. Hydrous over clayey-skeletal
32. Hydrous over clayey
33. Hydrous over fragmental
34. Hydrous over loamy-skeletal
35. Hydrous over loamy
36. Hydrous over sandy or sandy-skeletal
37. Loamy over ashy or ashy-pumiceous
38. Loamy over sandy or sandy-skeletal (if the loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine sand or coarser sand)
39. Loamy over pumiceous or cindery
40. Loamy-skeletal over cindery (if the volume of the fine-earth fraction is 35 percent or more [absolute] greater in the loamy-skeletal part than in the cindery part)
41. Loamy-skeletal over clayey (if there is an absolute difference of 25 percent or more between clay percentages of the fine-earth fraction in the two parts of the control section)
42. Loamy-skeletal over fragmental (if the volume of the fine-earth fraction is 35 percent or more [absolute] greater in the loamy-skeletal part than in the fragmental part)
43. Loamy-skeletal over sandy or sandy-skeletal (if the loamy material has less than 50 percent fine sand or coarser sand)
44. Medial over ashy (if the water content at 1500 kPa tension in dried samples of the fine-earth fraction is 15 percent or more for the medial materials and 10 percent or less for the ashy materials)
45. Medial over ashy-pumiceous or ashy-skeletal (if the water content at 1500 kPa tension in dried samples of the fine-earth fraction is 15 percent or more for the medial materials and 10 percent or less for the ashy part)
46. Medial over clayey-skeletal
47. Medial over clayey
48. Medial over fragmental
49. Medial over hydrous (if the water content at 1500 kPa tension in undried samples of the fine-earth fraction is 75 percent or less for the medial materials)
50. Medial over loamy-skeletal
51. Medial over loamy
52. Medial over pumiceous or cindery
53. Medial over sandy or sandy-skeletal
54. Medial-skeletal over fragmental or cindery (if the volume of the fine-earth fraction is 35 percent or more [absolute] greater in the medial-skeletal part than the fragmental or cindery part)
55. Medial-skeletal over loamy-skeletal
56. Medial-skeletal over sandy or sandy-skeletal

57. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over loamy
58. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over loamy-skelatal
59. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over medial-skeletal
60. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over medial
61. Pumiceous or ashy-pumiceous over sandy or sandy-skeletal
62. Sandy over clayey
63. Sandy over loamy (if the loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine sand or coarser sand)
64. Sandy-skeletal over loamy (if the loamy material contains less than 50 percent fine sand or coarser sand)

## Mineralogy Classes

The mineralogy of soils is known to be useful in making predictions about soil behavior and responses to management. Some mineralogy classes occur or are important only in certain taxa or particle-size classes, and others are important in all particle-size classes. The following key to mineralogy classes is designed to make those distinctions.

**Control Section for Mineralogy Classes**

The control section for mineralogy classes is the same as that defined for the particle-size classes and their substitutes.

**Key to Mineralogy Classes**

This key, like other keys in this taxonomy, is designed in such a way that the reader makes the correct classification by going through the key systematically, starting at the beginning and eliminating one by one any classes that include criteria that do not fit the soil in question. The soil belongs to the first class for which it meets all of the required criteria. The user should first check the criteria in section A and, if the soil in question does not meet the criteria listed there, proceed on to sections B, C, D, and E, until the soil meets the criteria listed. All criteria are based on a weighted average.

For soils with strongly contrasting particle-size classes, the mineralogy for both named particle-size classes or substitutes are given, unless they are the same. Examples are an ashy over clayey, mixed (if both the ashy and clayey parts are mixed), superactive, mesic Typic Vitraquand and a clayey over sandy or sandy-skeletal, smectitic over mixed, thermic Vertic Haplustept.

A. Oxisols and "kandi" and "kanhap" great groups of Alfisols and Ultisols that in the mineralogy control section have:

1. More than 40 percent (by weight) iron oxide as $Fe_2O_3$ (more than 28 percent Fe), by dithionite citrate, in the fine-earth fraction.

**Ferritic**

*or*

2. More than 40 percent (by weight) gibbsite in the fine-earth fraction.

**Gibbsitic**

*or*

3. Both:

   a. 18 to 40 percent (by weight) iron oxide as $Fe_2O_3$ (12.6 to 28 percent Fe), by dithionite citrate, in the fine-earth fraction; *and*

   b. 18 to 40 percent (by weight) gibbsite in the fine-earth fraction.

**Sesquic**

*or*

4. 18 to 40 percent (by weight) iron oxide as $Fe_2O_3$ (12.6 to 28 percent Fe), by dithionite citrate, in the fine-earth fraction.

**Ferruginous**

*or*

5. 18 to 40 percent (by weight) gibbsite in the fine-earth fraction.

**Allitic**

*or*

6. More than 50 percent (by weight) kaolinite plus halloysite, dickite, nacrite, and other 1:1 or nonexpanding 2:1 layer minerals and gibbsite and less than 10 percent (by weight) smectite in the fraction less than 0.002 mm in size; and more kaolinite than halloysite.

**Kaolinitic**

*or*

7. More than 50 percent (by weight) halloysite plus kaolinite and allophane and less than 10 percent (by weight) smectite in the fraction less than 0.002 mm in size.

**Halloysitic**

*or*

8. All other properties in this category.

**Mixed**

*or*

B. Other soil layers or horizons, in the mineralogy control section, that have a substitute class that replaces the particle-size class, other than fragmental, and that:

1. Have a sum of 8 times the Si (percent by weight extracted by ammonium oxalate from the fine-earth fraction) plus 2 times the Fe (percent by weight extracted by ammonium oxalate from the fine-earth fraction) of 5 or more, and 8 times the Si is more than 2 times the Fe.

**Amorphic**

*or*

2. Other soils that have a sum of 8 times the Si (percent by weight extracted by ammonium oxalate from the fine-earth fraction) plus 2 times the Fe (percent by weight extracted by ammonium oxalate from the fine-earth fraction) of 5 or more.

**Ferrihydritic**

*or*

3. Other soils that have 30 percent or more (by grain count) volcanic glass in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction.

**Glassy**

*or*

4. All other soils that have a substitute class.

**Mixed**

*or*

C. Other mineral soil layers or horizons, in the mineralogy control section, in all other mineral soil orders and in Terric subgroups of Histosols and Histels that have:

1. Any particle-size class and more than 40 percent (by weight) carbonates (expressed as $CaCO_3$) plus gypsum, with gypsum constituting more than 35 percent of the total weight of carbonates plus gypsum, either in the fine-earth fraction or in the fraction less than 20 mm in size, whichever has a higher percentage of carbonates plus gypsum.

**Gypsic**

*or*

2. Any particle-size class and more than 40 percent (by weight) carbonates (expressed as $CaCO_3$) plus gypsum, either in the fine-earth fraction or in the fraction less than 20 mm in size, whichever has a higher percentage of carbonates plus gypsum.

**Carbonatic**

*or*

3. Any particle-size class, except for fragmental, and more than 40 percent (by weight) iron oxide as $Fe_2O_3$ (more than 28 percent Fe) extractable by dithionite citrate, in the fine-earth fraction.

**Ferritic**

*or*

4. Any particle-size class, except for fragmental, and more than 40 percent (by weight) gibbsite and boehmite in the fine-earth fraction.

**Gibbsitic**

*or*

5. Any particle-size class, except for fragmental, and more than 40 percent (by weight) magnesium-silicate minerals, such as the serpentine minerals (antigorite, chrysotile, and lizardite) plus talc, olivines, Mg-rich pyroxenes, and Mg-rich amphiboles, in the fine-earth fraction.

**Magnesic**

*or*

6. Any particle-size class, except for fragmental, and more than 20 percent (by weight) glauconitic pellets in the fine-earth fraction.

**Glauconitic**

*or*

D. Other mineral soil layers or horizons, in the mineralogy control section, of soils in all other mineral orders and in Terric subgroups of Histosols and Histels, in a clayey, clayey-skeletal, fine or very-fine particle-size class, that:

1. In the fine-earth fraction, have a total percent (by weight) iron oxide as $Fe_2O_3$ (percent Fe by dithionate citrate times 1.43) plus the percent ( by weight) gibbsite of more than 10.

**Parasesquic**

*or*

2. In the fraction less than 0.002 mm in size:

a. Have more than 50 percent (by weight) halloysite plus kaolinite and allophane and more halloysite than any other single mineral.

**Halloysitic**

*or*

b. Have more than 50 percent (by weight) kaolinite plus halloysite, dickite, and nacrite, and other 1:1 or nonexpanding 2:1 layer minerals and gibbsite and less than 10 percent (by weight) smectite.

**Kaolinitic**

*or*

c. Have more smectite (montmorillonite, beidellite, and nontronite), by weight, than any other single kind of clay mineral.

**Smectitic**

*or*

d. Have more than 50 percent (by weight) illite (hydrous mica) and commonly more than 4 percent $K_2O$.

**Illitic**

*or*

e. Have more vermiculite than any other single kind of clay mineral.

**Vermiculitic**

*or*

f. In more than 50 percent of the thickness, meet all of the following:

(1) Have no free carbonates; *and*

(2) The pH of a suspension of 1 g soil in 50 ml 1 M NaF is more than 8.4 after 2 minutes; *and*

(3) The ratio of 1500 kPa water to measured clay is 0.6 or more.

**Isotic**

*or*

g. All other soils in this category.

**Mixed**

*or*

E. All other mineral soil layers or horizons, in the mineralogy control section, that have:

1. More than 40 percent (by weight) (70 percent by grain count) mica and stable mica pseudomorphs in the 0.02 to 0.25 mm fraction.

**Micaceous**

*or*

2. More than 25 percent (by weight) (45 percent by grain count) mica and stable mica pseudomorphs in the 0.02 to 0.25 mm fraction.

**Paramicaceous**

*or*

3. A total percent (by weight) iron oxide as $Fe_2O_3$ (percent Fe by dithionate citrate times 1.43) plus the percent (by weight) gibbsite of more than 10 in the fine-earth fraction.

**Parasesquic**

*or*

4. In more than one-half of the thickness, all of the following:

a. No free carbonates; *and*

b. NaF pH of 8.4 or more; *and*

c. A ratio of 1500 kPa water to measured clay of 0.6 or more.

**Isotic**

*or*

5. More than 90 percent (by weight or grain count) silica minerals (quartz, chalcedony, or opal) and other resistant minerals in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction.

**Siliceous**

*or*

6. All other properties.

**Mixed**

## Cation-Exchange Activity Classes

The cation-exchange activity classes help in making interpretations of mineral assemblages and of the nutrient-holding capacity of soils in mixed and siliceous mineralogy classes of clayey, clayey-skeletal, coarse-loamy, coarse-silty, fine, fine-loamy, fine-silty, loamy, loamy-skeletal, and very-fine particle-size classes. Cation-exchange activity classes are not assigned to Histosols and Histels, and they are not assigned to Oxisols and "kandi" and "kanhap" great groups and subgroups of Alfisols and Ultisols because assigning such classes to them would be redundant. Cation-exchange activity classes are not assigned to the sandy, sandy-skeletal, or fragmental particle-size class because the low clay content causes cation-exchange activity classes to be less useful and less reliable.

The cation-exchange capacity (CEC) is determined by $NH_4OAc$ at pH 7 on the fine-earth fraction. The CEC of the organic matter, sand, silt, and clay is included in the determination. The criteria for the classes use ratios of CEC to the percent, by weight, of silicate clay, both by weighted average in the control section. In the following classes "clay" excludes clay-size carbonates. If the ratio of percent water retained at 1500 kPa tension to the percentage of measured clay is 0.25 or less or 0.6 or more in half or more of the particle-size control section (or part in contrasting families), then the percentage of clay is estimated by the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon).

### Control Section for Cation-Exchange Activity Classes

The control section for cation-exchange activity classes is the same as that used to determine the particle-size and mineralogy classes. For soils with strongly contrasting particle-size classes, where both named parts of the control section use a cation-exchange activity class, the class associated with the particle-size class that has the most clay is named. For example, in a pedon with a classification of loamy over clayey, mixed, active, calcareous, thermic Typic Udorthent, the cation-exchange activity class "active" is associated with the clayey part of the control section.

### Key to Cation-Exchange Activity Classes

A. Soils that are not Histosols, Histels, or Oxisols, that are not in "kandi" or "kanhap" great groups or subgroups of Alfisols and Ultisols, that are in either a mixed or siliceous mineralogy class, that are not in a fragmental, sandy, or sandy-skeletal particle-size class or any substitute for a particle-size class, and that have a ratio of cation-exchange capacity (by $NH_4OAc$ at pH 7) to clay (percent by weight) of:

1. 0.60 or more.

**Superactive**

2. 0.40 to 0.60.

**Active**

3. 0.24 to 0.40.

**Semiactive**

4. Less than 0.24.

**Subactive**

*or*

B. All other soils: No cation-exchange activity classes used.

## Calcareous and Reaction Classes of Mineral Soils

The presence or absence of carbonates, soil reaction, and the presence of high concentrations of aluminum in mineral soils are treated together because they are so intimately related. There are four classes—calcareous, acid, nonacid, and allic. These are defined later, in the key to calcareous and reaction classes. The classes are not used in all taxa, nor is more than one used in the same taxa.

**Use of the Calcareous and Reaction Classes**

The calcareous, acid, and nonacid classes are used in the names of the families of Entisols, Aquands, and Aquepts, except they are not used in any of the following:

1. Duraquands and Placaquands
2. Sulfaquepts, Fragiaquepts, and Petraquepts
3. Sandy, sandy-skeletal, cindery, pumiceous, or fragmental families
4. Families with carbonatic or gypsic mineralogy

The calcareous class, in addition to those listed above, is used in the names of the families of Aquolls, except it is not used with any of the following:

1. Calciaquolls, Natraquolls, and Argiaquolls
2. Cryaquolls and Duraquolls that have an argillic horizon
3. Families with carbonatic or gypsic mineralogy

The allic class is used only in families of Oxisols.

**Control Section for Calcareous and Reaction Classes**

The control section for the calcareous class is one of the following:

1. Soils with a root-limiting layer that is 25 cm or less below the mineral soil surface: A 2.5-cm-thick layer directly above the root-limiting layer.

2. Soils with a root-limiting layer that is 26 to 50 cm below the mineral soil surface: The layer between a depth of 25 cm below the mineral soil surface and the root-limiting layer.

3. All other listed soils: Between a depth of 25 and 50 cm below the mineral soil surface.

The control section for the acid, nonacid, and allic classes is the same as that for particle-size classes.

**Key to Calcareous and Reaction Classes**

A. Oxisols that have a layer, 30 cm or more thick within the control section, that contains more than 2 cmol(+) of KCl-extractable Al per kg soil in the fine-earth fraction.

**Allic**

B. Other listed soils that, in the fine-earth fraction, effervesce (in cold dilute HCl) in all parts of the control section.

**Calcareous**

C. Other listed soils with a pH of less than 5.0 in 0.01 M $CaCl_2$ (1:2) (about pH 5.5 in $H_2O$, 1:1) throughout the control section.

**Acid**

D. Other listed soils with a pH of 5.0 or more in 0.01 M $CaCl_2$ (1:2) in some or all layers in the control section.

**Nonacid**

It should be noted that a soil containing dolomite is calcareous and that effervescence of dolomite, when treated with cold dilute HCl, is slow.

The calcareous, acid, nonacid, and allic classes are listed in the family name, when appropriate, following the mineralogy and cation-exchange activity classes.

## Soil Temperature Classes

Soil temperature classes, as named and defined here, are used as part of the family name in both mineral and organic soils. Temperature class names are used as part of the family name unless the criteria for a higher taxon carry the same limitation. Thus, frigid is implied in all cryic suborders, great groups, and subgroups and would be redundant if used in the names of families within these classes.

The Celsius (centigrade) scale is the standard. It is assumed that the temperature is that of a soil that is not being irrigated.

**Control Section for Soil Temperature**

The control section for soil temperature either is at a depth of 50 cm from the soil surface or is at the upper boundary of a root-limiting layer, whichever is shallower. The soil temperature classes, defined in terms of the mean annual soil temperature and the difference between mean summer and mean winter temperatures, are determined by the following key.

**Key to Soil Temperature Classes**

A. Gelisols and Gelic suborders and great groups that have a mean annual soil temperature as follows:

1. -10 °C or lower.

**Hypergelic**

*or*

2. -4 °C to -10 °C.

**Pergelic**

*or*

3. +1 °C to -4 °C.

**Subgelic**

*or*

B. Other soils that have a difference in soil temperature of 6 °C or more between mean summer (June, July, and August in the Northern Hemisphere) and mean winter (December, January, and February in the Northern Hemisphere) and a mean annual soil temperature of:

1. Lower than 8 °C (47 °F).

**Frigid**

*or*

2. 8 °C (47 °F) to 15 °C (59 °F).

**Mesic**

*or*

3. 15 °C (59 °F) to 22 °C (72 °F).

**Thermic**

*or*

4. 22 °C (72 °F) or higher.

**Hyperthermic**

*or*

C. All other soils that have a mean annual soil temperature as follows:

1. Lower than 8 °C (47 °F).

**Isofrigid**

*or*

2. 8 °C (47 °F) to 15 °C (59 °F).

**Isomesic**

*or*

3. 15 °C (59 °F) to 22 °C (72 °F).

**Isothermic**

*or*

4. 22 °C (72 °F) or higher.

**Isohyperthermic**

## Soil Depth Classes

Soil depth classes are used in all families that have a root-limiting layer at a specified depth from the mineral soil surface, except for those families in Lithic subgroups and those with a fragipan. The root-limiting layers included in soil depth classes are duripans; petrocalcic, petrogypsic, and placic horizons; continuous ortstein (90 percent or more); and densic, lithic, paralithic, and petroferric contacts. Soil depth classes for Histosols and Histels are given later in this chapter. One soil depth class name, "shallow," is used to characterize certain mineral soil families that have one of the depths indicated in the following key.

**Key to Soil Depth Classes**

A. Oxisols that are less than 100 cm deep (from the mineral soil surface) to a root-limiting layer and are not in a Lithic subgroup.

**Shallow**

*or*

B. Soils in all other mineral soil orders that are less than 50 cm deep (from the mineral soil surface) to a root-limiting layer and are not in a Lithic subgroup.

**Shallow**

*or*

C. All other mineral soils: No soil depth class used.

## Rupture-Resistance Classes

In this taxonomy, some partially cemented soil materials, such as durinodes, serve as differentiae in categories above the family, while others, such as partially cemented spodic materials (ortstein), do not. No single family, however, should include soils both with and without partially cemented horizons. In Spodosols, a partially cemented spodic horizon is used as a family differentia. The following rupture-resistance class is defined for families of Spodosols:

A. Spodosols that have an ortstein horizon.

**Ortstein**

*or*

B. All other soils: No rupture-resistance class used.

## Classes of Coatings (on Sands)

Despite the emphasis given to particle-size classes in this taxonomy, variability remains in the sandy particle-size class, which includes sands and loamy sands. Some sands are very clean, i.e., almost completely free of silt and clay, while others are mixed with appreciable amounts of finer grains. Clay is more efficient at coating sand than is silt. A weighted average silt (by weight) plus 2 times the weighted average clay (by weight) of more than 5 makes a reasonable division of the sands at the family level. Two classes of Quartzipsamments are

defined in terms of their content of silt plus 2 times their content of clay.

**Control Section for Classes of Coatings**

The control section for classes of coatings is the same as that for particle-size classes or their substitutes and for mineralogy classes.

**Key to Classes of Coatings**

A. Quartzipsamments that have a sum of the weighted average silt (by weight) plus 2 times the weighted average clay of more than 5.

**Coated**

*or*

B. Other Quartzipsamments.

**Uncoated**

## Classes of Permanent Cracks

Some Hydraquents consolidate or shrink after drainage and become Fluvaquents or Humaquepts. In the process they can form polyhedrons roughly 12 to 50 cm in diameter, depending on their *n* value and texture. These polyhedrons are separated by cracks that range in width from 2 mm to more than 1 cm. The polyhedrons may shrink and swell with changes in the moisture content of the soils, but the cracks are permanent and can persist for several hundreds of years, even if the soils are cultivated. The cracks permit rapid movement of water through the soils, either vertically or laterally. Such soils may have the same texture, mineralogy, and other family properties as soils that do not form cracks or that have cracks that open and close with the seasons. Soils with permanent cracks are very rare in the United States.

**Control Section for Classes of Permanent Cracks**

The control section for classes of permanent cracks is from the base of any plow layer or 25 cm from the soil surface, whichever is deeper, to 100 cm below the soil surface.

**Key to Classes of Permanent Cracks**

A. Fluvaquents or Humaquepts that have, throughout a layer 50 cm or more thick, continuous, permanent, lateral and vertical cracks 2 mm or more wide, spaced at average lateral intervals of less than 50 cm.

**Cracked**

*or*

B. All other Fluvaquents and Humaquepts: No class of permanent cracks used.

# Family Differentiae for Histosols and Histels

Most of the differentiae that are used to distinguish families of Histosols and Histels have already been defined, either because they are used as differentiae in mineral soils as well as Histosols and Histels or because their definitions are used for the classification of some Histosols and Histels in categories higher than the family. In the following descriptions, differentiae not previously mentioned are defined and the classes in which they are used are enumerated.

The order in which family classes, if appropriate for a particular family, are placed in the technical family names of Histosols and Histels is as follows:

Particle-size classes
Mineralogy classes, including the nature of limnic deposits in Histosols
Reaction classes
Soil temperature classes
Soil depth classes (used only in Histosols)

## Particle-Size Classes

Particle-size classes are used only for the family names of Terric subgroups of Histosols and Histels. The classes are determined from the properties of the mineral soil materials in the control section through use of the key to particle-size classes. The classes are more generalized than those for soils in other orders.

**Control Section for Particle-Size Classes**

The particle-size control section is the upper 30 cm of the mineral layer or of that part of the mineral layer that is within the control section for Histosols and Histels (given in chapter 3), whichever is thicker.

**Key to Particle-Size Classes of Histosols and Histels**

A. Terric subgroups of Histosols and Histels that have (by weighted average) in the particle-size control section:

1. A fine-earth component of less than 10 percent (including associated medium and finer pores) of the total volume.

**Fragmental**

*or*

2. A texture (of the fine earth) of sand or loamy sand, including less than 50 percent (by weight) very fine sand in the fine-earth fraction.

**Sandy or sandy-skeletal**

*or*

3. Less than 35 percent clay in the fine-earth fraction and a content of rock fragments of 35 percent or more of the total volume.

**Loamy-skeletal**

*or*

4. A content of rock fragments of 35 percent or more of the total volume.

**Clayey-skeletal**

*or*

5. A clay content of 35 percent or more in the fine-earth fraction.

**Clayey**

*or*

6. All other Terric subgroups of Histosols and Histels.

**Loamy**

*or*

B. All other Histosols and Histels: No particle-size class used.

## Mineralogy Classes

There are three different kinds of mineralogy classes recognized for families in certain great groups and subgroups of Histosols. The first kind is the ferrihumic soil material defined below. The second is three types of limnic materials—coprogenous earth, diatomaceous earth, and marl, defined in chapter 3. The third is mineral layers of Terric subgroups. The key to mineralogy classes for these mineral layers is the same as that for mineral soils. Terric subgroups of Histels also have the same mineralogy classes as those for mineral soils.

### Ferrihumic Mineralogy Class

Ferrihumic soil material, i.e., bog iron, is an authigenic (formed in place) deposit consisting of hydrated iron oxide mixed with organic matter, either dispersed and soft or cemented into large aggregates, in a mineral or organic layer that has all of the following characteristics:

1. Saturation with water for more than 6 months per year (or artificial drainage);

2. 2 percent or more (by weight) iron concretions having lateral dimensions ranging from less than 5 to more than 100 mm and containing 10 percent or more (by weight) free iron oxide (7 percent or more Fe) and 1 percent or more (by weight) organic matter; *and*

3. A dark reddish or brownish color that changes little on drying.

The ferrihumic mineralogy class is used for families of Fibrists, Hemists, and Saprists, but it is not used for Sphagnofibrists and Sphagnic subgroups of other great groups. If the ferrihumic class is used in the family name of a Histosol, no other mineralogy classes are used in that family because the presence of iron is considered to be by far the most important mineralogical characteristic.

### Mineralogy Classes Applied Only to Limnic Subgroups

Limnic materials (defined in chapter 3) with a thickness of 5 cm or more are mineralogy class criteria if the soil does not also have ferrihumic mineralogy. The following family classes are used: coprogenous, diatomaceous, and marly.

### Control Section for the Ferrihumic Mineralogy Class and Mineralogy Classes Applied to Limnic Subgroups

The control section for the ferrihumic mineralogy class and the classes applied to Limnic subgroups is the same as the control section for Histosols.

### Mineralogy Classes Applied Only to Terric Subgroups

For Histosols and Histels in Terric subgroups, use the same key to mineralogy classes as that used for mineral soils unless a Histosol also has ferrihumic mineralogy.

### Control Section for Mineralogy Classes Applied Only to Terric Subgroups

For Terric subgroups of Histosols and Histels, use the same control section for mineralogy classes as that used for the particle-size classes.

### Key to Mineralogy Classes

A. Histosols (except for Folists), Sphagnofibrists, and Sphagnic subgroups of other great groups that have ferrihumic soil material within the control section for Histosols.

**Ferrihumic**

*or*

B. Other Histosols that have, within the control section for Histosols, limnic materials, 5 cm or more thick, that consist of:

1. Coprogenous earth.

**Coprogenous**

*or*

2. Diatomaceous earth.

**Diatomaceous**

*or*

3. Marl.

**Marly**

*or*

C. Histels and other Histosols in Terric subgroups: Use the key to mineralogy classes for mineral soils.

*or*

D. All other Histels and Histosols: No mineralogy class used.

## Reaction Classes

Reaction classes are used in all families of Histosols and Histels. The two classes recognized are defined in the following key:

A. Histosols and Histels that have a pH value, on undried samples, of 4.5 or more (in 0.01 M $CaCl_2$) in one or more layers of organic soil materials within the control section for Histosols.

**Euic**

*or*

B. All other Histosols and Histels.

**Dysic**

## Soil Temperature Classes

The soil temperature classes of Histosols are determined through use of the same key and definitions as those used for mineral soils. Histels have the same temperature classes as other Gelisols.

## Soil Depth Classes

Soil depth classes refer to the depth to a root-limiting layer, a fragmental particle-size class, or a cindery or pumiceous substitute class. The root-limiting layers included in soil depth classes of Histosols are duripans; petrocalcic, petrogypsic, and placic horizons; continuous ortstein; and densic, lithic, paralithic, and petroferric contacts. The following key is used for families in all subgroups of Histosols. The shallow class is not used in the suborder Folists.

### Key to Soil Depth Classes

A. Histosols that are less than 18 cm deep to a root-limiting layer, to a fragmental particle-size class, or to a cindery or pumiceous substitute class.

**Micro**

*or*

B. Other Histosols, excluding Folists, that have a root-limiting layer, a fragmental particle-size class, or a cindery or pumiceous substitute class at a depth between 18 and 50 cm from the soil surface.

**Shallow**

*or*

C. All other Histosols: No soil depth class used.

# Series Differentiae Within a Family

The function of the series is pragmatic, and differences within a family that affect the use of a soil should be considered in classifying soil series. The separation of soils at the series level of this taxonomy can be based on any property that is used as criteria at higher levels in the system. The criteria most commonly used include presence of, depth to, thickness of, and expression of horizons and properties diagnostic for the higher categories and differences in texture, mineralogy, soil moisture, soil temperature, and amounts of organic matter. The limits of the properties used as differentiae must be more narrowly defined than the limits for the family. The properties used, however, must be reliably observable or be inferable from other soil properties or from the setting or vegetation.

The differentiae used must be within the series control section. Differences in soil or regolith that are outside the series control section and that have not been recognized as series differentiae but are relevant to potential uses of certain soils are considered as a basis for phase distinctions.

## Control Section for the Differentiation of Series

The control section for the soil series is similar to that for the family, but it differs in a few important respects. The particle-size and mineralogy control sections for families end at the upper boundary of a fragipan, duripan, or petrocalcic horizon because these horizons have few roots. In contrast to the control section for the series, the thickness of such horizons is not taken into account in the control sections for the family. The series control section includes materials starting at the soil surface and also the first 25 cm below a densic or paralithic contact if its upper boundary is less than 125 cm below the mineral soil surface. Properties of horizons and layers below the particle-size control section, a depth between 100 and 150 cm (or to 200 cm if in a diagnostic horizon) from the mineral soil surface, also are considered.

### Key to the Control Section for the Differentiation of Series

The part of a soil to be considered in differentiating series within a family is as follows:

A. Mineral soils that have permafrost within 150 cm of the soil surface: From the soil surface to the shallowest of the following:

1. A lithic or petroferric contact; *or*

2. A depth of 100 cm if the depth to permafrost is less than 75 cm; *or*

3. 25 cm below the upper boundary of permafrost if that boundary is 75 cm or more below the soil surface; *or*

4. 25 cm below a densic or paralithic contact; *or*

5. A depth of 150 cm; *or*

B. Other mineral soils: From the soil surface to the shallowest of the following:

1. A lithic or petroferric contact; *or*

2. A depth of either 25 cm below a densic or paralithic contact or 150 cm below the soil surface, whichever is shallower, if there is a densic or paralithic contact within 150 cm; *or*

3. A depth of 150 cm if the bottom of the deepest diagnostic horizon is less than 150 cm from the soil surface; *or*

4. The lower boundary of the deepest diagnostic horizon or a depth of 200 cm, whichever is shallower, if the lower boundary of the deepest diagnostic horizon is 150 cm or more below the soil surface; *or*

C. Organic soils (Histosols and Histels): From the soil surface to the shallowest of the following:

1. A lithic or petroferric contact; *or*

2. A depth of 25 cm below a densic or paralithic contact; *or*

3. A depth of 100 cm if the depth to permafrost is less than 75 cm; *or*

4. 25 cm below the upper boundary of permafrost if that boundary is between a depth of 75 and 125 cm below the soil surface; *or*

5. The base of the bottom tier.

# CHAPTER 18

## *Designations for Horizons and Layers*

This chapter describes soil layers and genetic soil horizons. The genetic horizons are not the equivalent of the diagnostic horizons of *Soil Taxonomy*. While designations of genetic horizons express a qualitative judgment about the kinds of changes that are believed to have taken place in a soil, diagnostic horizons are quantitatively defined features that are used to differentiate between taxa. A diagnostic horizon may encompass several genetic horizons, and the changes implied by genetic horizon designations may not be large enough to justify recognition of different diagnostic horizons.

## Master Horizons and Layers

The capital letters O, L, A, E, B, C, R, M, and W represent the master horizons and layers of soils. These letters are the base symbols to which other characters are added to complete the designations. Most horizons and layers are given a single capital-letter symbol; some require two.

**O horizons or layers:** *Layers dominated by organic material. Some are saturated with water for long periods or were once saturated but are now artificially drained; others have never been saturated.*

Some O layers consist of undecomposed or partially decomposed litter (such as leaves, needles, twigs, moss, and lichens) that has been deposited on the surface. They may be on top of either mineral or organic soils. Other O layers consist of organic material that was deposited under saturated conditions and has decomposed to varying stages. The mineral fraction of such material constitutes only a small percentage of the volume of the material and generally much less than half of its weight. Some soils consist entirely of materials designated as O horizons or layers.

An O layer may be on the surface of a mineral soil, or it may be at any depth below the surface if it is buried. A horizon formed by the illuviation of organic material into a mineral subsoil is not an O horizon, although some horizons that have formed in this manner contain considerable amounts of organic matter.

**L horizons or layers:** *Limnic horizons or layers include both organic and mineral limnic materials that were either (1) deposited in water by precipitation or through the actions of aquatic organisms, such as algae and diatoms, or (2) derived from underwater and floating aquatic plants and subsequently modified by aquatic animals*.

L horizons or layers include coprogenous earth, (sedimentary peat), diatomaceous earth, and marl. They occur only in Histosols. They have only the following subordinate distinctions: co, di, or ma. They do not have the subordinate distinctions of the other master horizons and layers.

**A horizons:** *Mineral horizons that have formed at the surface or below an O horizon. They exhibit obliteration of all or much of the original rock structure*[1] *and show one or both of the following: (1) an accumulation of humified organic matter closely mixed with the mineral fraction and not dominated by properties characteristic of E or B horizons (defined below) or (2) properties resulting from cultivation, pasturing, or similar kinds of disturbance.*

If a surface horizon has properties of both A and E horizons but the feature emphasized is an accumulation of humified organic matter, it is designated as an A horizon. In some areas, such as areas of warm, arid climates, the undisturbed surface horizon is less dark than the adjacent underlying horizon and contains only small amounts of organic matter. It has a morphology distinct from the C layer, although the mineral fraction is unaltered or only slightly altered by weathering. Such a horizon is designated as an A horizon because it is at the surface. Recent alluvial or eolian deposits that retain fine stratification are not considered to be A horizons unless cultivated.

**E horizons:** *Mineral horizons in which the main feature is the loss of silicate clay, iron, aluminum, or some combination of these, leaving a concentration of sand and silt particles. These horizons exhibit obliteration of all or much of the original rock structure.*

An E horizon is most commonly differentiated from an underlying B horizon in the same sequum by a color of higher value or lower chroma, or both, by coarser texture, or by a combination of these properties. In some soils the color of the E horizon is that of the sand and silt particles, but in many soils coatings of iron oxides or other compounds mask the color of the primary particles. An E horizon is most commonly differentiated from an overlying A horizon by its lighter color. It generally contains less organic matter than the A horizon. An E horizon is commonly near the surface, below an O or A horizon

[1] Rock structure includes fine stratification in unconsolidated soil materials as well as pseudomorphs of weathered minerals that retain their positions relative to each other and to unweathered minerals in saprolite.

and above a B horizon, but eluvial horizons that are within or between parts of the B horizon or extend to depths greater than those of normal observation can be assigned the letter E if they are pedogenic.

**B horizons:** *Horizons that have formed below an A, E, or O horizon. They are dominated by the obliteration of all or much of the original rock structure and show one or more of the following:*

1. Illuvial concentration of silicate clay, iron, aluminum, humus, carbonates, gypsum, or silica, alone or in combination;
2. Evidence of the removal or addition of carbonates;
3. Residual concentration of oxides;
4. Coatings of sesquioxides that make the horizon conspicuously lower in color value, higher in chroma, or redder in hue, without apparent illuviation of iron;
5. Alteration that forms silicate clay or liberates oxides, or both, and that forms a granular, blocky, or prismatic structure if volume changes accompany changes in moisture content;
6. Brittleness; *or*
7. Strong gleying.

All of the different kinds of B horizons are, or were originally, subsurface horizons. Included as B horizons, where contiguous to other genetic horizons, are layers of illuvial concentration of carbonates, gypsum, or silica that are the result of pedogenic processes (and may or may not be cemented) and brittle layers that show other evidence of alteration, such as prismatic structure or illuvial accumulation of clay.

Examples of layers that are not B horizons are layers in which clay films either coat rock fragments or cover finely stratified unconsolidated sediments, regardless of whether the films were formed in place or by illuviation; layers into which carbonates have been illuviated but that are not contiguous to an overlying genetic horizon; and layers with gleying but no other pedogenic changes.

**C horizons or layers:** *Horizons or layers, excluding strongly cemented and harder bedrock, that are little affected by pedogenic processes and lack the properties of O, A, E, or B horizons. Most are mineral layers. The material of C layers may be either like or unlike the material from which the solum has presumably formed. The C horizon may have been modified, even if there is no evidence of pedogenesis.*

Included as C layers are sediment, saprolite, bedrock, and other geologic materials that are moderately cemented or less cemented. The excavation difficulty in these materials commonly is low or moderate. Some soils form in material that is already highly weathered, and if such material does not meet the requirements for A, E, or B horizons, it is designated by the letter C. Changes that are not considered pedogenic are those not related to the overlying horizons. Some layers that have accumulations of silica, carbonates, gypsum, or more soluble salts are included in C horizons, even if cemented. If a cemented layer formed through pedogenic processes, however, it is considered a B horizon.

**R layers:** *Strongly cemented to indurated bedrock.*

Granite, basalt, quartzite, limestone, and sandstone are examples of bedrock designated by the letter R. The excavation difficulty commonly exceeds high. The R layer is sufficiently coherent when moist to make hand-digging with a spade impractical, although the layer may be chipped or scraped. Some R layers can be ripped with heavy power equipment. The bedrock may have cracks, but these are generally too few and too small to allow root penetration. The cracks may be coated or filled with clay or other material.

**M layers:** *Root-limiting subsoil layers consisting of nearly continuous, horizontally oriented, human-manufactured materials*

Examples of materials designated by the letter M are geotextile liners, asphalt, concrete, rubber, and plastic.

**W layers:** *Water*

This symbol indicates water layers within or beneath the soil. The water layer is designated as *Wf* if it is permanently frozen and as *W* if it is not permanently frozen. The *W* (or *Wf*) designation is not used for shallow water, ice, or snow above the soil surface.

## Transitional and Combination Horizons

*Horizons dominated by properties of one master horizon but having subordinate properties of another.*—Two capital-letter symbols are used for such transitional horizons, e.g., AB, EB, BE, or BC. The first of these symbols indicates that the properties of the horizon so designated dominate the transitional horizon. An AB horizon, for example, has characteristics of both an overlying A horizon and an underlying B horizon, but it is more like the A horizon than the B horizon.

In some cases a horizon can be designated as transitional even if one of the master horizons to which it presumably forms a transition is not present. A BE horizon may be recognized in a truncated soil if its properties are similar to those of a BE horizon in a soil from which the overlying E horizon has not been removed by erosion. A BC horizon may be recognized even if no underlying C horizon is present; it is transitional to assumed parent materials.

*Horizons with two distinct parts that have recognizable properties of the two kinds of master horizons indicated by the capital letters.*—The two capital letters designating such combination horizons are separated by a virgule (/), e.g., E/B, B/E, or B/C. Most of the individual parts of one horizon component are surrounded by the other. The designation may be used even when horizons similar to one or both of the components are not present, provided that the separate

components can be recognized in the combination horizon. The first symbol is that of the horizon with the greater volume.

Single sets of horizon designators do not cover all situations; therefore, some improvising is needed. For example, Argic Udipsamments have lamellae that are separated from each other by eluvial layers. Because it is generally not practical to describe each lamella and eluvial layer as a separate horizon, the horizons can be combined but the components described separately. One horizon then has several lamellae and eluvial layers and can be designated an "E and Bt" horizon. The complete horizon sequence for these soils could be: Ap-Bw-E and Bt1-E and Bt2-C.

## Suffix Symbols

Lowercase letters are used as suffixes to designate specific kinds of master horizons and layers. The term "accumulation" is used in many of the definitions of such horizons to indicate that these horizons must contain more of the material in question than is presumed to have been present in the parent material. The suffix symbols and their meanings are as follows:

a *Highly decomposed organic material*

This symbol is used with O to indicate the most highly decomposed organic materials, which have a fiber content of less than 17 percent (by volume) after rubbing.

b *Buried genetic horizon*

This symbol is used in mineral soils to indicate identifiable buried horizons with major genetic features that were developed before burial. Genetic horizons may or may not have formed in the overlying material, which may be either like or unlike the assumed parent material of the buried soil. This symbol is not used in organic soils, nor is it used to separate an organic layer from a mineral layer.

c *Concretions or nodules*

This symbol indicates a significant accumulation of concretions or nodules. Cementation is required. The cementing agent commonly is iron, aluminum, manganese, or titanium. It cannot be silica, dolomite, calcite, or more soluble salts.

co *Coprogenous earth*

This symbol, used only with L, indicates a limnic layer of coprogenous earth (or sedimentary peat).

d *Physical root restriction*

This symbol indicates noncemented, root-restricting layers in naturally occurring or human-made sediments or materials. Examples are dense basal till, plowpans, and other mechanically compacted zones.

di *Diatomaceous earth*

This symbol, used only with L, indicates a limnic layer of diatomaceous earth.

e *Organic material of intermediate decomposition*

This symbol is used with O to indicate organic materials of intermediate decomposition. The fiber content of these materials is 17 to 40 percent (by volume) after rubbing.

f *Frozen soil or water*

This symbol indicates that a horizon or layer contains permanent ice. The symbol is not used for seasonally frozen layers or for dry permafrost.

ff *Dry permafrost*

This symbol indicates a horizon or layer that is continually colder than 0 °C and does not contain enough ice to be cemented by ice. This suffix is not used for horizons or layers that have a temperature warmer than 0 °C at some time of the year.

g *Strong gleying*

This symbol indicates either that iron has been reduced and removed during soil formation or that saturation with stagnant water has preserved it in a reduced state. Most of the affected layers have chroma of 2 or less, and many have redox concentrations. The low chroma can represent either the color of reduced iron or the color of uncoated sand and silt particles from which iron has been removed. The symbol g is not used for materials of low chroma that have no history of wetness, such as some shales or E horizons. If g is used with B, pedogenic change in addition to gleying is implied. If no other pedogenic change besides gleying has taken place, the horizon is designated Cg.

h *Illuvial accumulation of organic matter*

This symbol is used with B to indicate the accumulation of illuvial, amorphous, dispersible complexes of organic matter and sesquioxides if the sesquioxide component is dominated by aluminum but is present only in very small quantities. The organo-sesquioxide material coats sand and silt particles. In some horizons these coatings have coalesced, filled pores, and cemented the horizon. The symbol h is also used in combination with s as "Bhs" if the amount of the sesquioxide component is significant but the color value and chroma, moist, of the horizon are 3 or less.

i *Slightly decomposed organic material*

This symbol is used with O to indicate the least decomposed of the organic materials. The fiber content of

these materials is 40 percent or more (by volume) after rubbing.

j *Accumulation of jarosite*

Jarosite is a potassium or iron sulfate mineral that is commonly an alteration product of pyrite that has been exposed to an oxidizing environment. Jarosite has hue of 2.5Y or yellower and normally has chroma of 6 or more, although chromas as low as 3 or 4 have been reported.

jj *Evidence of cryoturbation*

Evidence of cryoturbation includes irregular and broken horizon boundaries, sorted rock fragments, and organic soil materials occurring as bodies and broken layers within and/or between mineral soil layers. The organic bodies and layers are most commonly at the contact between the active layer and the permafrost.

k *Accumulation of carbonates*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of alkaline-earth carbonates, commonly calcium carbonate.

m *Cementation or induration*

This symbol indicates continuous or nearly continuous cementation. It is used only for horizons that are more than 90 percent cemented, although they may be fractured. The cemented layer is physically root-restrictive. The predominant cementing agent (or the two dominant cementing agents) may be indicated by adding defined letter suffixes, singly or in pairs. The horizon suffix km indicates cementation by carbonates; qm, cementation by silica; sm, cementation by iron; ym, cementation by gypsum; kqm, cementation by lime and silica; and zm, cementation by salts more soluble than gypsum.

ma *Marl*

This symbol, used only with L, indicates a limnic layer of marl.

n *Accumulation of sodium*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of exchangeable sodium.

o *Residual accumulation of sesquioxides*

This symbol indicates a residual accumulation of sesquioxides.

p *Tillage or other disturbance*

This symbol indicates a disturbance of the surface layer by mechanical means, pasturing, or similar uses. A disturbed organic horizon is designated Op. A disturbed mineral horizon is designated Ap even though it is clearly a former E, B, or C horizon.

q *Accumulation of silica*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of secondary silica.

r *Weathered or soft bedrock*

This symbol is used with C to indicate cemented layers (moderately cemented or less cemented). Examples are weathered igneous rock and partly consolidated sandstone, siltstone, or shale. The excavation difficulty is low to high.

s *Illuvial accumulation of sesquioxides and organic matter*

This symbol is used with B to indicate an accumulation of illuvial, amorphous, dispersible complexes of organic matter and sesquioxides if both the organic-matter and sesquioxide components are significant and if either the color value or chroma, moist, of the horizon is 4 or more. The symbol is also used in combination with h as "Bhs" if both the organic-matter and sesquioxide components are significant and if the color value and chroma, moist, are 3 or less.

ss *Presence of slickensides*

This symbol indicates the presence of slickensides. Slickensides result directly from the swelling of clay minerals and shear failure, commonly at angles of 20 to 60 degrees above horizontal. They are indicators that other vertic characteristics, such as wedge-shaped peds and surface cracks, may be present.

t *Accumulation of silicate clay*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of silicate clay that either has formed within a horizon and subsequently has been translocated within the horizon or has been moved into the horizon by illuviation, or both. At least some part of the horizon should show evidence of clay accumulation either as coatings on surfaces of peds or in pores, as lamellae, or as bridges between mineral grains.

u *Presence of human-manufactured materials (artifacts)*

This symbol indicates the presence of manufactured artifacts that have been created or modified by humans, usually for a practical purpose in habitation, manufacturing, excavation, or construction activities. Examples of artifacts are processed wood products, liquid petroleum products, coal, combustion by-products, asphalt, fibers and fabrics, bricks, cinder blocks, concrete, plastic, glass, rubber, paper, cardboard, iron and steel, altered metals and minerals, sanitary and medical waste, garbage, and landfill waste.

v *Plinthite*

This symbol indicates the presence of iron-rich, humus-poor, reddish material that is firm or very firm

when moist and hardens irreversibly when exposed to the atmosphere and to repeated wetting and drying.

w *Development of color or structure*

This symbol is used with B to indicate the development of color or structure, or both, with little or no apparent illuvial accumulation of material. It should not be used to indicate a transitional horizon.

x *Fragipan character*

This symbol indicates a genetically developed layer that has a combination of firmness and brittleness and commonly a higher bulk density than the adjacent layers. Some part of the layer is physically root-restrictive.

y *Accumulation of gypsum*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of gypsum.

z *Accumulation of salts more soluble than gypsum*

This symbol indicates an accumulation of salts that are more soluble than gypsum.

## Conventions for Using Letter Suffixes

Many master horizons and layers that are symbolized by a single capital letter have one or more lowercase letter suffixes. The following rules apply:

1. Letter suffixes should directly follow the capital letter.
2. More than three suffixes are rarely used.
3. If more than one suffix is needed, the following letters, if used, are written first: a, d, e, h, i, r, s, t, and w. Except in the Bhs or Crt[2] horizon designations, none of these letters are used in combination in a single horizon.
4. If more than one suffix is needed and the horizon is not buried, the following symbols, if used, are written last: c, f, g, m, v, and x. Some examples: Btc, Bkm, and Bsv.
5. If a horizon is buried, the suffix b is written last. It is used only for buried mineral soils.

A B horizon that has a significant accumulation of clay and also shows evidence of a development of color or structure, or both, is designated Bt (t has precedence over w, s, and h). A B horizon that is gleyed or has accumulations of carbonates, sodium, silica, gypsum, or salts more soluble than gypsum or residual accumulations of sesquioxides carries the appropriate symbol: g, k, n, q, y, z, or o. If illuvial clay also is present, t precedes the other symbol: Bto.

Unless needed for explanatory purposes, the suffixes h, s, and w are not used with g, k, n, q, y, z, or o.

[2] Indicates weathered bedrock or saprolite in which clay films are present.

## Vertical Subdivision

Commonly, a horizon or layer identified by a single letter or a combination of letters has to be subdivided. For this purpose, Arabic numerals are added to the letters of the horizon designation. These numerals follow all the letters. Within a C horizon, for example, successive layers may be designated C1, C2, C3, etc. If the lower part is gleyed and the upper part is not gleyed, the layers may be designated C1-C2-Cg1-Cg2 or C-Cg1-Cg2-R.

These conventions apply whatever the purpose of the subdivision. In many soils a horizon that could be identified by a single set of letters is subdivided because of the need to recognize differences in morphological features, such as structure, color, or texture. These divisions are numbered consecutively with Arabic numerals, but the numbering starts again with 1 wherever in the profile any letter of the horizon symbol changes, e.g., Bt1-Bt2-Btk1-Btk2 (not Bt1-Bt2-Btk3-Btk4). The numbering of vertical subdivisions within a horizon is not interrupted at a discontinuity (indicated by a numerical prefix) if the same letter combination is used in both materials, e.g., Bs1-Bs2-2Bs3-2Bs4 (not Bs1-Bs2-2Bs1-2Bs2).

During sampling for laboratory analyses, thick soil horizons are sometimes subdivided even though differences in morphology are not evident in the field. These subdivisions are identified by Arabic numerals that follow the respective horizon designations. For example, four layers of a Bt horizon sampled by 10-cm increments are designated Bt1, Bt2, Bt3, and Bt4. If the horizon has already been subdivided because of differences in morphological features, the set of Arabic numerals that identifies the additional sampling subdivisions follows the first numeral. For example, three layers of a Bt2 horizon sampled by 10-cm increments are designated Bt21, Bt22, and Bt23. The descriptions for each of these sampling subdivisions can be the same, and a statement indicating that the horizon has been subdivided only for sampling purposes can be added.

## Discontinuities

Arabic numerals are used as prefixes to horizon designations (preceding the letters A, E, B, C, and R) to indicate discontinuities in mineral soils. These prefixes are distinct from the Arabic numerals that are used as suffixes denoting vertical subdivisions.

A discontinuity that can be identified by a number prefix is a significant change in particle-size distribution or mineralogy that indicates a difference in the material from which the horizons have formed and/or a significant difference in age, unless that difference in age is indicated by the suffix b. Symbols that identify discontinuities are used only when they can contribute substantially to an understanding of the relationships among horizons. The stratification common to soils that formed in alluvium is not designated as a

discontinuity, unless particle-size distribution differs markedly from layer to layer (i.e., particle-size classes are strongly contrasting), even though genetic horizons may have formed in the contrasting layers.

Where a soil has formed entirely in one kind of material, the whole profile is understood to be material 1 and the number prefix is omitted from the symbol. Similarly, the uppermost material in a profile consisting of two or more contrasting materials is understood to be material 1, but the number is omitted. Numbering starts with the second layer of contrasting material, which is designated 2. Underlying contrasting layers are numbered consecutively. Even when the material of a layer below material 2 is similar to material 1, it is designated 3 in the sequence; the numbers indicate a change in materials, not types of material. Where two or more consecutive horizons have formed in the same kind of material, the same prefix number is applied to all the designations of horizons in that material: Ap-E-Bt1-2Bt2-2Bt3-2BC. The suffix numbers designating subdivisions of the Bt horizon continue in consecutive order across the discontinuity.

If an R layer is present below a soil that has formed in residuum and if the material of the R layer is judged to be like the material from which the soil has developed, the Arabic-number prefix is not used. The prefix is used, however, if it is thought that the R layer would produce material unlike that in the solum, e.g., A-Bt-C-2R or A-Bt-2R. If part of the solum has formed in residuum, the symbol R is given the appropriate prefix: Ap-Bt1-2Bt2-2Bt3-2C1-2C2-2R.

A buried horizon (designated by the letter b) presents special problems. It is obviously not in the same deposit as the overlying horizons. Some buried horizons, however, have formed in material that is lithologically like the overlying deposit. A prefix is not used to distinguish material of such a buried horizon. If the material in which a horizon of a buried soil has formed is lithologically unlike the overlying material, however, the discontinuity is indicated by a number prefix and the symbol for the buried horizon also is used, e.g., Ap-Bt1-Bt2-BC-C-2ABb-2Btb1-2Btb2-2C.

Discontinuities between different kinds of layers in organic soils are not identified. In most cases such differences are identified either by letter-suffix designations if the different layers are organic or by the master symbol if the different layers are mineral.

## Use of the Prime Symbol

If two or more horizons of the same kind are separated by one or more horizons of a different kind in a pedon, identical letter and number symbols can be used for those horizons that have the same characteristics. For example, the sequence A-E-Bt-E-Btx-C identifies a soil that has two E horizons. To emphasize this characteristic, the prime symbol (′) is added after the master-horizon symbol of the lower of the two horizons that have identical designations, e.g., A-E-Bt-E′-Btx-C. The prime symbol, when appropriate, is applied to the capital-letter horizon designation, and any lowercase letter symbols follow it: B′t. The prime symbol is used only when the letter designations of the two layers in question are completely identical. In the rare cases when three layers have identical letter symbols, double prime symbols can be used for the lowest of these layers: E′′.

The same principle applies in designating layers of organic soils. The prime symbol is used only to distinguish two or more horizons that have identical symbols, e.g., Oi-C-O′i-C′ (when the soil has two identical Oi layers) or Oi-C-Oe-C′ (when the two C layers are of the same kind).

## Use of the Caret Symbol

The "caret" symbol (^) is used as a prefix to master horizon designations to indicate mineral or organic layers of human-transported material. This material has been moved horizontally onto a pedon from a source area outside of that pedon by directed human activity, usually with the aid of machinery. All horizons and layers formed in human-transported material are indicated by a "caret" prefix (e.g., ^A-^C-Ab-Btb). When they can contribute substantially to an understanding of the relationship of the horizons or layers, Arabic numeral prefixes may be used before the caret symbol to indicate the presence of discontinuities within the human-transported material or between the human- transported material and underlying layers (e.g., ^A-^C1-2^C2-3Bwb).

# *Appendix*

## Laboratory Methods for Soil Taxonomy

The standard laboratory methods upon which the operational definitions of this edition of *Soil Taxonomy* are based are described in the *Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual* (USDA, in press). Copies of standard laboratory data sheets are included with the typifying pedons in the chapters on soil orders in this edition of *Soil Taxonomy*. For specific information about an analytical procedure, these data sheets should be checked and reference should be made to the *Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual*. Much of the information included in this appendix is derived from "Soil Survey Laboratory Methods for Characterizing Physical and Chemical Properties and Mineralology of Soils" (Kimble, Knox, and Holzhey, 1993). Also, the information is summarized the *Soil Survey Laboratory Information Manual* (USDA, NRCS, 1995).

Pedon characterization data, or any soil survey data, are most useful when the operations for collecting the data are well understood. The mental pictures and conceptual definitions that aid in visualizing properties and processes often differ from the information supplied by an analysis. Also, results differ by method, even though two methods may carry the same name or the same concept. There is uncertainty in comparing one bit of data with another without knowledge of how both bits were gathered. Operational definitions, definitions tied to a specific method, are needed. This soil taxonomy has many class limits (at all levels) that are based on chemical or physical properties determined in the laboratory. One can question a given limit, but that is not the purpose of this appendix. This appendix is written to show what procedures are used for given class limits. By using specific class limits, everyone will come to the same classification if they follow the same procedures.

This taxonomy is based almost entirely on criteria that are defined operationally. One example is the definition of particle-size classes. There is no one definition of clay that works well for all soils. Hence, an operation for testing the validity of a clay measurement and a default operation for those situations where the clay measurement is not valid are defined. The default method is based on a water content at 1500 kPa and on content of organic carbon.

### Data Elements Used in Classifying Soils

Detailed explanations of laboratory methods are given in the *Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual* (Burt, 2004). Each method is listed by code on the data sheet at the beginning of the chapters describing soil orders. On the data sheets presented with each order, the method code is shown for each determination made. These data sheets should be consulted for reference to the *Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual*. This manual specifies method codes for pedon sampling, sample handling, site selection, sample collection, and sample preparation.

The units of measure reported on the data sheets are not SI units. Following are SI conversions:

1 meq/100 g = 1 cmol(+)/kg
1 mmho/cm = 1 dS/m
15 bar = 1500 kPa
$^1/_3$ bar = 33 kPa
$^1/_{10}$ bar = 10 kPa

In this taxonomy the terms (1) particle-size analysis (size separates), (2) texture, and (3) particle-size classes are all used. Particle-size analysis is needed to determine texture and particle-size classes. Texture differs from particle-size class in that texture includes only the fine-earth fraction (less than 2 mm), while particle size includes both the fraction less than 2 mm in size and the fraction equal to or more than 2 mm.

### Physical Analyses

*Atterberg limits* are determined on the fraction less than 0.4 mm in size. Plasticity index is the difference in water content between liquid limit and plastic limit. It is the range of water content over which a soil paste can be deformed without breaking, but it does not include flow as a liquid under operationally defined conditions. Liquid limit is the minimum water content at which the paste begins to flow as a liquid. Samples that do not deform without breaking at any water content are reported as NP, nonplastic. Operational definitions are in the *Annual Book of ASTM Standards* (ASTM, 1998).

*Bulk density* is obtained typically by equilibration of Saran-coated natural fabric clods at designated pressure differentials. Bulk densities are determined at two or more water contents. For coarse textured and moderately coarse textured soils, they are determined when the sample is at 10 kPa suction and when ovendry. For soils of medium and finer texture, the bulk densities are determined when the sample is at 33 kPa suction and when ovendry.

Bulk density determined at 33 kPa suction is used to convert other analytical results to a volumetric basis (for example, kg of organic carbon per $m^3$).

*Coefficient of linear extensibility (COLE)* is a derived value. It is computed from the difference in bulk density between a moist clod and an ovendry clod. It is based on the shrinkage of a natural soil clod between a water content of 33 kPa (10 kPa for sandier soils) and ovendry.

*Linear extensibility (LE)* of a soil layer is the product of the thickness, in centimeters, multiplied by the COLE of the layer in question. The LE of a soil is the sum of these products for all soil horizons. COLE multiplied by 100 is called linear extensibility percent (LEP).

*Water retention difference (WRD)* is computed from water retentions at 33 kPa (10 kPa for sandier soils) and 1500 kPa suction. It is converted to cm of water per cm of soil through use of the bulk density. The 33 or 10 kPa water is determined by desorption of the natural fabric clods, and the 1500 kPa water is determined by desorption of crushed soil.

## Chemical Analyses

*Aluminum saturation* is the amount of KCl-extractable Al divided by extractable bases (extracted by ammonium acetate) plus the KCl-extractable Al. It is expressed as percent. A general rule of thumb is that if there is more than 50 percent Al saturation, Al problems in the soil are likely. The problems may not be related to Al toxicity but to a deficiency of calcium and/or magnesium.

*Ammonium-oxalate-extractable aluminum, iron, and silicon* are determined by a single extraction made in the dark with 0.2 molar ammonium oxalate at a pH of 3.5. The amount of aluminum, iron, and silicon is measured by atomic absorption and reported as a percentage of the total dry weight of the fine-earth fraction. These values are used as criteria in identifying soils in the Andisol and Spodosol orders and in the andic and spodic subgroups in other orders. They also are used to determine amorhic and ferrihydric mineralogy classes. The procedure extracts iron, aluminum, and silicon from organic matter and from amorphous mineral material. It is used in conjunction with dithionite-citrate and pyrophosphate extractions to identify the sources of iron and aluminum in the soil. Pyrophosphate extracts iron and aluminum from organic matter. Dithionite citrate extracts iron from iron oxides and oxyhydroxides as well as from organic matter.

*Base saturation* is reported on the data sheets as percent of the CEC. It is reported as CEC by sum of cations at pH 8.2 and by ammonium acetate at pH 7. Base saturation by ammonium acetate is equal to the sum of the bases extracted by ammonium acetate, divided by the CEC (by ammonium acetate), and multiplied by 100. If extractable calcium is not reported on the data sheet because of free carbonates or salts in the sample, then the base saturation is assumed to be 100 percent.

Base saturation percentage by sum of cations is equal to the sum of bases extracted by ammonium acetate, divided by the CEC (by sum of cations), and multiplied by 100. This value is not reported if either extractable calcium or extractable acidity is omitted.

Differences between the two methods of determining base saturation reflect the amount of the pH-dependent CEC. Class definitions in this taxonomy specify which method is used.

The sum of exchangeable cations is considered equal to the sum of bases extracted by ammonium acetate unless carbonates, gypsum, or other salts are present. When these salts are present, the sum of the bases extracted by ammonium acetate typically exceeds 100 percent of the CEC. Therefore, a base saturation of 100 percent is assumed. The amount of calcium from carbonates is usually much larger than the amount of magnesium from the carbonates. Extractable calcium is not shown on the data sheet if more than a trace (more than 0.4 percent) of carbonates (reported as calcium carbonate) is present or if calculated base saturation exceeds 110 percent, based on CEC by ammonium acetate at pH 7.

*Calcium carbonate equivalent* is the amount of carbonates in the soil as measured by treating the sample with HCl. The evolved carbon dioxide is measured manometrically. The amount of carbonate is then calculated as a calcium carbonate equivalent regardless of the form of carbonates (dolomite, sodium carbonate, magnesium carbonate, etc.) in the sample. Calcium carbonate equivalent is reported as a percentage of the total dry weight of the sample. It can be reported on material that is less than 2 mm or less than 20 mm in size.

*Calcium sulfate as gypsum* is determined by extraction in water and precipitation in acetone. The amount of gypsum is reported as a percentage of the total dry weight of the fraction less than 2 mm in size and the fraction less than 20 mm in size. Drying soils to oven-dryness, the standard base for reporting the data, removes part of the water of hydration from the gypsum. Many measured values, particularly water retention values, must be recalculated to compensate for the weight of the water of hydration lost during drying.

*Cation-exchange capacity (CEC)* by ammonium acetate (at pH 7), by sum of cations (at pH 8.2), and by bases plus aluminum is given on the data sheets in the chapters on soil orders. The CEC depends on the method of analysis as well as the nature of the exchange complex. CEC by sum of cations at pH 8.2 is calculated by adding the sum of bases and the extractable acidity. CEC by ammonium acetate is measured at pH 7. CEC by bases plus aluminum, or effective cation-exchange capacity (ECEC), is derived by adding the sum of bases and KCl-extractable Al. Aluminum extracted by 1N KCl is negligible if the extractant pH rises toward 5.5. ECEC then is equal to extractable bases. CEC and ECEC are reported on the data sheets as meq/100 g soil.

The reported CEC may differ from the CEC of the soil at its natural pH. The standard methods allow the comparison of one

soil with another even though the pH of the extractant differs from the pH of the natural soil. Cation-exchange capacity by ammonium acetate and by sum of cations applies to all soils. CEC at pH 8.2 is not reported if the soil contains free carbonates because bases are extracted from the carbonates. The effective CEC (ECEC) is reported only for acid soils. ECEC is not reported for soils having soluble salts, although it can be calculated by subtracting the soluble components from the extractable components. ECEC also may be defined as bases plus aluminum plus hydrogen. That is the more common definition for agronomic interpretations. This taxonomy specifies bases plus aluminum.

Generally, the ECEC is less than the CEC at pH 7, which in turn is less than the CEC at pH 8.2. If the soil is dominated by positively charged colloids (e.g., iron oxides), however, the trend is reversed. Most soils have negatively charged colloids, which cause the CEC to increase with increasing pH. This difference in CEC is commonly called the pH-dependent or variable charge. The CEC at the soil pH can be estimated by plotting the CEC of the soil vs. the pH of the extractant on a graph and reading the CEC at the soil pH.

CEC measurements at pH levels other than those described in the paragraphs above and CEC derived by use of other cations will yield somewhat different results. It is important to know the procedure, pH, and cation used before evaluating CEC data or comparing data from different sources.

*Citric-acid-extractable phosphorus (acid-soluble phosphate)* is used to separate the mollic epipedon (less than 1,500 mg/kg $P_2O_5$) from the anthropic epipedon (equal to or more than 1,500 mg/kg).

*Color of sodium-pyrophosphate extract* is used as a criterion in the separation of different types of organic materials. A saturated solution is made by adding 1 g of sodium pyrophosphate to 4 ml of distilled water, and a moist organic matter sample is added to the solution. The sample is mixed and allowed to stand overnight, chromatographic paper is dipped in the solution, and the color of the paper is ascertained through use of a Munsell color chart.

*Electrical conductivity (EC)* is the conductivity of the water extracted from saturated paste. The EC is used to determine the total content of salts. It is reported as mmhos/cm, which is equal to dS/m.

*Exchangeable manganese and calcium plus exchangeable acidity (at pH 8.2)* is used as a criterion for the natric horizon. The exchangeable acidity is measured at pH 8.2, and the manganese and calcium are extracted at pH 7.0 with ammonium acetate. See the paragraphs about extractable acidity and exchangeable bases.

*Exchangeable sodium percentage (ESP)* is reported as a percentage of the CEC by ammonium acetate at pH 7. Water-soluble sodium is converted to meq/100 g soil. This value is subtracted from extractable sodium, divided by the CEC (by ammonium acetate), and multiplied by 100. An ESP of more than 15 percent is used in this taxonomy as a criterion for the natric horizon.

*Extractable acidity* is the acidity released from the soil by a barium chloride-triethanolamine solution buffered at pH 8.2. It includes all the acidity generated by replacement of the hydrogen and aluminum from permanent and pH-dependent exchange sites. It is reported as meq/100 g soil. Extractable acidity data are reported on some data sheets as exchangeable acidity and on others as exchangeable $H^+$.

*Extractable aluminum* is exchangeable aluminum extracted by 1N KCl. It is a major constituent only in strongly acid soils (pH of less than 5.0). Aluminum will precipitate if the pH rises above 4.5 to 5.0 during analysis. The extractant KCl usually affects the soil pH 1 unit or less. Extractable aluminum is measured at the NSSL by atomic absorption. Many laboratories measure the aluminum by titration with a base to the phenopthalein end point. Titration measures exchangeable acidity as well as extractable aluminum. Soils with a pH below 4.0 or 4.5 are likely to have values determined by atomic absorption similar to values determined by titration because very little hydrogen is typically on the exchange complex. If there is a large percentage of organic matter, however, some hydrogen may be present. For some soils it is important to know which procedure was used. Extractable aluminum is reported as meq/100 g soil.

*Extractable bases (calcium, magnesium, sodium, and potassium)* are extracted with ammonium acetate buffered at pH 7. They are equilibrated, filtered in an auto-extractor, and measured by atomic absorption. They are reported as meq/100 g soil. The bases are extracted from the cation-exchange complex by displacement with ammonium ions. The term "extractable bases" is used instead of "exchangeable bases" because soluble salts and some bases from carbonates can be included in the extract.

Sum of bases is the sum of the calcium, magnesium, sodium, and potassium described in the previous paragraph.

*Iron and aluminum* extracted by citrate are removed in a single extraction. They are measured by atomic absorption and reported as a percentage of the total dry weight. The iron is primarily from ferric oxides (hematite, magnetite) and iron oxyhydroxides (goethite). Aluminum substituted into these minerals is extracted simultaneously. The dithionite reduces the ferric iron, and the citrate stabilizes the iron by chelation. Iron and aluminum bound in organic matter are extracted if the citrate is a stronger chelator than the organic molecules. Manganese extracted by this procedure also is recorded. The iron extracted is commonly related to the clay distribution within a pedon.

*Melanic index* is used in the identification of the melanic epipedon. The index is related to the ratio of the humic and fulvic acids in the organic fraction of the soil (Honna, Yamamoto, and Matsui, 1988). About 0.50 gram of air-dried soil material that is less than 2 mm in size is shaken with 25 ml

of 0.5 percent NaOH solution in a 50-ml centrifuge tube for 1 hour at room temperature. One drop of a flocculating agent is added, and the mixture is centrifuged at 4,000 rpm for 10 minutes. The melanic index is the ratio of the absorbance at 450 nm over that at 520 nm.

*Nitrogen* in the NSSL data base is reported as a percentage of the total dry weight. A soil sample is combusted at high temperature with oxygen to release NOx, and the N2 is measured by thermal conductivity detection.

*Optical density of the ammonium oxalate extract (ODOE)* is determined with a spectrophotometer using a 430 nm wavelength. An increase in the ODOE value in an illuvial horizon, relative to an overlying eluvial horizon, indicates an accumulation of translocated organic materials.

*Organic carbon* data in the National Soil Survey Laboratory (NSSL) data base have been determined mostly by wet digestion (Walkley, 1935). Because of environmental concerns about waste products, however, that procedure is no longer in use. The only procedure that is currently used to determine organic carbon is a dry combustion procedure that determines the percent of total carbon. The content of organic carbon is determined by subtracting the amount of carbon contributed by carbonates from total carbon data. The content of organic carbon determined by this computation is very close to the content determined by the wet digestion procedure.

*pH* is measured in water and in salts. The pH measured in water is determined in distilled water typically mixed 1:1 with dry soil. The pH measured in potassium chloride is determined in 1N KCl solution mixed 1:1 with soil. The pH measured in calcium chloride is determined in 0.01M $CaCl_2$ solution mixed 2:1 with soil.

The pH is measured by a pH meter in a soil-water or soil-salt solution. The extent of the dilution is shown in the heading on the data sheets. A ratio of 1:1 means one part dry soil and one part water, by weight.

Measurement of pH in a dilute salt solution is common because it tends to mask seasonal variations in pH. Readings in 0.01M $CaCl_2$ tend to be uniform regardless of the time of year. Readings in 1N KCl also tend to be uniform. The former are more popular in regions with less acid soils. The latter are more popular in regions with more acid soils. If KCl is used to extract exchangeable aluminum, the pH reading (in KCl) shows the pH at which the aluminum was extracted.

pH in sodium fluoride (NaF pH) is measured in a suspension of 1 gram of soil in 50 ml 1M NaF after stirring for 2 minutes. A NaF pH of 9.4 or more is a strong indicator that short-range-order minerals dominate the soil exchange complex. A NaF pH of 8.4 or more is a criterion for the isotic mineralogy class. It indicates a significant component of short-range-order minerals in the exchange complex. Soil materials with free carbonates also have high NaF pH values. NaF is poisonous with ingestion and eye contact and moderately hazardous with skin contact.

*Phosphate retention (P ret.)* refers to the percent phosphorus retained by soil after equilibration with 1,000 mg/kg phosphorus solution for 24 hours. This procedure is used in the classification of andic soil materials. It identifies soils in which phosphorus fixation may be a problem affecting agronomic uses.

*Potassium-hydroxide-extractable aluminum* is determined by atomic absorption spectrophotometry. This procedure has been used in the past but is not used in this taxonomy. The data can be used in the field to estimate the amount of ammonium-oxalate-extractable aluminum.

*Sodium adsorption ratio (SAR)* was developed as a measure of irrigation water quality. Water-soluble sodium is divided by water-soluble calcium and magnesium. The formula is $SAR = Na/[(Ca+Mg)/2]^{0.5}$. An SAR of 13 or more is used as an alternate to the ESP criterion for the natric horizon.

*Sodium-pyrophosphate-extractable iron and aluminum* are determined by a single extraction and measured by atomic absorption. Results are reported as a percentage of the total dry weight. This procedure has been used widely to extract iron and aluminum from organic matter. It successfully removes much of the organo-metal accumulations in spodic horizons but extracts little of the inorganically bound iron and aluminum.

*Total salts* is calculated from the electrical conductivity of the saturation extract. It is reported as a weight percentage of the total water-soluble salts in the soil.

*Water-soluble cations and anions* are determined in water extracted from a saturated paste. The cations include calcium, magnesium, sodium, and potassium, and the anions include carbonate, bicarbonate, sulfate, chloride, nitrate, fluoride, phosphate, silicate, and borate. The cations and anions can be reported as cmol(+)/l.

*Water-soluble sulfate* is used in the definition of the sulfuric horizon. The sulfate is determined in the saturation extract and is reported as one of the anions.

## Mineral Analyses

Mineralogy of the clay, silt, and sand fractions is needed for classification in some taxa. X-ray diffraction (XRD) and thermal and petrographic analyses are classically viewed as mineralogy techniques, although some mineralogy classes (e.g., ferritic, amorphic, gypsic, carbonatic, and isotic) are determined by chemical and/or physical analyses.

Halloyisite, illite, kaolinite, smectite, vermiculite, and other minerals in the clay fraction (less than 0.002 mm) may be identified by XRD analysis. Relative peak positions identify clay minerals, and peak intensities are the basis for semi-quantitative estimates of mineral percent by weight in the clay fraction. The NRCS Soil Survey Laboratory (SSL) reports relative peak intensities of clay minerals from XRD in a five-class system that generally corresponds to percent by weight of a mineral (class 1 = 0 to 2 percent, class 2 = 3 to 9 percent,

class 3 = 10 to 29 percent, class 4 = 30 to 49 percent, and class 5 = more than 50 percent). There are multiple potential interferences in the analysis of a clay sample (Burt, 2004). Peak intensities may be attenuated by one or more interferences, and the reported class may underestimate the actual amount of mineral present. Thus, these assigned percentages are given for informational use only and should not be used to quantify minerals in a clay fraction. Clay minerals are listed in the order of decreasing quantity on the data sheet. XRD is used to determine smectitic, vermiculitic, illitic, kaolinitic, or halloysitic mineralogy classes in *Soil Taxonomy*. Some family classes require a clay mineral to be more than one-half (by weight) of the clay fraction, corresponding to XRD class 5. Other mineralogy classes require more of the specified mineral than any other single mineral, corresponding to the clay mineral being listed first on the SSL data sheet.

Kaolinite and gibbsite may be determined by thermal analysis. Results from this analysis are reported as percent by weight in the clay fraction and are more quantitative than the results of XRD for these minerals. Thermal analysis is a technique in which the dried sample (typically the clay fraction) is heated in a controlled environment. Certain minerals undergo decomposition at specific temperature ranges, and the mineral can be quantified when compared to standard clays. Results may be used to determine kaolinitic and gibbsitic family mineralogy classes, complementary to or in lieu of XRD data.

Resistant minerals, weatherable minerals, volcanic glass, magnesium-silicate minerals, glauconitic pellets, mica, and stable mica pseudomorphs may be determined by petrographic analysis. Magnesium-silicate minerals (e.g., serpentine minerals) and glauconitic pellets are reported as percent by weight in the fine-earth fraction (less than 2.0 mm). Resistant minerals, weatherable minerals, and volcanic glass, are determined as percent of total grains counted in the coarse silt through very coarse sand (0.02 to 2.0 mm) fractions, while mica and stable mica pseudomorphs are determined in the 0.02 to 0.25 mm fractions (coarse silt, very fine sand, and fine sand).

Individual mineral grains in a specific particle-size fraction are mounted on a glass slide, identified, and counted (at least 300 grains) under a polarizing light microscope. Data are reported as percent of grains counted for a specific size fraction. This percentage is generally regarded as equivalent to weight percent for spherical minerals. Alternative techniques are available for determining weight percent micas and other platy grains in a soil separate. The usual SSL protocol is to count mineral grains in either the coarse silt (0.02-0.05 mm), very fine sand (0.05-0.1 mm), or fine sand (0.10-0.25 mm) fraction, whichever one has the highest weight percent based on particle-size analysis. Mineral or glass content in the analyzed fraction is assumed to be representative of the content in the whole 0.02 to 2.0 mm or fine-earth fraction. It may be necessary to count additional fractions to obtain a reliable estimate of volcanic glass content in soil materials with a non-uniform distribution of glass in dominant particle-size fractions. If more than one fraction is counted, the weighted average of the counted fractions may be calculated to represent glass content in the 0.02 to 2.0 mm fraction. For soils expected to have significant amounts of glass in dominant fractions of medium, coarse, or very coarse sand, a request is made to count grains in the larger fractions.

Two general types of petrographic analysis are conducted in the Soil Survey Laboratory: (a) complete mineral grain count, in which all minerals in the sample are identified and counted, or (b) a glass count, in which glass, glass aggregates, glass-coated minerals, and glassy materials are identified and quantified and all other minerals are counted as "other." "Glass-coated grains" are crystalline mineral grains (e.g., quartz and feldspar) in which more than 50 percent of the grain is covered in glass. "Glassy materials" is a general category for grains that have optical properties of glass but lack definitive characteristics of glass, glass-coated grains, or glass aggregates. Percent of total resistant minerals is reported on the SSL data sheet. (Calcite and more soluble minerals are included in determinations of the percentage of resistant minerals reported on the laboratory data sheet but are not included in the values used in this taxonomy.) Total percent volcanic glass, weatherable minerals, or other groups of minerals used in classification may be calculated by summing the percent of individual minerals included in the group. A complete list of minerals in each category is in the *Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual* (Burt, 2004).

## Other Information Useful in Classifying Soils

Volumetric amounts of organic carbon are used in some taxonomic criteria. The following calculation is used: (Datum [percent] times bulk density [at 33 or 10 kPa] times thickness [cm]) divided by 10. This calculation is normally used for organic carbon, but it can be used for some other measurements. Each horizon is calculated separately, and the product of the calculations can be summed to any desired depth, commonly 100 cm.

Ratios that can be developed from the data are useful in making internal checks of the data, in making management-related interpretations, and in answering taxonomic questions. Some of the ratios are used as criteria in determining argillic, kandic, or oxic horizons.

The ratio of 1500 kPa water to clay is used to indicate the relevancy of the particle-size determination. If the ratio is 0.6 or more and the soil does not have andic soil properties, incomplete dispersion of the clay is assumed and clay is estimated by the following formula: Clay % = 2.5(% water retained at 1500 kPa tension - % organic carbon). For a typical soil with well dispersed clays, the ratio is 0.4. Some soil-related factors that can cause deviation from the 0.4 value are: (1) low-activity clays (kaolinites, chlorites, and some micas), which tend to have a ratio of 0.35 or below; (2) iron oxides and clay-size carbonates, which tend to decrease the ratio; (3) organic

matter, which increases the ratio because it increases the water content at 1500 kPa; (4) andic and spodic materials and materials with an isotic mineralogy class, which increase the ratio because they do not disperse well; (5) large amounts of gypsum; and (6) clay minerals within grains of sand and silt. These clay minerals hold water at 1500 kPa and thus increase the ratio. They are most common in shale and in pseudomorphs of primary minerals in saprolite.

The ratio of CEC by ammonium acetate at pH 7 to clay can be used to estimate clay mineralogy and clay dispersion. If the ratio is multiplied by 100, the product is cmol(+)/kg clay. The following ratios are typical for the following classes of clay mineralogy: less than 0.2, kaolinitic; 0.2-0.3, kaolinitic or mixed; 0.3-0.5, mixed or illitic; 0.5-0.7, mixed or smectitic; and more than 0.7, smectitic. These ratios are most valid when some detailed mineralogy data are available. If the ratio of 1500 kPa water to clay is 0.25 or less or 0.6 or more, the ratio of CEC by ammonium acetate to clay is not valid. Ratios of 1500 kPa water to clay of 0.6 or more are typical of poorly dispersed clays, andic and spodic materials, and materials with an isotic mineralogy class, and ratios of less than 0.3 are common in some soils that contain large amounts of gypsum.

A ratio of CEC at pH 8.2 to 1500 kPa water of more than 1.5 and more exchange acidity than the sum of bases plus KCl-extractable Al imply a soil with a high pH-dependent charge. Along with bulk density data, they help to distinguish soils that have andic and spodic materials or soils that have materials with an isotic mineralogy class from soils with minerals that are more crystalline.

## Literature Cited

American Society for Testing and Materials. 1998. Annual Book of ASTM Standards. Vol. 4.08, D 4318-95a.

Burt, R., ed. 2004 Soil Survey Laboratory Methods Manual. Soil Survey Investigations Report 42, Version 4.0. United States Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service, National Soil Survey Center.

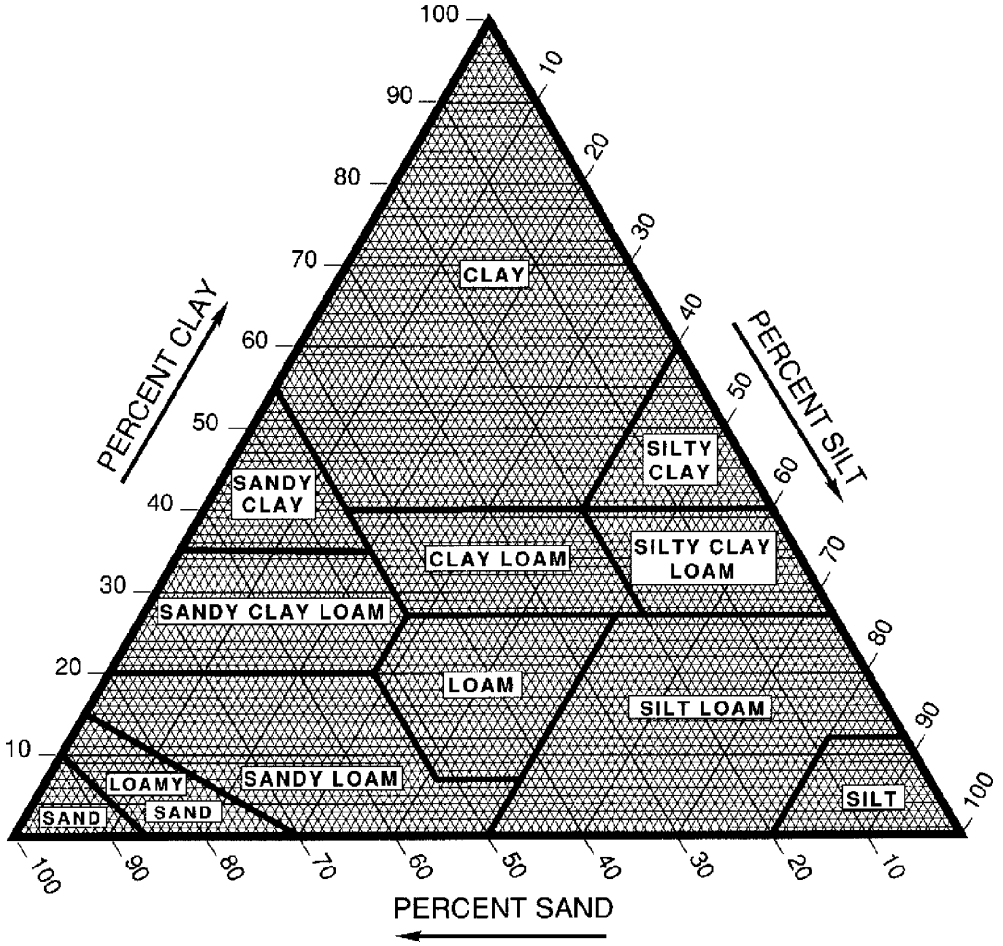
Honna,T., S. Yamamoto, and K. Matsui. 1988. A Simple Procedure to Determine Melanic Index That Is Useful for Differentiating Melanic from Fulvic Andisols. Pedol. 32: 69-78.

Kimble, J.M, E.G. Knox, and C.S. Holzhey. 1993. Soil Survey Laboratory Methods for Characterizing Physical and Chemical Properties and Mineralology of Soils. *In* Applications of Agriculture Analysis in Environmental Studies, ASTM Spec. Pub. 1162, K.B. Hoddinott and T.A. O'Shay, eds.

United States Department of Agriculture, Natural Resources Conservation Service. 1995. Soil Survey Laboratory Information Manual. National Soil Survey Center, Soil Survey Laboratory, Soil Survey Investigations Report 45.

Walkley, A. 1935. An Examination of Methods for Determining Organic Carbon and Nitrogen in Soils. J. Agr. Sci. 25: 598-609.

**Percentages of clay (less than 0.002 mm), silt (0.002 to 0.05 mm), and sand (0.05 to 2.0 mm) in the basic soil textural classes**



# *Index*


## A

A horizons. *See* Horizons and layers.
Abrupt textural change ..... 14
Acraquox ..... 235
Acroperox ..... 236
Acrotorrox ..... 240
Acrudox ..... 241
Acrustox ..... 245
Agric horizon ..... 9
Alaquods ..... 251
Albaqualfs ..... 35
Albaquults ..... 262
Albic horizon ..... 9
Albic materials ..... 15
Albolls ..... 192
Alfisols ..... 35
Alorthods ..... 257
Andic soil properties ..... 15
Andisols ..... 77
Anhydrous conditions ..... 15
Anhyorthels ..... 145
Anhyturbels ..... 149
Aniso class ..... 296
Anthracambids ..... 108
Anthrepts ..... 159
Anthropic epipedon ..... 5
Aqualfs ..... 35
Aquands ..... 77
Aquents ..... 123
Aquepts ..... 159
Aquerts ..... 283
Aquic conditions ..... 23
Aquic moisture regime. *See* Soil moisture regimes.
Aquicambids ..... 108
Aquisalids ..... 122
Aquiturbels ..... 149
Aquods ..... 251
Aquolls ..... 193
Aquorthels ..... 145
Aquox ..... 235
Aquults ..... 261
Arents ..... 127
Argialbolls ..... 192
Argiaquolls ..... 193
Argicryids ..... 112
Argicryolls ..... 197
Argids ..... 97
Argidurids ..... 115
Argigypsids ..... 118
Argillic horizon ..... 10
Argiorthels ..... 146
Argiudolls ..... 202
Argiustolls ..... 209
Argixerolls ..... 225
Aridic moisture regime. *See* Soil moisture regimes.
Aridisols ..... 97

## B

B horizons. *See* Horizons and layers.
Bottom tier ..... 23
Buried soils ..... 2

## C

C horizons or layers. *See* Horizons and layers.
Calcareous and reaction classes for mineral soils ..... 304
Calciaquerts ..... 284
Calciaquolls ..... 193
Calciargids ..... 97
Calcic horizon ..... 10
Calcicryepts ..... 166
Calcicryids ..... 113
Calcicryolls ..... 198
Calcids ..... 105
Calcigypsids ..... 119
Calcitorrerts ..... 287
Calciudolls ..... 204
Calciustepts ..... 178
Calciusterts ..... 290
Calciustolls ..... 213
Calcixerepts ..... 184
Calcixererts ..... 293
Calcixerolls ..... 227
Cambic horizon ..... 11
Cambids ..... 108
Caret symbol in horizon designators ..... 316
Cation-exchange activity classes for mineral soils ..... 303
Chemical ananyses ..... 318

Coatings (classes) on sands ..... 305
Coefficient of linear extensibility (COLE) ..... 16
Control section of Histosols and Histels ..... 22
Coprogenous earth. *See* Organic soil material.
Cryalfs ..... 44
Cryands ..... 81
Cryaqualfs ..... 37
Cryaquands ..... 78
Cryaquents ..... 124
Cryaquepts ..... 160
Cryaquods ..... 252
Cryaquolls ..... 194
Cryepts ..... 166
Cryerts ..... 287
Cryic temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.
Cryids ..... 112
Cryods ..... 253
Cryofibrists ..... 153
Cryofluvents ..... 128
Cryofolists ..... 154
Cryohemists ..... 155
Cryolls ..... 197
Cryopsamments ..... 139
Cryorthents ..... 134
Cryosaprists ..... 156
Cryoturbation ..... 24
Cryrendolls ..... 201

## D

Densic contact ..... 25
Densic materials ..... 25
Diagnostic subsurface horizons ..... 9
Diagnostic surface horizons ..... 5
Diatomaceous earth. *See* Organic soil material.
Discontinuities identified by horizon designators ..... 315
Duraqualfs ..... 37
Duraquands ..... 78
Duraquerts ..... 284
Duraquods ..... 252
Duraquolls ..... 194
Duricryands ..... 81
Duricryods ..... 253
Duricryolls ..... 198
Durids ..... 115
Durihumods ..... 256
Durinodes ..... 16
Duripan ..... 11
Duritorrands ..... 85
Durixeralfs ..... 71
Durixerepts ..... 185
Durixererts ..... 293
Durixerolls ..... 227
Durorthods ..... 257
Durudands ..... 86
Durudepts ..... 172
Durustalfs ..... 60
Durustands ..... 92
Durustepts ..... 179
Durustolls ..... 214
Dystraquerts ..... 284
Dystrocryepts ..... 166
Dystrogelepts ..... 171
Dystroxerepts ..... 186
Dystrudepts ..... 173
Dystruderts ..... 289
Dystrustepts ..... 179
Dystrusterts ..... 290

## E

E horizons. *See* Horizons and layers.
Endoaqualfs ..... 37
Endoaquands ..... 78
Endoaquents ..... 124
Endoaquepts ..... 161
Endoaquerts ..... 285
Endoaquods ..... 252
Endoaquolls ..... 194
Endoaquults ..... 262
Entisols ..... 123
Epiaqualfs ..... 39
Epiaquands ..... 79
Epiaquents ..... 125
Epiaquepts ..... 162
Epiaquerts ..... 286
Epiaquods ..... 253
Epiaquolls ..... 195
Epiaquults ..... 262
Epipedon ..... 5
Eutraquox ..... 235
Eutrogelepts ..... 171
Eutroperox ..... 237
Eutrotorrox ..... 240
Eutrudepts ..... 175
Eutrudox ..... 242
Eutrustox ..... 246

## F

Family differentiae for Histosols and Histels ..... 306
Family differentiae for mineral soils ..... 295
Ferrudalfs ..... 49
Fibers. *See* Organic soil material.
Fibric soil materials. *See* Organic soil material.
Fibristels ..... 143
Fibrists ..... 153

Fluvaquents ..... 125
Fluvents ..... 128
Folistels ..... 144
Folistic epipedon ..... 6
Folists ..... 154
Fragiaqualfs ..... 41
Fragiaquepts ..... 163
Fragiaquods ..... 253
Fragiaquults ..... 263
Fragic soil properties ..... 16
Fragihumods ..... 256
Fragiorthods ..... 257
Fragipan ..... 11
Fragiudalfs ..... 49
Fragiudepts ..... 177
Fragiudults ..... 268
Fragixeralfs ..... 72
Fragixerepts ..... 187
Fraglossudalfs ..... 49
Frigid temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.
Fulvicryands ..... 82
Fulvudands ..... 86

## G

Gelands ..... 84
Gelaquands ..... 79
Gelaquents ..... 126
Gelaquepts ..... 163
Gelepts ..... 171
Gelic materials ..... 25
Gelifluvents ..... 129
Gelisols ..... 143
Gelods ..... 255
Gelolls ..... 200
Gelorthents ..... 134
Glacic layer ..... 25
Glacistels ..... 144
Glossaqualfs ..... 41
Glossic horizon ..... 11
Glossocryalfs ..... 44
Glossudalfs ..... 50
Gypsiargids ..... 99
Gypsic horizon ..... 12
Gypsicryids ..... 113
Gypsids ..... 118
Gypsitorrerts ..... 288
Gypsiusterts ..... 291

## H

Halaquepts ..... 164
Haplanthrepts ..... 159
Haplaquox ..... 236
Haplargids ..... 100
Haplocalcids ..... 105
Haplocambids ..... 109
Haplocryalfs ..... 45
Haplocryands ..... 82
Haplocryepts ..... 168
Haplocryerts ..... 287
Haplocryids ..... 114
Haplocryods ..... 254
Haplocryolls ..... 199
Haplodurids ..... 116
Haplofibrists ..... 154
Haplogelods ..... 255
Haplogelolls ..... 200
Haplogypsids ..... 120
Haplohemists ..... 155
Haplohumods ..... 256
Haplohumults ..... 265
Haploperox ..... 238
Haplorthels ..... 146
Haplorthods ..... 258
Haplosalids ..... 122
Haplosaprists ..... 156
Haplotorrands ..... 85
Haplotorrerts ..... 288
Haplotorrox ..... 241
Haploturbels ..... 149
Haploxeralfs ..... 72
Haploxerands ..... 95
Haploxerepts ..... 188
Haploxererts ..... 294
Haploxerolls ..... 229
Haploxerults ..... 280
Hapludalfs ..... 51
Hapludands ..... 87
Hapluderts ..... 289
Hapludolls ..... 205
Hapludox ..... 243
Hapludults ..... 269
Haplustalfs ..... 60
Haplustands ..... 92
Haplustepts ..... 180
Haplusterts ..... 291
Haplustolls ..... 215
Haplustox ..... 247
Haplustults ..... 276
Haprendolls ..... 201
Hemic soil materials. *See* Organic soil material.
Hemistels ..... 144
Hemists ..... 155
Histels ..... 143
Histic epipedon ..... 6
Historthels ..... 146
Histosols ..... 153

Histoturbels ..... 149
Horizons and layers ..... 311
A horizons ..... 311
B horizons ..... 312
C horizons or layers ..... 312
E horizons ..... 311
L horizons or layers ..... 311
M layers ..... 312
O horizons or layers ..... 311
R layers ..... 312
W layers ..... 312
Humaquepts ..... 164
Humicryepts ..... 169
Humicryerts ..... 287
Humicryods ..... 254
Humigelods ..... 255
Humilluvic material. *See* Organic soil material.
Humods ..... 256
Humults ..... 265
Hydraquents ..... 126
Hydrocryands ..... 83
Hydrudands ..... 89
Hyperthermic temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.

## I

Identifiable secondary carbonates ..... 17
Inceptisols ..... 159
Interfingering of albic materials ..... 17
Isofrigid temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.
Isohyperthermic temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.
Isomesic temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.
Isothermic temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.

## K

Kandiaqualfs ..... 42
Kandiaquults ..... 263
Kandic horizon ..... 12
Kandihumults ..... 266
Kandiperox ..... 239
Kandiudalfs ..... 55
Kandiudox ..... 244
Kandiudults ..... 270
Kandiustalfs ..... 63
Kandiustox ..... 248
Kandiustults ..... 277
Kanhaplaquults ..... 263
Kanhaplohumults ..... 267
Kanhapludalfs ..... 56
Kanhapludults ..... 272
Kanhaplustalfs ..... 64
Kanhaplustults ..... 278
Key to soil orders ..... 31

## L

L horizons or layers. *See* Horizons and layers.
Lamellae ..... 17
Limnic materials. *See* Organic soil material and Horizons and layers.
Linear extensibility (LE) ..... 17
Lithic contact ..... 25
Lithologic discontinuities ..... 17
Luvihemists ..... 156

## M

M horizons or layers. *See* Horizons and layers.
Marl. *See* Organic soil material.
Melanaquands ..... 79
Melanic epipedon ..... 7
Melanocryands ..... 83
Melanoxerands ..... 96
Melanudands ..... 90
Mesic temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.
Mineral analyses ..... 320
Mineral soil material ..... 3
Mineral soils ..... 4
Mineralogy classes for Histosols and Histels ..... 307
Mineralogy classes for mineral soils ..... 301
Mollic epipedon ..... 7
Mollisols ..... 191
Molliturbels ..... 150
Mollorthels ..... 147

## N

*n* value ..... 18
Natralbolls ..... 193
Natraqualfs ..... 43
Natraquerts ..... 286
Natraquolls ..... 196
Natrargids ..... 102
Natric horizon ..... 12
Natricryolls ..... 200
Natridurids ..... 117
Natrigypsids ..... 120
Natrixeralfs ..... 74
Natrixerolls ..... 232

Natrudalfs ..... 56
Natrudolls ..... 207
Natrustalfs ..... 65
Natrustolls ..... 220
Normal years ..... 26

## O

O horizons or layers. *See* Horizons and layers.
Ochric epipedon ..... 8
Organic soil material ..... 3
  Fibers ..... 20
  Fibric soil materials ..... 21
  Hemic soil materials ..... 21
  Humilluvic material ..... 21
  Limnic materials ..... 22
    Coprogenous earth ..... 22
    Diatomaceous earth ..... 22
    Marl ..... 22
  Sapric soil materials ..... 21
Organic soils ..... 4
Orthels ..... 144
Orthents ..... 133
Orthods ..... 256
Ortstein ..... 13
Oxic horizon ..... 13
Oxisols ..... 235

## P

Paleaquults ..... 264
Paleargids ..... 104
Palecryalfs ..... 47
Palecryolls ..... 200
Palehumults ..... 267
Paleudalfs ..... 57
Paleudolls ..... 208
Paleudults ..... 273
Paleustalfs ..... 67
Paleustolls ..... 222
Paleustults ..... 279
Palexeralfs ..... 74
Palexerolls ..... 232
Palexerults ..... 280
Paralithic contact ..... 25
Paralithic materials ..... 25
Particle-size classes for Histosols and Histels ..... 306
Particle-size classes for mineral soils ..... 295
Permafrost ..... 25
Permanent cracks (classes) in mineral soils ..... 306
Perox ..... 236
Petraquepts ..... 165
Petroargids ..... 105
Petrocalcic horizon ..... 13
Petrocalcids ..... 107
Petrocambids ..... 111
Petrocryids ..... 114
Petroferric contact ..... 19
Petrogypsic horizon ..... 13
Petrogypsids ..... 121
Physical analyses ..... 317
Placaquands ..... 80
Placaquods ..... 253
Placic horizon ..... 14
Placocryods ..... 255
Placohumods ..... 256
Placorthods ..... 259
Placudands ..... 92
Plagganthrepts ..... 159
Plaggen epipedon ..... 8
Plinthaqualfs ..... 43
Plinthaquox ..... 236
Plinthaquults ..... 265
Plinthite ..... 19
Plinthohumults ..... 268
Plinthoxeralfs ..... 76
Plinthudults ..... 275
Plinthustalfs ..... 70
Plinthustults ..... 279
Prime symbol in horizon designators ..... 316
Psammaquents ..... 126
Psamments ..... 139
Psammorthels ..... 147
Psammoturbels ..... 150

## Q

Quartzipsamments ..... 139

## R

R layers. *See* Horizons and layers.
Ratio, 15 kPa water to clay ..... 298
Ratio, CEC to clay ..... 303
Reaction classes for Histosols and Histels ..... 308
Rendolls ..... 201
Resistant minerals ..... 19
Rhodoxeralfs ..... 76
Rhodudalfs ..... 59
Rhodudults ..... 275
Rhodustalfs ..... 70
Rhodustults ..... 279
Rock fragments ..... 295
Rock structure ..... 5

Root-limiting layer ..... 296
Rounding ..... 31
Rupture-resistance classes for mineral soils ..... 305

## S

Salaquerts ..... 286
Salic horizon ..... 14
Salicryids ..... 115
Salids ..... 122
Salitorrerts ..... 288
Salusterts ..... 292
Sapric soil materials. *See* Organic soil material.
Sapristels ..... 144
Saprists ..... 156
Series control section ..... 308
Series differentiae within a family ..... 308
Slickensides ..... 19
Soil ..... 1
Soil color, water state criteria ..... 31
Soil depth classes for Histosols and Histels ..... 308
Soil depth classes for mineral soils ..... 305
Soil moisture regimes ..... 26
  Aquic ..... 26
  Aridic and torric ..... 27
  Udic ..... 27
  Ustic ..... 27
  Xeric ..... 27
Soil temperature classes for Histosols and Histels ..... 308
Soil temperature classes for mineral soils ..... 304
Soil temperature regimes ..... 28
  Cryic ..... 28
  Frigid ..... 28
  Hyperthermic ..... 28
  Isofrigid ..... 28
  Isohyperthermic ..... 28
  Isomesic ..... 28
  Isothermic ..... 28
  Mesic ..... 28
  Thermic ..... 28
Sombric horizon ..... 14
Sombrihumults ..... 268
Sombriperox ..... 240
Sombriudox ..... 245
Sombriustox ..... 249
Sphagnofibrists ..... 154
Spodic horizon ..... 14
Spodic materials ..... 19
Spodosols ..... 251
Strongly contrasting particle-size classes ..... 299
Subsurface tier ..... 23
Suffix symbols in horizon designators ..... 313
  Conventions for using letter suffixes ..... 315
  Vertical subdivision ..... 315
Sulfaquents ..... 127
Sulfaquepts ..... 165
Sulfaquerts ..... 287
Sulfidic materials ..... 28
Sulfihemists ..... 156
Sulfisaprists ..... 157
Sulfohemists ..... 156
Sulfosaprists ..... 157
Sulfudepts ..... 177
Sulfuric horizon ..... 29
Surface tier ..... 22

## T

Thermic temperature regime. *See* Soil temperature regimes.
Torrands ..... 84
Torrerts ..... 287
Torriarents ..... 127
Torric moisture regime. *See* Soil moisture regimes.
Torrifluvents ..... 129
Torrifolists ..... 155
Torriorthents ..... 134
Torripsamments ..... 140
Torrox ..... 240
Transitional and combination horizons ..... 312
Turbels ..... 148

## U

Udalfs ..... 47
Udands ..... 85
Udarents ..... 127
Udepts ..... 172
Uderts ..... 289
Udic moisture regime. *See* Soil moisture regimes.
Udifluvents ..... 130
Udifolists ..... 155
Udipsamments ..... 141
Udivitrands ..... 94
Udolls ..... 201
Udorthents ..... 136
Udox ..... 241
Udults ..... 268
Ultisols ..... 261
Umbraquults ..... 265
Umbric epipedon ..... 8
Umbriturbels ..... 150
Umbrorthels ..... 148
Ustalfs ..... 59
Ustands ..... 92
Ustarents ..... 127
Ustepts ..... 177

Usterts ..... 290
Ustic moisture regime. *See* Soil moisture regimes.
Ustifluvents ..... 131
Ustifolists ..... 155
Ustipsamments ..... 141
Ustivitrands ..... 94
Ustolls ..... 209
Ustorthents ..... 136
Ustox ..... 245
Ustults ..... 276

## V

Vermaqualfs ..... 43
Vermaquepts ..... 165
Vermudolls ..... 208
Vermustolls ..... 224
Vertisols ..... 283
Vitrands ..... 93
Vitraquands ..... 80
Vitricryands ..... 83
Vitrigelands ..... 84
Vitritorrands ..... 85
Vitrixerands ..... 96
Volcanic glass ..... 20

## W

W layers. *See* Horizons and layers.
Weatherable minerals ..... 20

## X

Xeralfs ..... 71
Xerands ..... 95
Xerarents ..... 128
Xerepts ..... 184
Xererts ..... 293
Xeric moisture regime. *See* Soil moisture regimes.
Xerofluvents ..... 132
Xerolls ..... 224
Xeropsamments ..... 142
Xerorthents ..... 138
Xerults ..... 279

SOI — **The Soils That We Classify**

DIF — **Differentiae for Mineral Soils and Organic Soils**

DIA — **Horizons and Characteristics Diagnostic for the Higher Categories**

IDE — **Identification of the Taxonomic Class of a Soil**

ALF — **Alfisols**

AND — **Andisols**

ARI — **Aridisols**

ENT — **Entisols**

GEL — **Gelisols**

HIS — **Histosols**

INC — **Inceptisols**

MOL — **Mollisols**

OXI — **Oxisols**

SPO — **Spodosols**

ULT — **Ultisols**

VER — **Vertisols**

FAM — **Family and Series Differentiae and Names**

HOR — **Designations for Horizons and Layers**

# NRCS Accessibility Statement

The Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS) is committed to making its information accessible to all of its customers and employees. If you are experiencing accessibility issues and need assistance, please contact our Helpdesk by phone at 1-800-457-3642 or by e-mail at ServiceDesk-FTC@ftc.usda.gov. For assistance with publications that include maps, graphs, or similar forms of information, you may also wish to contact our State or local office. You can locate the correct office and phone number at http://offices.sc.egov.usda.gov/locator/app.